

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मसूरी

MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय

LIBRARY

110071

अवधि संख्या

Accession No.

~~13292~~

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

470.07

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

The

NEW JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

FOR JUNIOR FORMS IN SCHOOLS

- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By E. W. EDMUNDS, M.A., B.Sc. *Third Edition.* 2s. 9d.
- A FIRST ENGLISH COURSE. By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- A FIRST COURSE IN MODERN GEOGRAPHY. By E. G. HODGKISON, B.A., F.R.G.S., and D. M. PREECE. 2s. 9d.
- JUNIOR GEOGRAPHY. By G. C. FRY, M.Sc. *Fifth Edition.* 4s.
- THE BRITISH ISLES: A MODERN GEOGRAPHY. By E. G. HODGKISON, B.A., and D. M. PREECE. 2s.
- THE WORLD: A MODERN GEOGRAPHY. By E. G. HODGKISON, B.A., and D. M. PREECE. 2s.
- JUNIOR LATIN COURSE. By B. J. HAYES, M.A. *Second Edition.* 4s.
- NEW JUNIOR LATIN COURSE. By J. V. THOMPSON, M.A., and L. M. PENN, M.A. 5s.
- NEW JUNIOR LATIN READER. By A. J. TATE, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- NEW JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS, M.A. 4s.
- ELEMENTARY FRENCH COURSE. By H. V. JERVIS, M.A. 1s. 3d.
- JUNIOR FRENCH READER. By Professor ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

LONDON

UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST.

NEW JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

BY

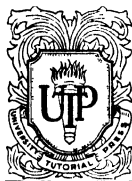
J. V. THOMPSON, M.A.

LATE SENIOR CLASSICAL MASTER, STRAND SCHOOL

AND

LL. M. PENN, M.A.

CLASSICAL MASTER, BECKENHAM COUNTY SCHOOL



LONDON

UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST.

Ninth Impression 1936

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD., FOXTON
NEAR CAMBRIDGE

PREFACE.

THIS book seeks to provide a Course in Latin Grammar and Composition for use in schools. It is suitable for general class use and contains all that is needful for candidates preparing for the Junior Locals and similar Examinations.

Accidence and Syntax are correlated from the beginning. Each lesson contains a short extract in Latin for translation into English, and this extract is largely made the basis of the teaching. An oral exercise on each passage is supplied, so that the pupil may be encouraged to look upon Latin as a medium for the expression of thought and not merely as a convenient school exercise. In this way the authors seek to combine the best modern methods of language teaching with those which have stood the test of generations.

The book was originally written by Mr. Thompson, but the MS. was read for the press by Mr. Penn, whose numerous suggestions and additions have justified the insertion of his name on the title-page.

CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY. ALPHABET, PRONUNCIATION, ETC. ...	1
1. PRESENT INDICATIVE (ACTIVE) OF REGULAR VERBS; 1ST DECLENSION; CASES	5
2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (ACTIVE) OF REGULAR VERBS; 2ND DECLENSION	12
3. FUTURE INDICATIVE (ACTIVE) OF REGULAR VERBS; PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF Sum ; ADJECTIVES OF 1ST CLASS	16
4. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE INDICATIVE (PASSIVE) OF REGULAR VERBS; SIMPLE QUESTIONS	21
5. PERFECT TENSES OF REGULAR VERBS AND Sum ; I-SUB- STANTIVES OF 3RD DECLENSION	24
6. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE 3RD CONJUGATION; I-SUB- STANTIVES OF 3RD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>); I-ADJEC- TIVES OF 3RD DECLENSION	29
7. PERFECT TENSES (PASSIVE) OF REGULAR VERBS; CON- SONANT SUBSTANTIVES OF 3RD DECLENSION	34
8. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); 3RD DECLENSION CON- SONANT SUBSTANTIVES (<i>continued</i>) AND ADJECTIVES ...	39
9. DEPONENTS AND SEMI-DEPONENTS; 4TH AND 5TH DE- CLENSIONS	42
10. THE INFINITIVE	47
11. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVE AD- JECTIVES; ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE	51
12. THE GERUND	58

LESSON	PAGE
13. PRINCIPAL PARTS (1ST CONJUGATION); GENDER IN 3RD DECLENSION; APPPOSITION...	62
14. PRINCIPAL PARTS (2ND CONJUGATION); PRESENT PAR- TICIPLE	65
15. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); COMPARISON OF ADJEC- TIVES; EXPRESSIONS OF COMPARISON	69
16. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); PERFECT PARTICIPLE	73
17. „ „ (<i>continued</i>); ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	76
18. „ „ (<i>continued</i>); ADVERBS AND COMPARI- SON OF ADVERBS	80
19. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS	83
20. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE (ACTIVE); JUSSIVE AND DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE	88
21. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (<i>continued</i>); PRESENT IMPERATIVE (PASSIVE AND DEPONENT); WISHES, COMMANDS, PROHIBITIONS	92
22. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (<i>continued</i>)	96
23. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); DEMONSTRATIVE PRO- NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	100
24. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>); RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND CLAUSES; CORRELATIVE ADVERBS	104
25. POSSUM AND OTHER COMPOUNDS OF SUM; INTERROGA- TIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES; IRREGULAR AD- JECTIVES	109
26. Volo, Nolo, Malo; CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES	114
27. Fero, Flo, AND COMPOUNDS; IMPERSONAL USE IN THE PASSIVE	119
28. DEPENDENT QUESTIONS	124
29. Eo AND ITS COMPOUNDS; DOUBLE DEPENDENT QUESTION	128
30. Edo AND Do; INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES...	131
31. DEFECTIVE VERBS; NUMERALS	136

CONTENTS.

ix

LESSON	PAGE
32. REVISION OF PRONOUNS ; CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS	141
33. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; DISTRIBUTIVE AND ADVERBIAL NUMERALS ; EXPRESSIONS OF SPACE AND TIME	144
34. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; THE GERUNDIVE ...	146
35. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; FINAL CLAUSES	149
36. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; „ „ (<i>continued</i>)	152
37. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; DEPENDENT COMMAND ; SEMI-DEPENDENCE	155
38. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; RELATIVE CLAUSES EXPRESSING CONSEQUENCE AND PURPOSE	158
39. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; Quo AND Quominus IN FINAL CLAUSES	160
40. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; THE USES OF Quin ...	162
41. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	165
42. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (<i>continued</i>)	168
43. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; TEMPORAL CLAUSES (WITH Cum)	171
44. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; TEMPORAL CLAUSES (<i>continued</i>) ; Ut, Dum, Ubi, Postquam, ETC.	174
45. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; TEMPORAL CLAUSES (<i>continued</i>)	177
46. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; CONCESSIVE CLAUSES ...	180
47. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; CAUSAL CLAUSES ...	183
48. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; „ „ (<i>continued</i>)	185
49. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; COMPARATIVE CLAUSES ..	188
50. IMPERSONAL VERBS	191
51. IRREGULARITIES OF 1ST DECLENSION ; USES OF THE ACUSATIVE	195
52. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES OF 2ND AND 3RD DECLENSIONS	198

LESSON	PAGE
53. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; THE ACCUSATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	201
54. PRINCIPAL PARTS (<i>continued</i>) ; USES OF THE GENITIVE .	203
55. „ „ (<i>continued</i>) ; THE GENITIVE (<i>continued</i>)	206
56. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES OF 4TH AND 5TH DECLENSIONS ; THE DATIVE ...	209
57. THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	213
58. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES	216
59. THE LOCATIVE	220
60. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES ; THE ABLATIVE	223
61. THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	227
62. „ „ (<i>continued</i>)	231
63. PREPOSITIONS	234
64. „ „ (<i>continued</i>)	237
65. CONJUNCTIONS	240
66. SUB-DEPENDENT CLAUSES	244
67. REPORTED SPEECH	248
68. „ „ (<i>continued</i>)	253
69. IDIOMATIC USAGES OF TENSES	256
70. CONTRACTED FORMS OF VERBS ; THE CALENDAR ...	260
71. ROMAN MONEY AND INTEREST .	264
72. MISCELLANEOUS	267
 PARADIGMS OF VERBS	 270
Sum	271
FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS (ACTIVE)	273
„ „ „ (PASSIVE)	281
THIRD CONJUGATION WITH SHORT I FORMS OF FOURTH	289

	PAGE
PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS:—	
FIRST CONJUGATION	291
SECOND „	292
THIRD „	294
FOURTH „	302
DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS ...	303
MISCELLANEOUS VERBS	304
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS	305
APPENDIX I. MEMORANDA FOR LATIN COMPOSITION ..	319
„ II. PROSODY AND METRE	321
„ III. ABBREVIATIONS	324
„ IV. FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS	326
„ V. PARSING	330
„ VI. WORDS SPELT ALIKE BUT DIFFERING IN MEANING	332
MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN ...	334
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	346
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	368
INDEX	391

NEW JUNIOR LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

ALPHABET, PRONUNCIATION, ETC.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no **J** and no **W**.

2. Vowels are said to be of long or short quantity, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated* *u* and *a* are of long quantity, *i* and *e* of short quantity.

The sign (ˉ) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (˘) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short.

3. Latin words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable (e.g. *pa'ter*, *father*; *mā'ter*, *mother*), i.e. the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words *fáther*, *móther*.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accented on the last syllable but one if that syllable is long, e.g. *sorō'rēs*, *sisters*; but otherwise on the last syllable but two, e.g. *do'minus*, *lord*; *fami'lia*, *household*.

A syllable is long if (1) it contains a long vowel or diphthong, or (2) if its vowel is followed by **x** or **z** or by two consonants.

The quantity of every **long** vowel is marked in this book (excluding the Exercises) except in the case of those followed by **x** or **z** or by two consonants.

NOTE.—If of two consonants the first is **b, c, d, f, g, p, or t**, and the second **l** or **r**, the syllable preceding may be long or short, provided that its vowel is short. For the purpose of accentuation such syllables are usually regarded as short, *e.g.* **im'petrō**.

Obs.—The mark of accentuation is not used in writing or printing Latin.

4. The letters of the Roman alphabet represented approximately the following sounds :—

5. VOWELS :—

ā, like *a* in English *father*, French *âme*

a, the same sound shortened, as in English *ago*

(Thus the sound of *a* in *māter* should be twice as long as that of *a* in *pater*)

ē, like *ey* in *prey*, *ei* in *vein*, *é* in French *été*

e, like *e* in *set*, *bed*

ī, like *i* in *machine*, *police*

i, like *i* in *sit*, *bid*

ō, like *o* in *note*, French *nôtre*

o, like *o* in *not*, French *notre*

ū, like *oo* in *boot*, *u* in *full*

u, like *oo* in *foot*

6. DIPHTHONGS :—

ae, like *ai* in *aisle*

au, like *ou* in *house*

eu, like *ew* in *newt*

oe, like *oi* in *boil*

ui, like *we* in *we*, French *oui*

ei, like *ei* in

7. CONSONANTS :—

b, d, f, h, k, l, n, p, q, t had the same sounds in Latin as they have in modern English

c had the hard sound of *k* always

g had the hard sound of *g* always, as in *get*, *begin*
r was always trilled as in French, like *rr* in *furrier*
s was always sharp like English *ss* in *hiss*
u or **v** was always like English *w*

8. **i** between vowels had the *y* sound of French *vielle*.

9. **m** was like English *m*, except when it was the final letter of a word and the next word began with a vowel. In such cases it was not sounded, but the vowel preceding it had the nasal sound of French *an*, *in*, *on*, *un*.

x was always like *ks*.

y is only found in words borrowed from Greek, and was sounded like vowel *i* pronounced with rounded lips.

z, only also in Greek words, had the sound of *dz*.

10. **bs** had the sound of *ps*.

ch, **th**, **ph** had the sounds of *c*, *t*, *p* followed by aspirate, as in English *bank-house*, *pent-house*, *pump-house*.

gu, **qu**, **su** as in English *language*, *queen*, *sweet*.

11. Double consonants were pronounced separately, cp. *buc-ca* and English *book-case*.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.

1. Repeat several times the vowels **ä**, **ë**, **i**, **ö**, **ü**, **ȳ**, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2, and continuing the enunciation for about a second.

2. Repeat several times the vowels **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **y**, giving each the sound indicated above and making no effort to prolong the enunciation.

Pronounce carefully, referring to the table on pp. 2, 3 for each new letter :—

3. ibat, ibit, ibō, ibant, ab, sub, ob.
4. āc, cum, coeunt, cicūta, biceps, ecce, cieō, Cynicus.
5. dum, ad, id, idem, idem, dabō, dō.
6. fēlix, fēlicem, fulciō, folium, efficiō.
7. gignō, genū, gula, gustō, age, gestāmen, gymnīcus, gyrus.
8. iam, iaciō, iēcistī, iocī, iambi, iūdex.
9. palam, pāgī, pedem, appōnō, supplex, Pygmaliōn.
10. quā, quī, quō, equus, colloquium, inquam.
11. rē, arō, currit, ācer, parum, pāret, parra, iēcēre.
12. sī, sis, iūs, essēs, ursās, rēs, fers, tyrannus, Byrsa.
13. tē, ratiō, attamen, adiēcit, ambitiō, satis, Tyrus.
14. iuvenis, vātis, vēr, vir, virēs, vōcēs, avē.
15. xystus, lex, Kerxēs, neglexī, vervex.
16. zōna, Zēnō, Zama, mazonomus, gaza.
17. aes, aera, āera, aequus, portae, aēneus, vae, faex.
18. plaustrum, faucēs, adelphoe, suāvius, Oeneus, Oedipūs.
19. abs, urbs, chalybs, ēchō, Sapphō, philosophus, Hyacinthus, Tēthys, Corinthus, Euphrātēs, Thūcydidēs.
20. distinguō, assuēfacere, cui, persuāsi, pinguis.

LESSON 1.

Present indicative active of regular verbs ; first declension of substantives ; meanings of the cases.

Learn (1) the tenses conjugated below ; (2) the declension of *porta*.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
<i>I love</i>	<i>I advise</i>	<i>I rule</i>	<i>I take</i>	<i>I hear</i>
am-ō	mon-eō	reg-ō	cap-iō	aud-iō
am-ās	mon-ēs	reg-is	cap-is	aud-is
am-at	mon-et	reg-it	cap-it	aud-it
am-āmus	mon-ēmus	reg-imus	cap-imus	aud-imus
am-ātis	mon-ētis	reg-itis	cap-itis	aud-itis
am-ant	mon-ent	reg-unt	cap-iunt	aud-iunt

2. The Latin present indicative active may be translated in three ways, *e.g.* *ambulō*, etc., (1) *I walk*, etc., (2) *I am walking*, etc., (3) *I do walk*, etc. (usually with a negative or in interrogative sentences, *e.g.* *non ambulō*, *I do not walk*; *ambulasne?* *do you walk?*).

3. In Latin, as in English, verbs have inflexions to mark **person**, **number**, **tense**, **mood**, and **voice**. All these inflexions make up what is called the **conjugation** of the verb; there are four ways of conjugating verbs in Latin. These four conjugations are distinguished by the ending of the **present infinitive active**, which is—

in the first conjugation	Āre	(A conjugation)
„ second „	Ēre	(E conjugation)
„ third „	ere	(consonant conjugation)
„ fourth „	Īre	(I conjugation)

There are two **voices** (active and passive).

There are three finite **moods** (indicative, subjunctive, imperative).

There is an infinitive mood.

There are two **numbers** and three **persons**, as in English.

A complete conjugation of the regular verbs will be found in §§ 343-352.

4. It will be noticed (§ 1, above) that the part of the verb before the hyphen does not change, and that to it the different terminations of this tense are added. This unchanging part is called, in this tense, the **present base**. Thus in **am-ās**, the second person singular present indicative of **amō**, *I love*, **am-** is the base, **-ās** is the termination. There are four sets of terminations according to the conjugations given above.

5. Verbs like **capiō** which belong to the third conjugation are conjugated like **regō** in all cases where **audiō** has **i**, but are otherwise conjugated like **audiō**.

6. FIRST (OR A) DECLENSION.

MODEL: **portā** (f.), *gate*. Base **port-**.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	port-a , <i>a gate</i>	port-ae ,	<i>gates</i>
Voc.	port-a , <i>gate!</i>	port-ae ,	<i>gates!</i>
Acc.	port-am , <i>a gate</i>	port-ās ,	<i>gates</i>
Gen.	port-ae , <i>of a gate</i>	port-ārum ,	<i>of gates</i>
Dat.	port-ae , <i>to a gate</i>	port-īs ,	<i>to gates</i>
Abl.	port-ā , <i>in, with, or from a gate</i>	port-īs ,	<i>in, with, or from gates</i>

Obs.—*A* and *the* are not, as a rule, expressed in Latin. Thus **porta** means *gate*, or *a gate*, or *the gate*.

7. Just as the verb in Latin has inflexions to mark person, etc. (§ 3), so nouns are inflected to mark **number** and **case** (§§ 9, 11). These inflexions make up what is called the **declension** of the noun; there are five ways of declining nouns in Latin. These five declensions may be distinguished by the characteristic vowel or consonant of the genitive plural termination, which is—

(Characteristic vowel, etc.).

in the first declension	Ārum	A
„ second	Ōrum	O
„ third	Um or Ium	Consonant or I
„ fourth	Uum	U
„ fifth	Ērum	E

8. That part of the noun which does not change and to which the case terminations are added is called the **base**; this may be found by cutting off the termination of the **genitive case singular**. Thus **port-** is the base of **porta**, *genitive singular port-ae*.

9. The two **numbers**, singular and plural, are distinguished in Latin, as in English, by terminations; *e.g.* **port-a**, *gate*, **port-ae**, *gates*.

10. Latin nouns are of **three genders**—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

(In this book m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, n. = neuter.)

11. There are **six cases** in Latin: their chief uses and meanings are as follows.

12. The **nominative**, as in English, expresses the **subject** of the sentence, and the verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

<i>puella cantat</i>	<i>the girl sings</i>
<i>puellae cantant</i>	<i>the girls sing</i>

13. The **vocative** denotes the person addressed.

<i>cantās, puella</i>	<i>you sing, girl</i>
<i>cantātis, puellae</i>	<i>you sing, girls</i>

14. The **accusative**, like the objective case in English, denotes the direct object of a transitive verb.

<i>rēgina puellam amat</i>	<i>the queen loves the girl</i>
<i>rēgina puellās amat</i>	<i>the queen likes girls</i>

NOTE.—In Latin the verb usually stands at the end of the clause.

15. The **accusative** case, besides expressing the direct object, is used with many prepositions.

<i>per silvās ambulō</i>	<i>I walk through the woods</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------

16. The **dative** is used with verbs of *showing, telling, and giving* to express the **indirect object**, *i.e.* the person or thing to *whom* something is shown, told, or given.

<i>rēginam nautae indicāvi</i>	<i>I pointed the queen out to the sailor</i>
<i>nautis hastās dōnātis</i>	<i>you give the sailors spears (or spears to the sailors)</i>

NOTE.—The dative must not be used to translate a substantive with *to* after a verb of motion; in such a case *ad* with the accusative is to be used.

<i>ad prātum ambulō</i>	<i>I am walking to the meadow</i>
-------------------------	-----------------------------------

17. The **genitive** case denotes the **possessor**, and also expresses nearly all the other meanings of a substantive governed by *of*.

<i>poetae amici</i>	<i>the poet's friends (or the friends of the poet)</i>
<i>corōna rosārum</i>	<i>a wreath of roses</i>

18. The ablative case answers the question *wherewith?* It is then called the **ablative of the instrument**, and denotes the thing *by means of which* (i.e. *wherewith*) a thing is done.

<i>nautae hastis pugnabant</i>	<i>the sailors were fighting with spears</i>
<i>rēgina turbam sapientiā superavit</i>	<i>the queen overcame the crowd by wisdom</i>

It is also used with several prepositions, e.g.

<i>ā portā ambulō</i>	<i>I walk from the gate</i>
<i>cum pueris errat</i>	<i>he wanders with the boys</i>

N.B.—When *with* means *together with*, it is translated by *cum*.

VOCABULARY 1.

N.B.—All words in this and the following vocabularies should be committed to memory; the number after the verbs denotes the conjugation.

Words not included in this and the following vocabularies are to be found in the general vocabularies at the end.

Substantives of the first declension are feminine, unless they denote male persons.

<i>contend-ō, 3, I quarrel</i>	<i>poen-a, -ae, punishment, penalty</i>
<i>ctŕ-ō, 1, I trouble about</i>	<i>prŕdenti-a, -ae, wisdom</i>
<i>dic-ō, 3, I say</i>	<i>puell-a, -ae, girl</i>
<i>disc-ō, 3, I learn</i>	<i>silv-a, -ae, wood, forest</i>
<i>dō, 1, I give, pay</i>	<i>terr-a, -ae, ground, earth</i>
<i>err-ō, 1, I wander</i>	<i>vi-a, -ae, road, way</i>
<i>fac-iō, 3, I make, do</i>	<i>vit-a, -ae, life</i>
<i>labōr-ō, 1, I toil</i>	
<i>laud-ō, 1, I praise</i>	
<i>respond-eō, 2, I answer</i>	
<i>sed-eō, 2, I sit</i>	<i>ad (with acc.), to</i>
<i>vid-eō, 2, I see</i>	<i>circum (with acc.), around</i>
	<i>contrā (with acc.), against</i>
<i>agricol-a, -ae, farmer</i>	<i>cum (with abl.), with</i>
<i>de-a, -ae, goddess</i>	<i>in (with abl.), in, on</i>
<i>mens-a, -ae, table</i>	<i>per (with acc.), through</i>

cūr ? why ?
quid ? what ?
quis ? who ?

nōn, not
nunc, now
numquam, never

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION FROM LATIN.

First find the verb; this will tell you whether the subject is (1) singular or plural, (2) in the first, second, or third person.

Secondly find the subject, which, if expressed, must be in the nominative case: if you cannot find a nominative case, the subject must be a pronoun implied in the termination of the verb.

Look now for **accusative** cases; these will be either (1) direct objects of the verb, or (2) objects of prepositions which will immediately precede them. Then look for **dative** cases; these will be indirect objects of the verb.

The rest of the sentence will probably now present no difficulty, if you know the meanings of the words and translate the cases carefully.

In doing the Exercises it is best to use *you* in translating the Latin second person singular and plural into English; e.g. *amās* or *amātis*, *you love* or *you like*. In the English sentences *you* is to be rendered by the Latin second person *singular*, unless there is any reason to suppose that more persons than one are addressed; then, and then only, the Latin second person plural is to be used.

EXERCISE 1.

A. Translate into English:—

Nunc fabulam de formica et musca narro. Formica et musca contendunt. Musca formicae dicit, "In mensis agricolae sedeo, numquam laboro, prudentiam ostendo; terram habitas et semper laboras; quid dicis?" Tum formica muscae respondet, "Audaciam non prudentiam ostendis; femina agricolae et puellae muscas non curant; muscas necant." Tum forte agricola cum filia vaccas per portam agit, sed controversiam muscae et formicae non audit. Vacca formicam ungula caedit, musca tamen avolat. Cur prudentia et industria poenam dant? cur ignavia poenam fugit?

B. Oral exercise :—

Quid faciunt formica et musca ?

Quid formica muscae dicit ?

Cur musca audaciam ostendit ?

Quomodo vacca formicam caedit ?

Quid facit filia agricolae ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The fly wanders round the tables : the ant toils. 2. We see the farmer : he does not see the ant and the fly. 3. Why, O girl, do you weep ? I am telling a story : what do you (pl.) learn ? 4. Farmers, you drive cows through the gates ; you do not trouble about the girl. 5. We make a way round the gate through the woods. 6. We praise the queen's prudence : we do not praise (her) boldness. 7. He gives a cow to the goddess. 8. The girls weep now. 9. The girl walks round the table. 10. The cow does not trouble about the fly. 11. She learns wisdom : the ant shows the way of wisdom. 12. The farmer tells a story to his daughter. 13. The farmer's daughters are driving the cows. 14. The cow's hoof kills the ants. 15. The flies fly away. 16. Ants live-in the woods. 17. Farmers' wives do not hear the goddess of the woods. 18. The ants make a way through the gate. 19. The girl by prudence avoids punishment. 20. The ants see but do not trouble about the hoof of the cow.

LESSON 2.

Imperfect indicative active; second declension.

19. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
<i>I was loving</i>	<i>I was advising</i>	<i>I was ruling</i>	<i>I was taking</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>
am-ābam	mon-ēbam	reg-ēbam	cap-iēbam	aud-iēbam
am-ābās	mon-ēbās	reg-ēbās	cap-iēbās	aud-iēbās
am-ābat	mon-ēbat	reg-ēbat	cap-iēbat	aud-iēbat
am-ābāmus	mon-ēbāmus	reg-ēbāmus	cap-iēbāmus	aud-iēbāmus
am-ābātis	mon-ēbātis	reg-ēbātis	cap-iēbātis	aud-iēbātis
am-ābant	mon-ēbant	reg-ēbant	cap-iēbant	aud-iēbant

20. The imperfect indicative is formed from the same base as the present. It may be translated in one of the three following ways: **amābam**, (1) *I was loving*, (2) *I loved*, (3) *I used to love*.

21. SECOND (OR 0) DECLENSION.

(1) Example: **dominus** (m.), *lord*. Base, **domin-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	domin-us	domin-ī
<i>Voc.</i>	domin-e	domin-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	domin-um	domin-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	domin-ī	domin-Orum
<i>Dat.</i>	domin-ō	domin-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	domin-ō	domin-īs

(2) Example: **magister** (m.), *master*. Base, **magistr-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> magister	magistr-ī
<i>Voc.</i> magister	magistr-ī
<i>Acc.</i> magistr-um	magistr-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> magistr-ī	magistr-Ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> magistr-ō	magistr-īs
<i>Abl.</i> magistr-ō	magistr-īs

Obs.—The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases *ē* is dropped before *r*.

A few substantives, however, retain *ē* before *r* throughout.

Example: **puer** (m.), *boy*. Base, **puer-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> puer	puer-i
<i>Voc.</i> puer	puer-i
<i>Acc.</i> puer-um	puer-ōs
<i>Gen.</i> puer-i	puer-Ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> puer-ō	puer-īs
<i>Abl.</i> puer-ō	puer-īs

Note **socer**, *gener*, **liberī**,
And **Liber**, *god of revelry*;
Like **puer** these retain the *e*.

(3) Example: **regnum** (n.), *kingdom*. Base, **regn-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V. A.</i> regn-um	regn-a
<i>Gen.</i> regn-i	regn-Ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> regn-ō	regn-īs
<i>Abl.</i> regn-ō	regn-īs

22. Vocative Singular.—Proper names ending in **-ius** have voc. sing. in **-ī** instead of **-ie**; *e.g.* **Vergilius**, **Vergilī**. So too **filius**, *son*, has voc. sing. **filī**.

VOCABULARY 2.

The gender of the second declension substantives in **-us** is generally masculine; substantives in **-um** are neuter. A few nouns in **-us** are feminine, *e.g.* **humus**, *ground*, and names of trees, such as **pirus**, *pear-tree*.

ar-ō, 1, *I plough*
 col-ō, 3, *I till*
 hab-eō, 2, *I have*
 liber-ō, 1, *I free*
 man-eō, 2, *I remain*
 mitt-ō, 3, *I send*
 port-ō, 1, *I carry*
 relinqu-ō, 3, *I leave*
 terr-eō, 2, *I frighten*
 tim-eō, 2, *I fear*
 toll-ō, 3, *I take away*
 vast-ō, 1, *I lay waste*
 voc-ō, 1, *I call*

a-ger, -grī, m., *field*
 auxili-um, -ī, n., *help*
 cas-a, -ae, f., *cottage, hut*

fund-us, -ī, m., *farm*
 hort-us, -ī, m., *garden*
 lib-er, -rī, m., *book*
 liber-ī, -ōrum, m., *children*
 nunti-us, -ī, m., *messenger*
 oppid-um, -ī, n., *town*
 popul-us, -ī, m., *people*
 Rōmān-ī, -ōrum, m., *Romans*
 tog-a, -ae, f., *cloak*
 verb-um, -ī, n., *word*

ā (ab before a vowel), *away from*
 amplius, adv., *longer*
 prō, *for (on behalf of)*
 quōmodo? adv., *how, in what way?*

EXERCISE 2.

A. Translate into English :—

Cincinnatus erat incola Romae sed extra muros in fundo habitabat. Inimici Romanorum hortos vastabant et frumenta tollebant. Populus nuntios ad Cincinnatum mittit. Cincinnatus forte agros aratro arabat. Nuntii dicunt, "Inimici agros vastant." Interea filius e casa togam portat. Statim agricola tauros in agro relinquit, et ad oppidum festinat. Sic auxilium incolis portabat. Verbis Romanorum animos confirmat, factis inimicos terret. Nam bellum gerebat et exitium inimicis dabat. Tum, Romani, non amplius timebatis sed nunc otium habetis; agricolam laudatis. Incolas, Cincinnate, a tristitia liberatis, bello auxilium Romanis portas. Nunc iterum ad fundum viam facis; agros aras; cum familia manes.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid dicebant nuntii agricolae?
 Quis ad oppidum festinat?
 Quomodo Romanorum animos agricola confirmat?
 Quomodo Romanos tristitia liberauit?
 Quid post bellum facit agricola?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The master was giving books to the boys. 2. The bulls were ploughing the fields for the farmer. 3. He was giving help to the Romans against their enemies. 4. O master, you were fearing destruction together with the farmer. 5. You are sending help to the Romans from the town. 6. We wage war with books against idleness. 7. The boys were not carrying their books to the garden. 8. You are not afraid, O Romans, for the fields. 9. They lay waste the gardens of the Romans. 10. The men were remaining in the fields with the boys. 11. The son of Cincinnatus was bringing his cloak from the field to the cottage. 12. The messengers of the Romans were bringing help. 13. The children of the farmers leave (their) books in the fields. 14. The people call the farmer from his farm. 15. The bulls and cows plough the fields for Cincinnatus. 16. The ant and the fly do not frighten the children. 17. The farmer's cottage had a garden. 18. The inhabitants of Rome till their gardens. 19. The woman loves the fields and woods. 20. The enemy were taking away the gates of the town.

LESSON 3.

Future indicative active; present, imperfect, and future indicative of sum; adjectives of the first class.

23. FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
<i>I shall love</i>	<i>I shall advise</i>	<i>I shall rule</i>	<i>I shall take</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
am-ābō	mon-ēbō	reg-am	cap-iam	aud-iam
am-ābis	mon-ēbis	reg-ēs	cap-iēs	aud-iēs
am-ābit	mon-ēbit	reg-et	cap-iet	aud-iet
am-ābimus	mon-ēbimus	reg-ēmus	cap-iēmus	aud-iēmus
am-ābitis	mon-ēbitis	reg-ētis	cap-iētis	aud-iētis
am-ābunt	mon-ēbunt	reg-ent	cap-ient	aud-ient

24. The future is formed from the same base (am-mon-, etc.) as the present and imperfect.

SUM, I am.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	<i>I am</i>	sumus,	<i>we are</i>
es,	<i>thou art</i>	estis,	<i>ye are</i>
est,	<i>he is</i>	sunt,	<i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	<i>I was</i>	erāmus,	<i>we were</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast</i>	erātis,	<i>ye were</i>
erat,	<i>he was</i>	erant,	<i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	<i>I shall be</i>	erimus,	<i>we shall be</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	eritis,	<i>ye will be</i>
erit,	<i>he will be</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be</i>

25. With the verb *sum* the complement of the predicate stands in the same case as the subject.

poëtae filia rēgina erit *the poet's daughter will be queen*

Compare in English "*I am he.*"

NOTE.—If the subject is contained in the verb, the complement of the predicate is in the case in which the subject would be if separately expressed, namely the nominative; e.g. *nautae sumus*, *we are sailors.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

26. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in *-us* or *-er*, in the feminine in *-a*, and in the neuter in *-um*.

They are declined as follows:—

Masculine: in *-us*, like *dominus*, § 21; in *-er*, like *magister*, § 21; with a few retaining *e* before *r* throughout, like *puer*, § 21.

Feminine: like *porta*, § 6.

Neuter: like *regnum*, § 21.

Examples: *bonus, bona, bonum*, *good*. Base, *bon-*.

niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*. Base, *nigr-*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bon-us</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bon-e</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-am</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ōs</i>	<i>bon-ās</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>	<i>bon-ārum</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ā</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>niger</i>	<i>nigr-a</i>	<i>nigr-um</i>	<i>nigr-ī</i>	<i>nigr-ae</i>	<i>nigr-a</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nigr-um</i>	<i>nigr-am</i>	<i>nigr-um</i>	<i>nigr-ōs</i>	<i>nigr-ās</i>	<i>nigr-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nigr-ī</i>	<i>nigr-ae</i>	<i>nigr-ī</i>	<i>nigr-ōrum</i>	<i>nigr-ārum</i>	<i>nigr-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nigr-ō</i>	<i>nigr-ae</i>	<i>nigr-ō</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nigr-ō</i>	<i>nigr-a</i>	<i>nigr-ō</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>	<i>nigr-īs</i>

NOTE.—Some few adjectives of this class with nominative singular masculine in -er retain e before r in the base.

Example: tener, tenera, tenerum, tender. Base, tener-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	tener	tener-a	tener-um	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-a
Acc.	tener-um	tener-am	tener-um	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a
Gen.	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-i	tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum
Dat.	tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is
Abl.	tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is

27. An adjective must be in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it refers.

nauta malus poſtam doctum	<i>the wicked ſailor ſlew the clever</i>
gladiō longō necāvit	<i>poet with a long ſword</i>
inſula eſt magna	<i>the iſland is large</i>
poſtae verba ſtulta erant	<i>the poet's words were fooliſh</i>

28. The masculine adjective is often used alone in the plural to denote men, and the neuter adjective to denote things.

boni honeſta probant	<i>good men approve what is honourable</i>
----------------------	--

29. Example of an adjective declined with a substantive:—

	ager lātus		a wide field	
	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	ager	lātus	agrī	lātī
Voc.	ager	lāte	agrī	lātī
Acc.	agrum	lātum	agrōs	lātōs
Gen.	agrī	lātī	agrōrum	lātōrum
Dat.	agrō	lātō	agris	lātīs
Abl.	agrō	lātō	agris	lātīs

30. The preposition in is used (1) with the accusative to imply motion into and should be translated *into*; (2) with the ablative (local) to imply rest or motion at and should be translated *in* or *on*.

in undās deſilit	<i>he jumps into the waves</i>
in aquā natat	<i>he ſwims in the water</i>
in equō ſedet	<i>he ſits on his horſe</i>

VOCABULARY 3.

<i>cant-ō, 1, I sing</i>	<i>magn-us, -a, -um, great</i>
<i>serv-ō, 1, I save, preserve</i>	<i>mal-us, -a, -um, wicked</i>
<i>veh-ō, 3, I bear</i>	<i>mis-er, -era, -erum, wretched</i>
	<i>mor-a, -ae, f., delay</i>
<i>antiqu-us, -a, -um, ancient</i>	<i>pericul-um, -i, n., danger</i>
<i>aqu-a, -ae, f., water</i>	<i>praemi-um, -i, n., reward</i>
<i>aur-um, -i, n., gold</i>	<i>tūt-us, -a, -um, safe</i>
<i>avār-us, -a, -um, greedy</i>	<i>vent-us, -i, m., wind</i>
<i>benign-us, -a, -um, kind</i>	
<i>candid-us, -a, -um, bright</i>	<i>dē (with abl.), down from,</i>
<i>clār-us, -a, -um, famous</i>	<i>concerning</i>
<i>dign-us, -a, -um, worthy</i>	<i>ē or ex (with abl.), out of</i>
<i>gladi-us, -i, m., sword</i>	<i>post (with acc.), after</i>
<i>iniuri-a, -ae, f., wrong</i>	<i>sine (with abl.), without</i>

EXERCISE 3.

A. Translate into English :—

Poeta clarus et mali nautae.

De poeta fabulam Graecorum antiquam narrabo : nautae poetam post multos annos in patriam vehebant : poeta non ventos et undas, sed saevos nautarum animos timet : magister gladium tenet, et aurum poetae videt. Tum dicit poeta magistro : “Avarus es, magister : aurum petis : patriam numquam videbo, sed oitharam sumam et cantabo. Duri estis, nautae : tutus enim eram in terra : sed nunc in aqua periculum est magnum.” In undas igitur placidas desilit, oitharam adhuc tenet. Tum belua marina poetam in dorso excipit, et tutum ad terram vehit. Sed dei praemium dignum misero poetae dant ; vox enim de caelo venit : “Stella candida ob iniuriam nautarum eris.”

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur magister poetae aurum petit ?

Quid timet poeta ?

Quid facit poeta in periculo vitae ?

Quid dei poetae ob nautarum iniuriam dant ?

Quomodo poeta tutus ad terram venit ?

Quid dicit deorum vox ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The famous poet feared the wicked sailors. 2. The old story tells the great danger of the poet. 3. He sings to the fierce master and saves (his) life. 4. With (his) lyre he leaps down ; the water is calm. 5. The gods will be kind ; they will make the poet a shining star. 6. He will not be wretched now, on account of the harsh master. 7. The sailors were wicked, therefore they desired the gold. 8. O gods and winds, ye were kind to the famous poet. 9. He saw (his) fatherland : he carried the gold away from the wicked sailors. 10. The poet will love the gods on account of the great rewards. 11. The poets sing about gardens and woods. 12. The gods save the poet from the cruel sailors. 13. The gods, they say, love poets. 14. The farmer has a cottage, the poet a lyre. 15. The Romans were not famous sailors. 16. The kind poet will give (his) cloak to the girl. 17. Who will speak cruel words to the kind queen ? 18. The beast of the sea will lay waste the wide fields of the Greeks. 19. We praise the good, we frighten the wicked. 20. Without delay the farmer leaves his farm and hastens to the city.

LESSON 4.

Present, imperfect, future indicative passive; simple questions.

31. INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
PRESENT TENSE.				
<i>I am— loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
am-or	mon-eor	reg-or	cap-lor	aud-lor
am-aris	mon-eris	reg-eris	cap-eris	aud-iris
am-atur	mon-etur	reg-itur	cap-itur	aud-itur
am-amur	mon-umur	reg-imur	cap-imur	aud-imur
am-amini	mon-umini	reg-imini	cap-imini	aud-imini
am-antur	mon-entur	reg-untur	cap-iuntur	aud-iuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>I was being— loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
am-abar	mon-abar	reg-abar	cap-iabar	aud-iabar
am-abaris or am-abare	mon-abaris or mon-abare	reg-abaris or reg-abare	cap-iabaris or cap-iabare	aud-iabaris or aud-iabare
am-abatur	mon-abatur	reg-abatur	cap-iabatur	aud-iabatur
am-abamur	mon-abamur	reg-abamur	cap-iabamur	aud-iabamur
am-abamini	mon-abamini	reg-abamini	cap-iabamini	aud-iabamini
am-abantur	mon-abantur	reg-abantur	cap-iabantur	aud-iabantur

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>I shall be— loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
am-abor	mon-abor	reg-ar	cap-iar	aud-iar
am-aberis or am-abitur	mon-aberis or mon-ebere	reg-eris or reg-ere	cap-iaris or cap-iere	aud-iaris or aud-iere
am-abitur	mon-ebitur	reg-etur	cap-ietur	aud-ietur
am-abimur	mon-ebimur	reg-umur	cap-iumur	aud-iumur
am-abimini	mon-ebimini	reg-umini	cap-iumini	aud-iumini
am-ebuntur	mon-ebuntur	reg-entur	cap-ientur	aud-ientur

32. The agent after a passive verb, i.e. the person whom something is done, is expressed in Latin by *ā* (a) before vowels) with the ablative.

pericula ā nautis nōn vitantur dangers are not avoided by sailors

SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

33. A question may be introduced in Latin as in English by some interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb, e.g. *quantus?* how great? *quis?* who? *cūr?* why?

cūr templa spoliātis why are you pillaging the temples?

34. If no such interrogative word is used to introduce the question, Latin employs an interrogative particle—

nonne, expecting the answer “yes”;

num, expecting the answer “no”;

-ne, simply asking for information.

num barbarōrum Rōmulus rex fuit? *Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he?*

nonne Rōmānōrum Rōmulus rex fuit? *was not Romulus king of the Romans?*

35. The particle **-ne** is enclitic, i.e. it cannot stand by itself, but is appended to the first word in the sentence or clause. This word must be that on which emphasis is laid in asking the question.

superāvitne Caesar Nerviōs? *did Caesar overcome the Nervii?*
Caesarne Nerviōs superāvit? *was it Caesar who overcame the Nervii?*

Nerviosne superāvit Caesar? *was it the Nervii whom Caesar overcame?*

VOCABULARY 4.

divid-ō, 3, I divide
leg-ō, 3, I pick, choose

aquil-a, -ae, f., eagle
cael-um, -i, n., sky

cib-us, -i, m., food
fāg-us, -i, f., beech tree
fess-us, -a, -um, weary
grāt-us, -a, -um, pleasant
hōr-a, -ae, f., hour

hort-us, -i, *m.*, garden
 lāt-us, -a, -um, wide
 maest-us, -a, -um, sad
 nihil, *n.* (indecl.), nothing
 parv-us, -a, -um, small
 praed-a, -ae, *f.*, booty

ros-a, -ae, *f.*, rose
 soci-us, -i, *m.*, ally
 timid-us, -a, -um, frightened
 valid-us, -a, -um, strong
 vix, scarcely

EXERCISE 4.

A. Translate into English :—

Agna et capella cum lupo in silvis errabant : ab agna et capella et lupo magnus cervus capitur : tum cervum dividunt. Dicit lupo : “sum lupo, ergo cervum sumam.” Nihil agnae timidae a lupo superbo relinquebatur, nihil habebat capella maesta : “cur, lupo, totum cervum sumis?” dicunt. Respondet lupo : “nonne infirmæ estis? num cervus timidus agnis dabitur? cur dignum præmium valido lupo a parva capella non tribuetur? Sic improbus lupo totam prædam portabat Amicitia numquam est firma inter lupos et agnas.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid a lupo capitur?
 Num sumit cervum agna a lupo?
 Quid respondet agnae et capellae lupo?
 Cur lupo totam prædam habet?
 Cur non amicitia inter lupos et agnas est?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The fierce wolf is feared by the timid lamb. 2. The food is carried to the lord by the slaves. 3. The slaves are weary in the wide fields. 4. They sit under a great beech tree. 5. The shadow of the beech tree is spread around the field. 6. Before the fifth hour the slaves will be sent into the mistress's garden. 7. The roses will be picked for the maiden. 8. Will the roses be pleasant to the maidens? 9. Why were they carried out of the garden? 10. You will be driven from the nest, O dove, by the fierce eagle. 11. We will divide the whole booty between the lamb and the she-goat. 12. The wolf does not fear the lamb, does it? 13. Who will take-away the stag from the wolf? 14. Will the booty be divided by the wolf? 15. Does not the lamb fear the stag?

LESSON 5.

Perfect, future-perfect, pluperfect indicative active of the regular verbs and sum; 1-substantives of the third declension.

36. INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
PERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I loved or have loved</i>	<i>I advised or have advised</i>	<i>I ruled or have ruled</i>	<i>I took or have taken</i>	<i>I heard or have heard</i>
amāv-ī	monu-ī	rex-ī	oēp-ī	audiv-ī
amāv-istī	monu-istī	rex-istī	oēp-istī	audiv-istī
amāv-it	monu-it	rex-it	oēp-it	audiv-it
amāv-imus	monu-imus	rex-imus	oēp-imus	audiv-imus
amāv-istis	monu-istis	rex-istis	oēp-istis	audiv-istis
amāv-ērunt or amāv-ēre	monu-ērunt or monu-ēre	rex-ērunt or rex-ēre	oēp-ērunt or oēp-ēre	audiv-ērunt or audiv-ēre

PLUPERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I had— loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
amāv-eram	monu-eram	rex-eram	oēp-eram	audiv-eram
amāv-erās	monu-erās	rex-erās	oēp-erās	audiv-erās
amāv-erat	monu-erat	rex-erat	oēp-erat	audiv-erat
amāv-erāmus	monu-erāmus	rex-erāmus	oēp-erāmus	audiv-erāmus
amāv-erātis	monu-erātis	rex-erātis	oēp-erātis	audiv-erātis
amāv-erant	monu-erant	rex-erant	oēp-erant	audiv-erant

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I shall— have loved</i>	<i>have advised</i>	<i>have ruled</i>	<i>have taken</i>	<i>have heard</i>
amāv-erō	monu-erō	rex-erō	oēp-erō	audiv-erō
amāv-eris	monu-eris	rex-eris	oēp-eris	audiv-eris
amāv-erit	monu-erit	rex-erit	oēp-erit	audiv-erit
amāv-erimus	monu-erimus	rex-erimus	oēp-erimus	audiv-erimus
amāv-eritis	monu-eritis	rex-eritis	oēp-eritis	audiv-eritis
amāv-erint	monu-erint	rex-erint	oēp-erint	audiv-erint

37. SUM, I am.

PERFECT TENSE.

I was or have been

fu-I	fu-imus
fu-isti	fu-istis
fu-it	fu-ērunt or fu-ēre

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I had been

fu-eram	fu-erāmus
fu-erās	fu-erātis
fu-erat	fu-erant

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

I shall have been

fu-erō	fu-erimus
fu-eris	fu-eritis
fu-erit	fu-erint

38. The above tenses are formed from another base of the verb known as the **perfect base** (cp. § 4), which is obtained by cutting off the final *-ī* of the first person singular perfect indicative active: *e.g.* the perfect bases of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō** are respectively **amāv-**, **monu-**, and **rex-**.

Obs.—Most verbs in the first, second and fourth conjugations have their perfect bases, like those of **amō**, **moneō**, **audiō**, ending respectively in *-āv-*, *-u-*, *-iv-*. The perfect bases of verbs of the third conjugation must be learned in the case of each verb.

39. The perfect indicative active may be translated in one of the following ways:—

- amāvi**, *etc.* (1) *I loved*, *etc.*
 (2) *I have loved*, *etc.*

It therefore corresponds to (1) the English past definite and French preterite, (2) English perfect.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THIRD (OR I AND CONSONANT) DECLENSION.

40. Substantives of this declension fall into two classes:—

- (1) those which have genitive plural ending in **-ium** (I-substantives),
- (2) those which have genitive plural ending in **-um** preceded by a consonant (consonant substantives).

I-SUBSTANTIVES.

41. These substantives are either **parisyllabic** (*i.e.* having the same number of syllables in the *nominative singular* and the *genitive singular*) or **monosyllabic** (*i.e.* having one syllable only in the *nominative singular*) with **base ending in two consonants**. (See Example 4.) With few exceptions the genitive plural ends in **-ium**.

The bases of nouns of the third declension are formed by cutting off **-is** from the genitive singular; it is therefore necessary to learn the *nominative singular* and *genitive singular* of the nouns of this declension.

The *nominative singular* of I-nouns generally ends in **-is**, **-ēs**, or **-s** preceded by a consonant, if the noun is masculine or feminine; in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, if the noun is neuter.

42. First Example: **nūbēs** (*f.*), *cloud*. Base, **nūb-**.

Singular.	Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i> nūb-ēs	nūb-ēs	Decline also:—
<i>Acc.</i> nūb-em	nūb-ēs or -īs	
<i>Gen.</i> nūb-is	nūb-ium	
<i>Dat.</i> nūb-ī	nūb-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i> nūb-e	nūb-ibus	
		caedēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>slaughter</i>
		clādēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>disaster</i>
		vulpēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>fox</i>

Second Example : *hostis* (c.), *enemy*. Base, *host-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> <i>host-is</i>	<i>host-ēs</i>	<i>auris</i> , f., <i>ear</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>host-em</i>	<i>host-ēs</i> or <i>īs</i>	<i>collis</i> , m., <i>hill</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>host-is</i>	<i>host-ium</i>	<i>crīnis</i> , m., <i>hair</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>host-ī</i>	<i>host-ibus</i>	<i>ovis</i> , f., <i>sheep</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>host-e</i>	<i>host-ibus</i>	<i>piscis</i> , m., <i>fish</i>
		<i>vallis</i> , f., <i>valley</i>

43. Of the I-substantives ending in *-is* in the nominative singular, a few end in *-im* in the accusative singular and in *-ī* in the ablative singular. In some words these terminations are the only forms, in others usage varies.

Third Example : *clāvis* (f.), *key*. Base, *clāv-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> <i>clāv-is</i>	<i>clāv-ēs</i>	<i>messis</i> , f., <i>harvest</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>clāv-em</i> or <i>-im</i>	<i>clāv-ēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>	<i>nāvis</i> , f., <i>ship</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>clāv-is</i>	<i>clāv-ium</i>	<i>puppis</i> , f., <i>stern</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>clāv-ī</i>	<i>clāv-ibus</i>	<i>turris</i> , f., <i>tower</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>clāv-e</i> or <i>-ī</i>	<i>clāv-ibus</i>	

Obs.—*Avis*, f., *bird*, *civis*, c., *citizen*, *ignis*, m., *fire*, have accusative singular ending in *-em*, ablative singular in *-e* or *-ī*.

44. Fourth Example : *dens* (m.), *tooth*. Base, *dent-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> <i>den-s</i>	<i>dent-ēs</i>	<i>ars</i> (base <i>art-</i>), f., <i>art</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>dent-m</i>	<i>dent-ēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>	<i>arx</i> („ <i>arc-</i>), f., <i>citadel</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>dent-ī</i>	<i>dent-ium</i>	<i>mens</i> („ <i>ment-</i>), f., <i>mind</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>dent-ī</i>	<i>dent-ibus</i>	<i>nox</i> („ <i>noct-</i>), f., <i>night</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>dent-e</i>	<i>dent-ibus</i>	<i>sors</i> („ <i>sort-</i>), f., <i>lot</i>
		<i>urbs</i> („ <i>urb-</i>), f., <i>city</i>

VOCABULARY 5.

oēl-ō, 1, *I hide*
inqu-it, *says he*
iac-ōō, 2, *I lie down*

par-ō, 1, *I prepare*
praeb-ōō, 2, *I furnish*
vīt-ō, 1, *I avoid*

acūt-us, -a, -um, *sharp*
 amīciti-a, -ae, f., *friendship*
 can-is, -is, c. (gen. plur. can-
 um), *dog*
 cert-us, -a, -um, *sure*
 corv-us, -i, m., *a crow*.
 dol-us, -i, m., *trick*

inopi-a, -ae, f., *lack*
 perfid-us, -a, -um, *treacherous*
 rām-us, -i, m., *branch*
 stultiti-a, -ae, f., *folly*
 stult-us, -a, -um, *foolish*
 quotidīe, *every day*

EXERCISE 5.

A. Translate into English:—

Corvus in alta fago nidum aedificaverat: canis habitabat sub fago. Aper, silvarum incola, sedem prope canem habuit. Tum a cane terrebatur corvus, "Exitium certum," inquit canis, "ab apro malo paratur; quotidie terram dentibus acutis fodit: cadet fagus, et magno in periculo erunt teneri avium nati." Postea canis aprum monuit: "corvus rapiet aprorum prolem; rapinam vix vitaveris." Videtisne, pueri, dolum canis perfidi? In ramis sedebit corvus; ruina fagi timebitur; aper ferus natos celabit; inopia cibi consumentur corvus parvique apri. Canis dolus catulis largam cenam praeberit. Stultus fuit aper, stultus corvus.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Quid dicebat canis corvo?
 Quid corvus timebat?
 Quid dicebat canis apro?
 Num amicus erat canis apro?
 Cur avis nati in periculo sunt.
 Nonne cibum catuli habebunt?
 Quis a cane terrebatur?

C. Translate into Latin:—

1. The nests of the crows were in the high beech trees.
 2. Between the boar and the crow there was great friendship.
 3. The wicked dog terrified the crow and the boar. 4. He has taken the food from the children of the crow and there will be hunger for the little boars. 5. O dog, you were greedy. You had provided an abundant feast for your puppies. 6. Through the wickedness of the dog, the life of the crow will have been wretched. 7. The teeth of the boar will not be feared. 8. By the story will be shown the folly of the crow and the boar. 9. The sharp teeth of the treacherous dog will be feared by the timid boys. 10. Will the boars have lain under the branches of the beech tree?

LESSON 6.

Principal parts of the third conjugation; I-substantives of the third declension (continued); I-adjectives of the third declension.

Learn (with meanings) the principal parts of the verbs of the third conjugation in *thick* type (§ 356, c) from *carpō* to *pingō*.

45. The three forms—

- (1) Present infinitive active,
- (2) Perfect indicative active (first person singular),
- (3) Supine (accusative),

together with the present indicative active (first person singular), are called the **principal parts** of a verb, and must be known before a verb can be conjugated.

Obs.—The use of the infinitive and supine, together with the base from which the supine is formed, will be treated later.

46. In the exercises that follow, not only verbs to be learned in the lessons, but also compounds of them with prepositions, will be included.

A compound verb is usually formed by prefixing a preposition to the simple verb, *e.g.* *ad* + *moneō* = *admoneō*. Very often, however, both preposition and simple verb undergo a change in spelling, *e.g.* *cum* + *regō* = *corrigō*. Some of these compounds are given in the list of the principal parts (§ 365).

THIRD DECLENSION, I-SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

47. Of neuter I-substantives some retain *-e* in the nominative singular; others with base ending in *āl* or *ār* have lost the final *e* and shortened the preceding vowel.

First Example: *cubile* (*n.*), *bed*. Base, *cubil-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>cubil-e</i>	<i>cubil-ia</i>	<i>mare</i> (gen. plur. <i>marum</i>), <i>sea</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cubil-is</i>	<i>cubil-ium</i>	<i>rēte</i> (abl. sing. <i>rēte</i>), <i>net</i> .
<i>D. Abl.</i> <i>cubil-i</i>	<i>cubil-ibus</i>	<i>sedile</i> , <i>seat</i> .

Second Example: *animal* (*n.*), *animal*. Base, *animāl-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>animal</i>	<i>animāl-ia</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> <i>animāl-is</i>	<i>animāl-ium</i>	<i>calcar</i> (base <i>calcār-</i>), <i>spur</i> .
<i>D. Abl.</i> <i>animāl-i</i>	<i>animāl-ibus</i>	<i>vectigal</i> (base <i>vectigāl-</i>), <i>tax</i> .

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

48. Adjectives of this class fall into two main divisions :—

- (1) Adjectives with genitive plural in *-ium*, declined like I-substantives of the third declension;
- (2) Adjectives with genitive plural in *-um*, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension.

49. Adjectives declined like I-substantives.—This division consists of—

- (a) Adjectives which have three forms in the nominative singular, one for each gender;
- (b) Adjectives which have two forms in the nominative singular, one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter;
- (c) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

- Examples : (a) *acer, acris, acre, sharp.* Base, *acr-*.
 (b) *tristis, triste, sad.* „ *trist-*.
 (c) *fēlix, fortunate.* „ *fēlic-*.
prūdens, prudent. „ *prūdēt-*.

Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>acer</i>	<i>acr-is</i>	<i>acr-e</i>	<i>acr-ēs</i>	<i>acr-ia</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>acr-em</i>	<i>acr-em</i>	<i>acr-e</i>	<i>acr-ēs or -is</i>	<i>acr-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acr-is</i>			<i>acr-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acr-i</i>			<i>acr-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acr-i</i>			<i>acr-ibus</i>

NOTE.—*Celer, celeris, celere, swift*, alone retains the *e* before *r* throughout ; it has genitive plural *celerum*.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>trist-is</i>	<i>trist-e</i>	<i>trist-ēs</i>	<i>trist-ia</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>trist-em</i>	<i>trist-e</i>	<i>trist-ēs or -is</i>	<i>trist-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trist-is</i>		<i>trist-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>trist-i</i>		<i>trist-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>trist-i</i>		<i>trist-ibus</i>

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-ia</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>fēlic-em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlic-ēs or -is</i>	<i>fēlic-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fēlic-is</i>		<i>fēlic-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>		<i>fēlic-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fēlic-i or -e</i>		<i>fēlic-ibus</i>

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēt-ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt-ia</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>prūdēt-em</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēt-ēs or -is</i>	<i>prūdēt-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>prūdēt-is</i>		<i>prūdēt-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>prūdēt-i</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>prūdēt-i or -e</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibus</i>

50. Example of a substantive of the first declension declined with an adjective of the second class :—

Singular.		Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>sagitta celeris</i> (<i>swift arrow</i>)		<i>sagittae celerēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sagittam celerem</i>		<i>sagittas celerēs (or celeris)</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>sagittae celeris</i>		<i>sagittarum celerum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sagittae celeri</i>		<i>sagittis celeribus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sagittā celeri</i>		<i>sagittis celeribus</i>

Decline together *bellum atrox* (*cruel war*), *dīrus imber* (*terrible shower*).

51. Adjectives in *-er* are declined like (1) *ācer*, (2) *tener*, or (3) *niger*.

- (1) To *ācer*, *alacer*, *campester*,
celer, *celeber*, *equester*
terrester, *paluster*, *pedester*
salūber, *volucer*, *silvester*
 add *puter* and months like *September*.

[Meanings of above :—Keen, active, level, swift, crowded, mounted, earthy, marshy, foot (opp. to mounted), healthy, winged, wooded, rotten.]

- (2) Like *tener* compound words in *-fer*
 Retain the *e* ; so those in *-ger*.
 Add *asper*, *rough*, and *lacer*, *torn*,
 With *liber*, *free*, and *miser*, *lorn*.

- (3) All other adjectives in *-er* are declined like *niger*.

VOCABULARY 6.

This and following vocabularies are to be supplemented by the verbs of which the principal parts are to be learned in this and some of the following lessons. The genitives are given in the case of those adjectives which have the masculine, feminine, and neuter the same, otherwise the feminine and neuter (or neuter alone) are given, as before.

lev-ō, 1, *I raise*

alt-us, -a, -um, *deep*

crudēl-is, -e, *cruel*

difficil-is, -e, *difficult*

dulc-is, -e, *sweet*

facil-is, -e, *easy*

fon-s, -tis, *m., spring*

negōti-um, -i, *n., business*

sapi-ens, gen. -entis, *wise*

sitis, -is, *f.* (acc. *sitim*, abl. *siti*), *thirst*

util-is, -e, *useful*

ibi, *there*

iam, *now*

ōlim, *once upon a time*

semper, *always*

EXERCISE 6.

A. Translate into English :—

Vulpes callida in puteum olim decedit. Huc hircus imprudens ob sitim acrem venit et vulpem rogat, "Dulcisne et copiosa est ibi aqua?" Respondet vulpes, "Aquam dulcem in puteo bibes, hirce, sed aqua fontis valde amara est." Tum dolo vulpis mendacis capiebatur animal stultum: e fonte aquam labiis non duxit, sed primum a puteo humeris animal sapiens levavit. Utilis eras vulpi, stulte hirce. Sed cur hostem crudelem e puteo liberavisti? Hircus infelix in aqua iam haeret—vulpium enim astutia non intelligitur ab hircis simplicibus: facilis erat hirco in puteum via—sed iam negotium difficile habebit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur vulpes in periculo est?

Cur hircus ad aquam descendit?

Quid dicit vulpes "Fontis aqua valde amara est"?

Quomodo vulpi hircus utilis erat?

Cur vulpem hircus a puteo liberat?

Num vulpes hircum liberavit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(Principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation will be found in § 366.)

1. Great thirst had led the foolish goat into the deep well.
2. Through the cunning and tricks of the fox he was being left in the water.
3. The water was not sweet and abundant, but the lying fox deceived the foolish goat.
4. The water of the sweet spring will not be drunk by the goat.
5. The fox will be freed from danger by the careless goat.
6. The goat carried the fox on his shoulders.
7. O wretched goat, you will stick fast in the well.
8. You did not understand the lying words of the cunning animal.
9. Wisdom will always be difficult for the goat.
10. Cunning will always be shown by foxes.
11. Did not thirst lead the goat to the spring of pleasant water?

LESSON 7.

*Perfect, future-perfect, pluperfect indicative passive;
consonant-substantives of the third declension.*

52. INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
PERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I was or have been loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
amāt-us sum	monit-us sum	rect-us sum	capt-us sum	audit-us sum
amāt-us es	monit-us es	rect-us es	capt-us es	audit-us es
amāt-us est	monit-us est	rect-us est	capt-us est	audit-us est
amāt-ī sumus	monit-ī sumus	rect-ī sumus	capt-ī sumus	audit-ī sumus
amāt-ī estis	monit-ī estis	rect-ī estis	capt-ī estis	audit-ī estis
amāt-ī sunt	monit-ī sunt	rect-ī sunt	capt-ī sunt	audit-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
amāt-us eram	monit-us eram	rect-us eram	capt-us eram	audit-us eram
amāt-us erās	monit-us erās	rect-us erās	capt-us erās	audit-us erās
amāt-us erat	monit-us erat	rect-us erat	capt-us erat	audit-us erat
amāt-ī erāmus	monit-ī erāmus	rect-ī erāmus	capt-ī erāmus	audit-ī erāmus
amāt-ī erātis	monit-ī erātis	rect-ī erātis	capt-ī erātis	audit-ī erātis
amāt-ī erant	monit-ī erant	rect-ī erant	capt-ī erant	audit-ī erant

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.				
<i>I shall have been loved</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>taken</i>	<i>heard</i>
amāt-us erō	monit-us erō	rect-us erō	capt-us erō	audit-us erō
amāt-us eris	monit-us eris	rect-us eris	capt-us eris	audit-us eris
amāt-us erit	monit-us erit	rect-us erit	capt-us erit	audit-us erit
amāt-ī erimus	monit-ī erimus	rect-ī erimus	capt-ī erimus	audit-ī erimus
amāt-ī eritis	monit-ī eritis	rect-ī eritis	capt-ī eritis	audit-ī eritis
amāt-ī erunt	monit-ī erunt	rect-ī erunt	capt-ī erunt	audit-ī erunt

53. The above tenses are made up of parts of *sum* and the past participle passive (e.g. *amātus* = *having been loved*), which is formed from a third base (cp. §§ 4, 38) of the verb, the **supine base**, which is obtained by cutting off the *-um* of the accusative supine (§ 45).

Obs.—Most verbs in the first, second, and fourth conjugations have their supine bases formed like those of *amō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, i.e. the base ends in *-āt*, *-it*, *-it* respectively. Exceptions will be given later. The supine bases in verbs of the third conjugation must be learned in the case of each verb.

CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (MASCULINE AND FEMININE).

54. These substantives are generally *imparisyllabic*, that is, they have more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative, while the genitive plural ends in *-um* preceded by a consonant.

55. First Example: *princeps* (c.), *chief*. Base, *princip-*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Decline also:—
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>princip-s</i>	<i>princip-ēs</i>	<i>aetās</i> (base <i>aetāt-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>age</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>princip-em</i>	<i>princip-ēs</i>	<i>hiems</i> (<i>hiem-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>winter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>princip-is</i>	<i>princip-um</i>	<i>miles</i> (<i>milit-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>soldier</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>princip-i</i>	<i>princip-ibus</i>	<i>trabs</i> (<i>trab-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>beam</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>princip-e</i>	<i>princip-ibus</i>	

Obs.—Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (e to i) in the base.

Second Example: *lex* (f.), *law*. Base, *lēg-*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Decline also:
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>lex</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>calix</i> (bas
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lēg-em</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>crux</i> („ <i>cruc-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>cross</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>lēg-is</i>	<i>lēg-um</i>	<i>iudex</i> („ <i>iudic-</i>), <i>c.</i> , <i>judge</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lēg-i</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>lux</i> („ <i>luc-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>light</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lēg-e</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>pax</i> („ <i>pac-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>peace</i>
			<i>rādx</i> („ <i>rādic-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>root</i>
			<i>vox</i> („ <i>voc-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>voice</i>

Third Example: **leō** (*n.*), *lion*. Base, **leōn-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also:—
<i>N. V.</i> leō	leōn-ēs	cardō (base cardin-), <i>m.</i> , <i>hinge</i>
<i>Acc.</i> leōn-em	leōn-ēs	flāmen („ flāmin-), <i>m.</i> , <i>priest</i>
<i>Gen.</i> leōn-is	leōn-um	ōrātiō („ ōrātiōn-), <i>f.</i> , <i>speech</i>
<i>Dat.</i> leōn-i	leōn-ibus	ordō („ ordin-), <i>m.</i> , <i>row</i>
<i>Abl.</i> leōn-e	leōn-ibus	sanguis („ sanguin-), <i>m.</i> , <i>blood</i>
		virgō („ virgin-), <i>f.</i> , <i>virgin</i>

Fourth Example: **flōs** (*m.*), *flower*. Base, **flōr-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also:—
<i>N. V.</i> flōs	flōr-ēs	arbor (base arbor-), <i>f.</i> , <i>tree</i>
<i>Acc.</i> flōr-em	flōr-ēs	calor („ calōr-), <i>m.</i> , <i>heat</i>
<i>Gen.</i> flōr-is	flōr-um	cinis („ ciner-), <i>m.</i> , <i>ashes</i>
<i>Dat.</i> flōr-i	flōr-ibus	honor („ honōr-), <i>m.</i> , <i>honour</i>
<i>Abl.</i> flōr-e	flōr-ibus	pudor („ pudōr-), <i>m.</i> , <i>shame</i>

Fifth Example: **pater** (*m.*), *father*. Base, **patr-**.

Pater, *father*, **māter**, *mother*, **frāter**, *brother*, have **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular only.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also:—
<i>N. V.</i> pater	patr-ēs	frāter (base frātr-), <i>m.</i> , <i>brother</i>
<i>Acc.</i> patr-em	patr-ēs	māter („ mātr-), <i>f.</i> , <i>mother</i>
<i>Gen.</i> patr-is	patr-um	
<i>Dat.</i> patr-i	patr-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i> patr-e	patr-ibus	

USE OF THE CASES (*continued*).

56. Many verbs which are generally translated by transitive verbs in English are **intransitive** in Latin, and take the dative. Such verbs are **pareō**, *I obey*, **imperō**, *I command*, **parcō**, *I spare*. These words really correspond to the English phrases *I am obedient*, *I give commands*, *I am merciful*.

servus dominō pāret	<i>the slave obeys (i.e. is obedient to) his master</i>
dominus servō imperat	<i>the master commands (i.e. gives commands to) his slave</i>

57. A predicative adjective referring to two subjects, one masculine and one feminine, is generally masculine.

puer et puella sunt pulchri *the boy and girl are beautiful*

VOCABULARY 7.

dol-eō, 2, *I grieve*

imper-ō, 1, *I command* (with
dat. of person)

pār-eō, 2, *I obey* (with dat.)

am-or, -ōris, *m.*, *love*

brev-is, -e, *short*

gaudi-um, -ī, *n.*, *joy*

irāt-us, -a, -um, *angry*

laet-us, -a, -um, *glad*

mul-er, -eris, *f.*, *woman*

pulch-er, -ra, -rum, *beautiful*

sor-or, -ōris, *f.*, *sister*

turp-is, -e, *ugly*

nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor*
(*neque* before vowels)

EXERCISE 7.

A. Translate into English :—

Habebat civis Romanus olim filiam turpem et filium pulchrum : speculum in matris cubiculo inspiciebant : soror a fratre turpis vocata est. Ad patrem irata currit, et ob contumeliam fratris formosi graviter dolet. "Filiū," inquit pater, "sapientia docebo ; filiae tristi subveniam. Boni mores turpem mulierem facient pulchram : forma pulchri hominis malis moribus corrumpetur." Tum iterum amicitia inter fratrem et sororem gignitur : dulci patris caritate iuncti sunt, nec diutius de pulchritudine contendunt, sed pacem perpetuam cum amore mutuo servant.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur soror ad patrem currit ?

Quid fratri dixit pater ?

Quomodo post verba patris vivunt frater et soror ?

Moresne formam pulchram faciunt ?

Quid boni mores faciunt ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The mother of the bold maiden did not obey the cruel judge.
2. I will speak to the sad priest about the joys of life.
3. The short speech of the brave general will be written by the swift pen

of the slave 4. The cow and the ass had been joined under the yoke. 5. Why will he not be chosen consul? 6. The sweet roses had been plucked from the garden of the priest by a bold thief. 7. We are warned about serious danger by the words of the prudent hostage. 8. Sad winter was making the roads heavy with mud. 9. The gentle voice of the light swallow will fill the glad months of summer. 10. He commanded the patient soldiers concerning the women and children of the citizens. 11. The maidens will show (their) great joy with flowers, the priests with speeches. 12. Once boys obeyed, now they command their fathers. 13. The heat of summer is pleasant to the strong. 14. The roots of the trees are being out. 15. The citizens gave great honour to the judges. 16. The voice of the people has been called the voice of God. 17. Soldiers, will you obey the laws of the city? 18. Who understands the duty of a judge? 19. A lion was once caught in a large net. 20. After a long war will come peace.

LESSON 8.

Principal parts (continued) ; third declension consonant-substantives (neuter) and adjectives.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs of the third conjugation in thick type (§ 356, c) from *regō* to *fluō*.

CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (NEUTER).

58. First Example: *nōmen* (*n.*), *name*. Base, *nōmin-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin-a</i>	<i>flūmen</i> (base <i>flūmin-</i>), <i>river</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>nōmin-is</i>	<i>nōmin-um</i>	<i>fulgur</i> („ <i>fulgur-</i>), <i>lightning</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>nōmin-ī</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>	<i>līmen</i> („ <i>līmin-</i>), <i>threshold</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>nōmin-e</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>	<i>lūmen</i> („ <i>lūmin-</i>), <i>light</i>
		<i>sēmen</i> („ <i>sēmin-</i>), <i>seed</i>

Second Example: *opus* (*n.*), *work*. Base, *oper-*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N. V. A.</i> <i>opus</i>	<i>oper-a</i>	<i>caput</i> (base <i>capit-</i>), <i>n.</i> , <i>head</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>oper-is</i>	<i>oper-um</i>	<i>cor</i> („ <i>cord-</i>), <i>n.</i> , <i>heart</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>oper-ī</i>	<i>oper-ibus</i>	<i>corpus</i> („ <i>corpor-</i>), <i>body</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>oper-e</i>	<i>oper-ibus</i>	<i>crūs</i> („ <i>crūr-</i>), <i>leg</i>
		<i>decus</i> („ <i>decor-</i>), <i>ornament</i>
		<i>genus</i> („ <i>gener-</i>), <i>race, kind</i>
		<i>ōs</i> („ <i>ōr-</i>), <i>mouth</i>

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

59. This division consists of—

- (a) Adjectives of the comparative degree (§ 100) ;
- (b) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form for all genders alike, and the base ending in a short syllable.

Examples : (a) *longior, longius, longer.* Base, *longiōr-.*
 (b) *pauper, poor* „ *pauper-.*

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i> longior	longius	longiōr-ēs	longiōr-a
<i>Acc.</i> longiōr-em	longius	longiōr-ēs	longiōr-a
<i>Gen.</i>	longiōr-is		longiōr-um
<i>Dat.</i>	longiōr-i		longiōr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	longiōr-e		longiōr-ibus

Singular.		Plural.	
M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i> pauper		pauper-ēs	none
<i>Acc.</i> pauper-em	pauper	pauper-ēs	none
<i>Gen.</i>	pauper-is		pauper-um
<i>Dat.</i>	pauper-i		pauper-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	pauper-e		pauper-ibus

VOCABULARY 8.

sil-ēs, 2, I am silent

olām-or, ōris, m., shout

dol-or, -ōris, m., grief

equ-us, -i, m., horse

fidēl-is, -e, faithful

fin-is, -is, m., end

īlucund-us, -a, -um, pleasant

mem-or, gen. -oris, mindful

mon-s, -tis, m., mountain

suāv-is, -e, sweet

vall-is, -is, f., valley

virid-is, -e, green

ergō, therefore

frustrā, in vain

EXERCISE 8.

A. Translate into English :—

Proserpina, deae filia, cum ancillis multis per prata viridia olim errabat : in valle iucunda flores suaves a puellis pulchris carpebantur : puellarum animos delectat praeda inanis, flores enim ubique crescunt. Forte Proserpina nullam comitem in una parte viae habuit. Tum rex inferorum, patruus Proserpinae, virginem pulchram equis velocibus avexit : e lumine virgo in tenebras profundas rapiebatur. Magna voce ancillae nomen dominae frustra clamabant, sed nulla vox clamoribus respondebat ; et inter montes magnum silentium fuit. O puella, hominum urbes numquam iterum

videbis ; inter Manes semper vives et regnabis. Corda ancillarum maesta erant : pectora ob dolorem ingentem frustra plangebant. Semper dominae carae memores erunt : neque umquam patruo crudeli ignoscent : semper fideles iniuriam dominae in memoria habebunt.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid Proserpina cum ancillis faciebat ?

Quomodo rex inferorum Proserpinam avexit ?

Nonne ancillae dominam quaesiverunt ?

Num memoriam dominae ancillae amittent ?

Quid postea facit Proserpina ?

Num homines umquam postea virginem videbant ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The idle boys will have been beaten by the angry master.
2. The broad river will have flowed beneath the long bridge into the great sea.
3. The voice of the famous prophet had been heard in the ancient city after many years.
4. The unhappy soldier has been sent through the whole land without companions.
5. Why are the fields so (tam) green in the summer ?
6. Darkness once covered the waters.
7. The daughter of the queen of heaven was carried down from the green valley.
8. On the shore of the vast sea sat the unhappy girl.
9. The poet's father was poor ; but he tilled (his) little field for his children.
10. O cruel uncle, you carried away the mistress of the faithful handmaidens into (thy) gloomy kingdom.
11. Every day the rays of the kind sun bring light to men.
12. The poor envy the rich ; the rich despise the poor.
13. The shining light will give joy to weary sailors.
14. The works of the poets were short and sad.
15. All the rivers run into the sea.
16. Many flowers are plucked on the sides of mountains.
17. The enemy have laid-waste all the fields.
18. Brave Lartius threw down Aunus into the deep river.
19. On his head was a garland of white roses.
20. The wretched maidens were silent in the pleasant valley.

LESSON 9.

Deponents and semi-deponents ; substantives of the fourth and fifth declensions.

DEPONENT VERBS.

60. Some Latin verbs are conjugated in the passive only, but have an active meaning throughout; such verbs are called **deponents**, because they *lay aside* (*dēpōnere*) their passive meaning.

61. There are four conjugations of deponent verbs resembling those of the regular passive verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
PRESENT TENSE.			
<i>I exhort</i>	<i>I fear</i>	<i>I speak</i>	<i>I divide</i>
hort-or	ver-eor	loqu-or	part-ior
hort-āris or āre	ver-āris or ver-āre	loqu-eris or loqu-ere	part-iris or part-ire
hort-ātur	ver-ētur	loqu-itur	part-itur
hort-āmur	ver-ēmur	loqu-imur	part-imur
hort-āmini	ver-ēmini	loqu-imini	part-imini
hort-antur	ver-entur	loqu-untur	part-iuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>I was exhorting</i>	<i>I was fearing</i>	<i>I was speaking</i>	<i>I was dividing</i>
hort-ābar	ver-ēbar	loqu-ēbar	part-iēbar
hort-ābāris or hort-ābāre	ver-ēbāris or ver-ēbāre	loqu-ēbāris or loqu-ēbāre	part-iēbāris or part-iēbāre
hort-ābātur	ver-ēbātur	loqu-ēbātur	part-iēbātur
hort-ābāmur	ver-ēbāmur	loqu-ēbāmur	part-iēbāmur
hort-ābāmini	ver-ēbāmini	loqu-ēbāmini	part-iēbāmini
hort-ābantur	ver-ēbantur	loqu-ēbantur	part-iēbantur

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>I shall exhort</i>	<i>I shall fear</i>	<i>I shall speak</i>	<i>I shall divide</i>
hort-ābor	ver-ēbor	loqu-ar	part-lar
hort-āberis or hort-ābere	ver-ēberis or ver-ēbere	loqu-ēris or loqu-ēre	part-iēris or part-iēre
hort-ābitur	ver-ēbitur	loqu-ētur	part-iētur
hort-ābimur	ver-ēbimur	loqu-ēmur	part-iēmur
hort-ābimini	ver-ēbimini	loqu-ēmini	part-iēmini
hort-ābuntur	ver-ēbuntur	loqu-entur	part-lentur

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>I exhorted or have exhorted</i>	<i>I feared or have feared</i>	<i>I spoke or have spoken</i>	<i>I divided or have divided</i>
hortāt-us sum	verit-us sum	locūt-us sum	partit-us sum
hortāt-us es	verit-us es	locūt-us es	partit-us es
hortāt-us est	verit-us est	locūt-us est	partit-us est
hortāt-i sumus	verit-i sumus	locūt-i sumus	partit-i sumus
hortāt-i estis	verit-i estis	locūt-i estis	partit-i estis
hortāt-i sunt	verit-i sunt	locūt-i sunt	partit-i sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>I had exhorted</i>	<i>I had feared</i>	<i>I had spoken</i>	<i>I had divided</i>
hortāt-us eram	verit-us eram	locūt-us eram	partit-us eram
hortāt-us erās	verit-us erās	locūt-us erās	partit-us erās
hortāt-us erat	verit-us erat	locūt-us erat	partit-us erat
hortāt-i erāmus	verit-i erāmus	locūt-i erāmus	partit-i erāmus
hortāt-i erātis	verit-i erātis	locūt-i erātis	partit-i erātis
hortāt-i erant	verit-i erant	locūt-i erant	partit-i erant

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>I shall have— exhorted</i>	<i>feared</i>	<i>spoken</i>	<i>divided</i>
hortāt-us erō	verit-us erō	locūt-us erō	partit-us erō
hortāt-us eris	verit-us eris	locūt-us eris	partit-us eris
hortāt-us erit	verit-us erit	locūt-us erit	partit-us erit
hortāt-i erimus	verit-i erimus	locūt-i erimus	partit-i erimus
hortāt-i eritis	verit-i eritis	locūt-i eritis	partit-i eritis
hortāt-i erunt	verit-i erunt	locūt-i erunt	partit-i erunt

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

62. Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only, viz. :—

	Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.		Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation	aud-eō , <i>I dare</i>		aud-ēre		aus-us sum
	gaud-eō , <i>I rejoice</i>		gaud-ēre		gāvis-us sum
Third Conj.	sol-eō , <i>I am accustomed</i>		sol-ēre		solit-us sum
	fid-ō <i>I trust</i>		fid-ere		fis-us sum

So also the compounds **confidō**, *I trust*, **diffidō**, *I distrust*.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE FOURTH (OR U)
DECLENSION.

63. This declension contains substantives of two

- (1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nominative singular ending in **-us** ;
- (2) Neuter words, with nominative singular ending in **-ū**.

(1) Example : **gradus** (m.), *step*. Base, **grad-**.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	grad-us		grad-ūs
Acc.	grad-um		grad-ūs
Gen.	grad-ūs		grad-uum
Dat.	grad-uī		grad-ibus
Abl.	grad-ū		grad-ibus

(2) Example : **genū** (n.), *knee*. Base, **gen-**.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.A.	gen-ū		gen-ua
Gen.	gen-ūs		gen-uum
Dat.	gen-ū		gen-ibus
Abl.	gen-ū		gen-ibus

Obs. 1.—Dative and ablative plural -ubus instead of -ibus is found in some nouns.

Six have -ubus : arcus, acus,
artus, tribus, verū, lacus.

Obs. 2.—Domus, house, has some second declension forms.

Domō for ablative we see,
Domōs, domōrum commonly ;
Bear locative domi in mind ;
The rest like gradus is declined.

FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

64. Example : diēs (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*.
Base, di-.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> di-ēs	di-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> di-em	di-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> di-ēī	di-ērum
<i>Dat.</i> di-ēī	di-ēbus
<i>Abl.</i> di-ē	di-ēbus

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except diēs.

Obs.—Most nouns of this declension have no plural. Only diēs and rēs (f.), *thing*, are fully declined. Spēs, *hope*, has nominative, vocative, and accusative plural, but no genitive, dative, or ablative plural.

VOCABULARY 9.

confirm-ō, 1, *I encourage*
contemn-ō, 3, *I despise*
faci-ō, fēci, factum, 3, *I do*,
make
tu-eor, 2, *I protect*
vag-or, 1, *I wander*
ven-or, 1, *I hunt*

coll-um, -ī, n., *neck*
cust-ōs, -ōdis, m., *guardian*
div-es, gen. -itis, *rich*
fur, furis, m., *thief*
libert-ās, -ātis, f., *freedom*
lim-en, -inis, n., *threshold*
meli-or, -us, *better*

mercātor, -ōris, m., *mer-*
chant
nix, nivis, f., *snow*
offici-um, -ī, n., *duty*
os, ossis, n., *bone*
prim-us, -a, -um, *first*
querēl-a, -ae, 1, *complaint*
redit-us, -ūs, m., *return*
sp-ēs, -ei, f., *hope*
spoli-um, -ī, n., *spoil*
studi-um, -ī, n., *zeal*

ante (with acc.), *before*
propter (with acc.), *on account*
of

EXERCISE 9.

A. Translate into English :—

Lupus et Canis.

Verba lupi libertatis dulcedinem ostendent. Canis corpus cibo pingue fecerat : canem videt lupus fame aeger : “Lupi,” inquit, “fortes sunt, canes minus fortes : cur miser sum, cur canis felix ? quid pro cibo facit ?” Tum canem per urbem ad domini aulam secutus est. Custos liminis erat canis atque a furibus per diem atque noctem domum tuebatur. Sed canis in collo catenam habebat. Tum ait lupus, “Per silvas sine catenis vagabor. Lupis libertas dulcis semper erit. Domini de mensa canibus ossa dabunt ; praedam meliorem venabor.” Ex urbe in silvas discedit lupus : vitam asperam et imbres et nives sine querela patitur. Lupus catenas non famem veritus est : nonne lupum laudabimus ? Spem cibi contempsit : libertate gavisus est. Luporum et canum natura est dissimilis.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid de cane dixit lupus ?

Cur canis corpus pingue erat ?

Quid pro cibo canis facere debebat ?

Cur lupus vitam canis non optavit ?

Quomodo lupus in silvis cibum quaerit ?

Nonne lupus canem recte contemnit ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The dog led the weary wolf across the fields before daylight. 2. They were talking about the duty of the dog. 3. The dogs exhorted the wolves, but to the wolves booty with (cum with ablative) liberty will always be dearer than bread with chains. 4. The bold thieves had been heard through the night by the faithful dog. 5. We will follow a better leader than the rich merchant. 6. The eagle and the wolf divided the spoils. 7. The soldiers of the first legion will divide the booty. 8. The hope of a quick return had cheered the sad queen. 9. Do you not rejoice, O friend, on account of the goodness of your children ? 10. Many things urge the sluggish general to greater zeal.

LESSON 10.

65. THE INFINITIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.	DEPONENT.
CONJUGATIONS.		

I.

PRESENT :	am-āre, <i>to love</i>	am-āri, <i>to be loved</i>	hort-āri, <i>to exhort</i>
PERFECT :	amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i>	amāt-us esse, <i>to have been loved</i>	hortāt-us esse, <i>to have exhorted</i>
FUTURE :	amātūr-us esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	amāt-um iri, <i>to be about to be loved</i>	hortātūr-us esse, <i>to be about to exhort</i>

II.

PRESENT :	mon-ēre, <i>to advise</i>	mon-ēri, <i>to be advised</i>	ver-ēri, <i>to fear</i>
PERFECT :	monu-isse, <i>to have advised</i>	monit-us esse, <i>to have been advised</i>	verit-us esse, <i>to have feared</i>
FUTURE :	monitūr-us esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	monit-um iri, <i>to be about to be advised</i>	veritūr-us esse, <i>to be about to fear</i>

III a.

PRESENT :	reg-ere, <i>to rule</i>	reg-i, <i>to be ruled</i>	loqu-i, <i>to speak</i>
PERFECT :	rex-isse, <i>to have ruled</i>	rect-us esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>	locūt-us esse, <i>to have spoken</i>
FUTURE :	rectūr-us esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	rect-um iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>	locūtūr-us esse, <i>to be about to speak</i>

III b.

PRESENT :	cap-ere, to take	cap-i, to be taken	pati, to suffer
PERFECT :	cōp-isse, to have taken	capt-us esse, to have been taken	pass-us esse, to have suffered
FUTURE :	captūr-us esse, to be about to take	capt-um iri, to be about to be taken	passūr-us esse, to be about to suffer

IV.

PRESENT :	aud-ire, to hear	aud-iri, to be heard	part-iri, to divide
PERFECT :	audiv-isse, to have heard	audīt-us esse, to have been heard	partit-us esse, to have divided
FUTURE :	audītūr-us esse, to be about to hear	audīt-um iri, to be about to be heard	partitūr us esse, to be about to divide

SUM, I am.

esse	to be	fu-isse	to have been
fore or futūr-us esse		to be about to be	

USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

66. The infinitive is really an indeclinable neuter substantive and like a substantive can be used as (a) subject, (b) complement, (c) object of another verb in a finite mood.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>humānum est errāre</i> | <i>to err is human (or it is human to err)</i> |
| (b) <i>dei esse intelliguntur patriam amāvisse dicitur</i> | <i>the gods are understood to exist he is said to have loved his country</i> |
| (c) <i>puerōs canere docēbam</i> | <i>I was teaching the boys singing (or to sing)</i> |

67. The infinitive may, as in English, have an object (direct or indirect) of its own, and may be modified by an adverb.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>sapientis est cautē vivere</i> | <i>it is characteristic (or the part) of a wise man to live carefully</i> |
| <i>bonum est magistrō pārere puellam amāvisse dicitur</i> | <i>it is good to obey one's master he is said to have loved the girl</i> |

Contrast with this the following :—

dei beātī esse intelliguntur	<i>the gods are understood to be happy (or it is understood that the gods are happy)</i>
amātus esse dicitur	<i>he is said to have been loved</i>

68. The infinitive is also used as the **object** of many verbs implying *duty, ability, desire, intention, custom, etc.*, e.g. *debeō, possum, cupiō, cōnor, soleō.*

Gaius laudāri dēbet	<i>Gaius ought to be praised</i>
Gaius frātre laudāre solet	<i>Gaius is wont to praise his brother</i>
Gaius frātre necāre cōnātus est	<i>Gaius tried to kill his brother</i>

69. Observe the difference between English and Latin idiom in the following :—

dēbeō librum scribere	<i>I ought to write a book</i>
dēbui librum scribere	<i>I ought to have written a book</i>

Obs.—In English *ought* does duty as present and as past : the time therefore has to be marked by the tense of the infinitive. In Latin the distinction of tense is marked in the verb of obligation, not in the infinitive.

VOCABULARY 10.

adipisc-or, adeptus, 3 (dep.), I <i>obtain</i>	aureus, -a, -um, golden
cōn-or, 1, I try	certām-en, -inis, n., contest
consequ-or, consecutus, 3, I <i>overtake</i>	curs-us, -ūs, m., running
curr-ō, 3, I run	mēt-a, -ae, f., goal
dubit-ō, 1, I hesitate	mor-a, -tis, f., death
fall-ō, 3, I deceive	pōm-um, -i, n., apple
iact-ō, 1, I throw	preti-um, -ī, n., prize
nūb-ō, 3, I marry	tard-us, -a, -um, slow
vinc-ō, vici, victum, 3, I con- <i>quer</i>	Venus, -eris, f., Venus
viv-ō, vixi, victum, 3, I live	celeriter, swiftly
	cupidē, eagerly

EXERCISE 10.

A. Translate into English :—

Atalanta et poma aurea.

In Calydone vixit Atalanta regis filia. Dicitur fuisse virgo valde pulchra et a multis amata esse. Nemo autem Atalantam in matrimonium duxerat; nam pater locutus erat, "Virgo celeriter currit: viro non nubet nisi certamine cursus superata erit: mors pretium tardis." Multi pulchram et crudelem virginem vincere conati erant. Omnes ab Atalanta certamine superati sunt et poenam dare debuerunt. Tandem dolo superata esse dicitur. Hippomenes poma aurea a Venere, amoris dea, adeptus esse narratur.

In arena certatim currunt, virgo et vir: virgo virum consequitur et victura esse videtur: tum vir in humum pro virgine poma iactavisse dicitur: virgo visa est dubitare; cunctatur et poma cupide tollit. Interea vir ad metam, finem arenae primus pervenit. Virginum est aurum amare: virorum auro virgines fallere.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur amabatur Atalanta?

Quid Venus viro dat?

Quis in arena cunctatur?

Quomodo Atalanta superata est?

Quid erat tardis pretium?

Nonne virgines et viri aurum amaverunt?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. It is not always pleasant to obey the master. 2. Paris, son of Priam, is said to have given a golden apple to Venus, the goddess of love. 3. Why was the girl trying to conquer the man in the race? 4. Will Atalanta, the swift maiden, marry the brave soldier? 5. Boys ought to obey (their) mothers and to love (their) brothers. 6. It is a good and honourable thing to fight for king and fatherland. 7. It will be pleasant to lie in the green fields under the shade of the trees. 8. It is a mark of brave men to fear nothing and to love danger. 9. A great shout is reported to have been heard by the guardian of the harbour. 10. The Roman citizen was trying to make friendship between his bold son and beautiful daughter. 11. Calvus ought to have been chosen consul and ought to be loved by the citizens.

LESSON 11.

The personal and reflexive pronouns; possessive adjectives; accusative and infinitive.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

70. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **ego** and **tū**, are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined :—

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, I	nōs, we	
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	{ nostrī	
<i>Dat.</i>	mihī or mihi	{ nostrum (partitive*)	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	
		nōbīs	
Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N.V.</i>	tū, thou or you	vōs, ye or you	
<i>Acc.</i>	tē	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	tuī	{ vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i>	tibī or tibi	{ vestrum (partitive*)	
<i>Abl.</i>	tē	vōbīs	
		vōbīs	

71. There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it*; but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (Lesson 23).

* *I.e.* dependent on a word denoting *part*, *e.g.* **multī nostram**, *many of us*.

72. The personal pronouns of the first and second person serve as reflexives; e.g. *mē culpō, I blame myself.*

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, viz. *sē, himself, herself, itself, themselves*, which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. sē or sēsē

Gen. suī

Dat. sibī or sibi

Abl. sē or sēsē

73. The nominative of the personal pronoun is used when it is emphatic or when a contrast is expressed.

ego saltō, tū natās

I am dancing, you are swimming

74. A composite subject (i.e. a subject consisting of two or more substantives or pronouns) has its verb in the plural; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "prior" person, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ego et Marcus errāmus

Marcus and I are wrong

tū et Tullia errātis

you and Tullia are wrong

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

75. These are formed from the personal and reflexive pronouns, singular and plural:—

From Singular Pronouns.

meus, mea, meum, my

tuus, tua, tuum, thy, your

suus, sua, suum, his, her, its

From Plural Pronouns.

noster, nostra, nostrum, our

vester, vestra, vestrum, your

suus, sua, suum, their

Obs. 1.—When the above adjectives are used otherwise than as attributes, they are rendered by *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, instead of by *my, thy, her, our, your, their*.

Obs. 2.—Like other adjectives, they can be used with the substantive understood, e.g. *nostri, our men*.

76. Meus, tuus, and suus are declined like **bonus**, except that **meus** has vocative singular masculine **mī**; **noster** and **vester** are declined like **niger**. **Tuus** refers to a single person, **vester** to more than one; and this distinction must be kept in Latin, though both are often translated by *your* in English.

tū saltās : frāter tuus (not vester) cantat	<i>you (sing.) dance ; your brother sings</i>
vōs saltātis : frāter vester (not tuus) cantat	<i>you (pl.) dance ; your brother sings</i>

77. Suus, being formed from the reflexive **sē**, is generally used of something belonging to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if *his* in a principal sentence refers to something belonging to the subject of the sentence, we must render it by **su-us, -a, -um**; otherwise we must use **ēius** (genitive of **is, ea, id**).

patrem suum necāvit	<i>he killed his (own) father</i>
patrem ēius necāvit	<i>he killed his (someone else's) father</i>

NOTE.—These personal pronouns and possessive adjectives are only inserted in Latin where they are emphatic or where their omission would cause ambiguity. Thus **tē amō**, not **tē ego amō**, *I love you*; **patrem necāvit**, *he killed his father* (where there is no doubt as to whose father he killed).

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.

78. In § 66 every infinitive, whether it had an object or not, was said to be either the subject or the complement of the predicate, and every predicate was either a form of the verb **esse** or a verb in the passive voice.

79. In the English sentences *they say that he has loved his country, they understand that the gods exist* (§ 66, b), we have subordinate substantive clauses, dependent upon verbs of **saying** or **thinking**. In Latin the subordinate clause will be thus translated :—

eum amāvisse	<i>that he has loved</i>
deōs esse	<i>that the gods exist</i>

i.e. the **subject** (which is in the nominative case in English) becomes **accusative** in Latin, the **predicate** (which is in the indicative mood in English) becomes **infinitive** in Latin.

80. This is known as the **Accusative and Infinitive** construction. In English we sometimes use a similar construction; e.g. *I think the man to be honest* is the equivalent of *I think that the man is honest*. These are both translated into Latin by *putō hominem esse probum*. The phrase *hominem . . . probum* is called a **dependent statement**.

81. Such phrases are usually dependent upon a principal verb of **saying, knowing, thinking, promising, hoping**, or phrases like **it is certain, it is agreed, there is a rumour**, etc. The following points are important:—

- (1) In Latin the **subject of the infinitive** must
- (2) Instead of *dicō nōn*, *I say that . . . not*, *negō*, *I deny that*, is used.
- (3) The **accusative and infinitive construction** is used after *iubeō*, *I order*, *vetō*, *I forbid*, e.g.

**Caesar Labiſnum cum primā
legiōne ſequi iubet**

*Caesar orders Labienus to
follow with the first legion*

82. (a) The **present infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **contemporaneous** with that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the **present tense** would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT:—

Caesar appropinquat *Caesar is approaching or approaches*

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT:—

nuntiant, they announce	}	Caesarem appropinquāre
nuntiābunt, they will announce		that Caesar is approach-
nuntiāverunt, they have announced		ing or approaches
nuntiābant, they were announcing		Caesarem appropinquāre
nuntiāverunt, they announced		that Caesar was approach-
nuntiāverant, they had announced		ing or approached

(b) The perfect infinitive is used when the action of the dependent statement is prior to that of the introductory verb, i.e. when a past tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT:—

Caesar appropinquābat
Caesar appropinquāvit

Caesar was approaching
Caesar (has) approached

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT:—

nuntiant, they announce	} Caesarem appropinquāvisse that Caesar has approached
nuntiābunt, they will announce	
nuntiāverunt, they have announced	} Caesarem appropinquāvisse that Caesar had approached
nuntiābant, they were announcing	
nuntiāverunt, they announced	
nuntiāverant, they had announced	

(c) The future infinitive is used when the action of the dependent statement is subsequent to that of the introductory verb, i.e. when the future tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT:—

Caesar appropinquābit

Caesar will approach

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT:—

nuntiant, they announce	} Caesarem appropinquātūrum esse
nuntiābunt, they will announce	
nuntiāverunt, they have announced	} Caesarem appropinquātūrum esse that Caesar would approach
nuntiābant, they were announcing	
nuntiāverunt, they announced	
nuntiāverant, they had announced	

83. After verbs of hoping, promising, and threatening the accusative and future infinitive construction is regular in Latin, though in English the present infinitive (as direct object) is generally used.

spērat sē regnātūrum [esse]
prōmisit sē ei praeium
datūrum [esse]

he hopes to (i.e. that he will)
rule
he promised to (i.e. that he
would) give him the reward

Obs.—**Sē** is always used in this construction to translate *he, they*, etc., referring to the subject of the main verb.

VOCABULARY 11.

appell-ō, 1, *I call*
 inquit, *says he*
 pollic-eor, 2, *I promise*
 viol-ō, 1, *I infringe, violate*

agm-en, -inis, *n., army (on march)*
 arm-a, -ōrum, *n. pl., weapons*
 diligen-s (gen. -tis), *industrious, diligent*

Gall-us, -i, *m., a Gaul*
 Germān-us, -i, *m., a German*
 iūs, iūris, *n., right*
 lēgāt-us, -i, *m., envoy*
 rēs publica (gen. rēi publicae),
f., state
 servit-ūs, -ūtis, *f., slavery*
 summ-us, -a, -um, *highest, most important*

EXERCISE 11.

A. Translate into English:—

Caesar et Ariovistus.

Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit. Pollicitus est se rem curaturum esse; sperabat enim Ariovistum finem iniuriarum facturum; dixit Aeduos saepe fratres a senatu appellatos esse, sed in servitute a Germanis teneri. "Mihi," inquit, "et rei publicae turpe est Germanorum iniurias pati: bellum in hostes populi Romani ego et exercitus meus geremus."

Primum tamen legatos ad Ariovistum mittere Caesari placuit. Legati dixerunt se pro Caesare de summis rebus loqui cupere: negavit Ariovistus se in Galliae fines contra Gallorum voluntatem agmen duxisse. "Vester," inquit, "dux nobis iniuriam magnam fecit; cur vos, O legati, ius nostrum violatis? spero nos numquam iniurias vestras neglecturos esse. Ego me armis contra vos defendam; a vobis Germani ex Gallorum agris numquam pellemur."

E ducis Germanorum verbis intellexit Caesar Ariovistum hostem populo Romano semper fore.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Quomodo Caesar Gallorum animos confirmavit?

Quomodo Ariovistus iniurias in Aeduos faciebat?

Quid Caesar de iniuriis Ariovisti putavit?

Cur Ariovistus negavit se iniurias in Aeduos fecisse?

Quid dixit Ariovistus legatis?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. I hope, says he, that you will free Rome from the Gauls.
2. I was reading, you were talking.
3. She denies that she has been warned concerning the danger.
4. We think that he has taken away his own brother's books.
5. A great priest was wont to say, "I and my king have done many-things (*n.pl.*)."
6. He thought that you had done him (*dat.*) a great injury.
7. You and I always have rejoiced that we were free.
8. Will you deny that your father has always been feared by you?
9. I have promised to give rewards to the diligent boys.
10. You will defend yourselves from injury with weapons.
11. The lieutenant reports that he has seen the enemy.
12. We have been called brothers by the Roman senate.
13. Ariovistus says he will wage war on the Romans.
14. They say that the maiden was very beautiful.
15. I hear that he has done his brother (*dat.*) a great wrong.
16. Do you not believe that the legion has arrived?
17. Caesar said that the Germans would never be his friends.
18. We have reached the Rhine and the territories of the enemy.
19. We have suffered many evils; now we will fight.
20. They think that they will not be conquered.

LESSON 12.

84. THE GERUND.

	amō, <i>I love</i>	moneō, <i>I advise</i>	regō, <i>I rule</i>	capiō, <i>I take,</i>	audiō, <i>I hear</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	(am-andum)	(mon-endum)	(reg-endum)	(cap-iendum)	(aud-iendum)
<i>Acc.</i>	am-andum	mon-endum	reg-endum	cap-iendum	aud-iendum
<i>Gen.</i>	am-andi	mon-endi	reg-endi	cap-iendi	aud-iendi
<i>Dat.</i>	am-andō	mon-endō	reg-endō	cap-iendō	aud-iendō
<i>Abl.</i>	am-andō	mon-endō	reg-endō	cap-iendō	aud-iendō

Acc. am-andum, *loving*; *Gen.* am-andi, *of loving*; *Dat.* am-andō, *for loving*; *Abl.* am-andō, *by loving*.

	hortor, <i>I exhort</i>	vereor, <i>I fear</i>	loquor, <i>I speak</i>	partior, <i>I divide</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	(hort-andum)	(ver-endum)	(loqu-endum)	(part-iendum)
<i>Acc.</i>	hort-andum	ver-endum	loqu-endum	part-iendum
<i>Gen.</i>	hort-andi	ver-endi	loqu-endi	part-iendi
<i>Dat.</i>	hort-andō	ver-endō	loqu-endō	part-iendō
<i>Abl.</i>	hort-andō	ver-endō	loqu-endō	part-iendō

85. The gerund is an abstract substantive of neuter gender used in the singular only; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, *e.g.* amandum, *loving*, *i.e.* the act of loving, and corresponds to the English verbal noun in -ing (*e.g.* "I take exercise by *walking*").

Obs.—The nominative of the gerund is not found except in the case of intransitive verbs; it is therefore included in parentheses () above.

86. The gerund of an intransitive verb is used with *est*, *erat*, etc., in the nominative singular to express *duty* or *necessity*. The person concerned is put in the dative case.

nōbis ambulandum est

we must walk (lit. there is a walking for us)

Obs.—This nominative can naturally become accusative in a dependent statement (see § 80).

dixi nōbis ambulandum esse

I said we must walk

87. The accusative of the gerund is used after some prepositions, especially *ad*, for the purpose of.

breve tempus satis longum
est ad bene vivendum*for living aright a short
time is long enough*

88. The genitive of the gerund is frequently used in dependence on substantives and adjectives expressing fondness or desire, and with the ablatives *grātiā*, *causā*, for the sake of, on account of.

equitēs cupidī sunt agrōs
lātē vastandi*the horsemen are desirous of
laying waste the fields far
and wide*Catilina regnandī grātiā
peccāvit*Catiline sinned for the sake of
reigning*

89. The dative of the gerund is used with certain adjectives.

erant pugnandō parēs nostri

*our men were equal to (the
task of) fighting*

90. The ablative gerund is used with or without a preposition, under the same circumstances as is the ablative of an ordinary substantive.

tū nōbis cunctandō restituis .
rem*thou by delaying restorest for-
tune to us*honestum in sua omnibus
tribuendō versātur*honesty consists in giving to
all men their own*

VOCABULARY 12.

fin-iō , 4, <i>I finish</i>	fab-er , -ri, m., <i>craftsman</i>
imit-or , 1, <i>I imitate</i>	illustr-is , -e, <i>famous</i>
nesc-iō , 4, <i>I am ignorant</i>	lev-is , -e, <i>light</i>
or-ō , 1, <i>I pray</i>	mod-us , -i, m., <i>manner</i>
vol-ō , 1, <i>I fly</i>	ord-ō , -inis, m., <i>order</i>
aequ-or , -oris, n., <i>sea</i>	pinn-a , -ae, f., <i>feather</i>
ar-s , -tis, f., <i>device</i>	vincul-um , -i, n., <i>bond</i>
cūr-a , -ae, f., <i>care</i>	quō ? <i>whither</i> ?

EXERCISE 12.

A. Translate into English:—

The Flying Machine

Ingenium saepe necessitate movetur: quis maiorum putavit hominem per nubes cursum umquam recturum esse? Faber callidus in ordine pinnae quondam disponebat et leve lini opus vinculis ligavit. Tandem labor novi generis est finitus: cupidus erat filius patrem imitandi: nesciebat humeris suis pinnae esse paratas. Tum pater, "Primum," inquit, "ego volabo: tua cura erit sequi: sequendo tutus eris." Tum in auras surgendo puerum timidum modum volandi docet. Gaudio viam caelestem tentandi puer timere desinit. Supra terram vectus est; sed non satis validae erant pinnae ad puerum diu sustinendum. Territus a caelo in aequora despexit: auxilium patris oravit sed nihil orando fecit: nam in mare cum pinnis mersus est. Ossa teget tellus, et mari Icario nomen pueri servabitur.

B. Oral Exercise:—

- Quomodo pinnae disponebat faber?
- Quid dixit pater puero cupido?
- Quomodo pater filium volare docet?
- Cur pinnae puerum non sustinuerunt?
- Quo cadit puer?
- Quomodo illustris est puer

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. We ought not to lose the cause of life for the sake of living.
2. Rumour gathers strength by flying through the cities of men.
3. The boys will gain pleasure from (& with abl.) learning.
4. The general will not be permitted to fit his army for fighting.
5. He told the soldiers that he would give rewards for the sake of encouraging the timid.
6. Life is not long enough for playing.
7. The love of writing has made many (and) bad books.
8. "I will cease," says he, "to speak about my troubles : by being silent I shall show myself braver."
9. Who says that I ought to obey you?
10. By singing songs the poet freed himself from the cruel sailors.
11. We must not imitate bad manners (*mōs*).
12. Birds learn to fly by imitating (their) parents.
13. The pleasure of flying has overcome the fear of falling.
14. We must either conquer in war or obey our masters.
15. By daring and doing the Roman state has increased its power.

LESSON 13.

Principal parts of verbs of first conjugation ; gender of substantives of third declension. Apposition.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *dō* to *vetō* (§ 354).

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

91. The gender of substantives of the third declension is determined according to the ending of the nominative singular as follows :—

Masculine : Words ending in -er, -ō, -or, -ōs ; also imparisyllabic words in -ēs or es.

Examples : anser, ordō, labor, custōs, mōs, mīles (see vocabulary).

Feminine : Words ending in -ās, -aus, -dō, -gō, -is, -x ; -s, preceded by a consonant ; also parisyllabic words in -ēs, and abstract substantives in -iūs and -iō.

Examples : aetās, fraus, multitūdō, orīgō, ovis, lex, urbs, nūbēs, servitūs, opīniō (see vocabulary).

Neuter : Words ending in -ar, -ur, -us ; -l, -a, -n, -c, -e, -t.

Examples : calcar, fulgur, genus, sal, nōmen, lac, mare, caput (see vocabulary).

Obs.—In this as in other declensions the form does not affect a word's gender when the latter is determined by the meaning ; e.g. *fūr*, *thief*, is masculine, notwithstanding the rule that words ending in -ur are neuter.

The genders of declension three
From each word's ending we may see :
-er, -ō, -or, -ōs are masculine ;
-ās, -aus, -is, -x are feminine,

-s also after a consonant,
 And -s that has no increment ;
 -es otherwise is masculine.
 Of neuter endings there are nine :
 Note -ar, and -ur, and -us ; the rest
 By *lancet* are remembered best.

Obs.—The exceptions to the above rules, which are fairly numerous, should be noted as they occur.

APPOSITION.

92. A substantive may stand to another substantive in the relation of an attribute, and is then said to be in **apposition** to it. A substantive agrees in **case** with that to which it is in apposition, but not necessarily in number or gender.

<i>tē canam, deōrum nuntium</i>	<i>thee will I hymn, the messenger of the gods</i>
<i>urbs Rōma</i>	<i>the city of Rome</i>
<i>Coriolī oppidum captum est</i>	<i>the town of Coriolī was taken</i>

Obs. 1.—Note that apposition is often represented by the English preposition *of*. (*Coriolī* is nominative plural.)

Obs. 2.—The commonest cases where there is no agreement in number and gender are : (1) where the name of a town, often masculine or feminine plural, is coupled with *oppidum* (n.) or *urbs* (f.), e.g. *Athēnae, urbs antiqua, Athens, an ancient city* ; (2) where a collective substantive is used, e.g. *Rōmānī, gens superba, the Romans, a proud race*.

VOCABULARY 13.

<i>ag-ō, 3, I do</i>	<i>gen-s, -tis, f., people</i>
<i>dēlibē-ō, 1, I consult</i>	<i>fin-is, -is, m., boundary</i>
<i>revoc-ō, 2, I recall</i>	<i>insolen-s, gen. -entis, arrogant</i>
<i>subig-ō, subēgī, subactum</i> (<i>cpd. of agō</i>), <i>I subdue</i>	<i>memōri-a, -ae, f., remembrance</i>
<i>temper-ō, 1, I refrain</i>	<i>possessi-ō, -ōnis, f., possession</i>
<i>barbar-us, -a, -um, savage</i>	<i>prōvinci-a, -ae, f., province</i>
<i>facult-ās, -ātis, f., opportunity</i>	<i>rōb-ur, -oris, n., strength</i>
<i>fer-us, -a, -um, fierce</i>	<i>postē, afterwards</i>

EXERCISE 18.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar et Ariovistus (continued).

Caesar, Romanorum imperator, Ariovisto, forti gentis Germanae duci, se Aeduorum, populi Romani amicorum et sociorum, iniurias non neglecturum esse scripsit. “Cur,” inquit, “tu, homo audax et insolens, in Gallia, regione populi Romani armis subacta, versari audes? Germanos, gentem feram et barbaram, a sceleribus temperaturos esse non puto. Quare nulla facultas viam in provinciam faciendi vobis dabitur.” Tum respondit Ariovistus se nec Caesari parere cupere, nec Romanorum verba curare. Romanos dixit orbis terrarum dominos se appellare; sed multos duces Romanorum, viros claros, a Germanis, gente forti, superatos esse. Tum Caesar, “Diem,” inquit, “ad deliberandum vobis dabo: postea milites nostri, flos et robur gentis Romanae, ob tuam insolentiam e finibus Gallorum, amicorum nostrorum, et te et Germanos omnes expellent.”

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quis erat Caesar?

Quis erat Ariovistus?

Quid Caesar Aeduos appellavit?

Cur Caesar Germanos in Galliam intrare vetuit?

Num Ariovistus Romanos a suis superatum iri putavit?

Quid tandem Caesar Ariovisto dixit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The king of the Romans, an unjust man, has taken Gabii, a neighbouring city. 2. The citizens, foolish men, had made the king's son the leader of the army. 3. A way of taking the city is shown to the son by (his) father, the wise king. 4. There was a garden, a pleasant place, near the bank of the river. 5. The father gave a message to Davus (his) faithful servant. 6. With a stick he cut off the heads of the beautiful flowers. 7. He will slay, says he, the chief men of the city, enemies of the Roman people. 8. I hope that my crafty son Sextus will hand over to me the city of Gabii. 9. Shall we not think that the townsmen were foolish? 10. Labienus, (when) Caesar's lieutenant, won many victories.

LESSON 14.

Principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation ; present participle of regular verbs and deponents ; use of the present participle.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *mordeō* to *censeō* (§ 355).

93. PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

DEPONENTS.

Present Participles.

Conjugations.

I.	am-ans,	<i>loving</i>		hort-ans,	<i>urging</i>
II.	mon-ens,	<i>advising</i>		ver-ens,	<i>fearing</i>
III.	reg-ens,	<i>ruling</i>	(None.)	loqu-ens,	<i>speaking</i>
	cap-iens,	<i>taking</i>		pati-ens,	<i>suffering</i>
IV.	audi-ens,	<i>hearing</i>		parti-ens,	<i>dividing</i>

Future Participles.

I.	amāt-ūrus	about to {	<i>love</i>		hortāt-ūrus	about to {	<i>urge</i>
II.	monit-ūrus		<i>advise</i>		verit-ūrus		<i>fear</i>
III.	rect-ūrus		<i>rule</i>	(None.)	locūt-ūrus		<i>speak</i>
	capt-ūrus		<i>take</i>		pass-ūrus		<i>suffer</i>
IV.	audit-ūrus		<i>hear</i>		partit-ūrus		<i>divide</i>

Perfect Participles.

I.		amāt-us	having been {	<i>loved</i>	hortāt-us	having {	<i>urged</i>
II.		monit-us		<i>advised</i>	verit-us		<i>feared</i>
III.	(None.)	rect-us		<i>ruled</i>	locūt-us		<i>spoken</i>
		capt-us		<i>taken</i>	pass-us		<i>suffered</i>
IV.		audit-us		<i>heard</i>	partit-us		<i>divided</i>

Obs — *Amans*, etc., are declined like *prudens* ; *amātūrus*, *amātes*, etc., like *bonus*, -a, -um.

94. The participle (so called because it *partakes* of the nature of a verb and of an adjective) is a **verbal adjective**. As adjective, it must agree with its noun in number, gender, and case; as verb, it may govern a direct or indirect object or be qualified by an adverb.

Gaius Marcum labōre confectum interfecit

Gaius killed Marcus, while (Marcus was) exhausted with toil

Sullae sacra facienti anguis apparuit

a snake appeared to Sulla while (or when he was) performing the holy rites

hostēs nōn expectantēs invēnimus

we came on the enemy who (or though they) did not expect us

95. The participle is often used (1) as an ordinary adjective, *e.g.*

rex moriens

the dying king

res ventūrae

coming events

and hence (2) as a substantive, *e.g.*

adolescens

a youth

amans

a lover

96. The participles, as will be gathered from the above examples, may be rendered in English by

- (1) the corresponding **participle** or **participial phrase**,
- (2) an adjective or adjectival clause or phrase,
- (3) an adverbial clause or phrase.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

97. The present (*e.g.* **amans**, **hortans**) and future (*e.g.* **amātūrus**, **hortātūrus**) participles are always **active** in meaning; there is neither a present nor a future participle **passive** in Latin.

98. The time denoted by the present participle is always the same as that denoted by the main verb.

Catilina pugnans cecidit

Catilina fell fighting

Marcum dormientem interfecit

*he killed Marcus while sleeping
(or the sleeping Marcus)*

99. The future participle is not often used, except as forming part of the future infinitive with the verb *esse*. It sometimes is used with other parts of the same verb to form a secondary future tense, *e.g.*

scripturus sum

I am about to write or intending to write

scripturus eram

I was going to write

VOCABULARY 14.

elāb-or, elapsus, 3, I glide away

horreō, 2, stand on end

**innuō, -nuī, -nūtum, 3, I nod
at, beckon**

insonō, 1, I clank, rattle

**prōmitt-ō (cpd. of mittō), 3,
I let grow, I promise**

barb-a, -ae, 1, beard

cap-ax, -ācis, roomy

catēn-a, -ae, f., chain

effigi-ēs, -ēi, f., apparition

imāg-ō, -inis, f., phantom, ghost

man-us, -ūs, f., hand

son-us, -i, m., sound

strepit-us, -ūs, m., clanking, noise

vincul-um, -i, n., chain

EXERCISE 14.

A. Translate into English :—

Domus terribilis.

Olim erat magna et capax domus. Per silentium noctis sonus ferri et strepitus vinculorum audiebantur: mox videbatur imago hominis morbo confecti; barba erat promissa, horrentes capilli: manibus catenas gerebat. Deserta inde erat domus et propter monstrum relicta. Multos autem post menses, vir sapiens et doctus domum emit. In prima domus parte sedens, parari sibi lumen et libros iubet. Initio silentium est; nihil audit: mox tamen videt narratam sibi effigiem. Stabat innuebatque digito, similis vocanti. Vir non se movet. Imago prope caput legentis catenis insonat.

Sapiens tollit lumen et sequitur. Repente in aream elapsa deserit comitem. Postridie ossa catenis mixta inveniuntur: collecta publice sepiuntur. Postea effigies neque visa neque audita esse dicitur.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur domus erat vacua?

Quid videbatur?

Quis domum emit?

Nonne sapiens imaginem vidit? Quid audivit?

Ubi erant ossa? Sapiensne verebatur?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. When about to read your letter, I perceived that I had lost a part (of it). 2. The quarrels of lovers renew love 3. The spies announced to the general, while he was sacrificing, that the enemy had been seen by them. 4. The gates of the rich man are filled with a crowd of callers (*say* saluters). 5. Those-about-to-die were wont to salute the emperor. 6. He hopes to attack the enemy unawares. 7. We ought not, while increasing the burdens of the citizens, to confuse (*say* mix) right and wrong. 8. The consul, while exhorting the senators, praised the number of those-seeking office. 9. We will always bring help to the needy (*say* to-those-needing). 10. The farmer slew the wolf as it was coming through the gate. 11. The citizens met Cincinnatus hurrying to the city. 12. He was frightened by the shouts of his soldiers. 13. The apparition frightened the wise man, though he was expecting it. 14. As the king sat by the gate, a slave brought him sad tidings (*say* announced sad things). 15. I saw two women sitting in the cottage. 16. As the king disembarked from the ship, the soldiers saluted him. 17. Did you see the white feet of the laughing girls? 18. The boys were condemned by a cruel king and a lying priest. 19. He was intending to promise that the soldiers should receive a reward. 20. The sleeping king was wounded by a fierce lion.

LESSON 15.

Principal parts (continued); comparison of adjectives; expressions of comparison.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from **canō** to **fallō** (§ 356, A).

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

100. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes: *e.g.* **longus**, *long*; **longior**, *longer*; **longissimus**, *longest*.

In Latin the comparative may also denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree; thus **longior** sometimes means *somewhat long* or *too long*, and **longissimus** often means *very long*.

101. Rules for the formation of the comparative and superlative:—

I. To the base of the positive add—

-ior to form the nominative singular masculine of the comparative;

-issimus to form the nominative singular masculine of the superlative.

All comparative adjectives are declined like **longior** (§ 59), and all superlative adjectives are declined like **bonus** (§ 26).

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
longus	<i>long</i>	long-	long-ior	long-issimus
tristis	<i>sad</i>	trist-	trist-ior	trist-issimus
fēlix	<i>fortunate</i>	fēlic-	fēlic-ior	fēlic-issimus
prūdēns	<i>discreet</i>	prūdēt-	prūdēt-ior	prūdēt- issimus

II. The superlative of adjectives with nominative singular masculine ending in *-er* is formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative singular masculine. (The comparative is formed by adding *-ior* to the base according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher	<i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
tener	<i>tender</i>	tener-	tener-ior	tener-rimus
ācer	<i>sharp</i>	ācr-	ācr-ior	ācer-rimus
celer	<i>swift</i>	celer-	celer-ior	celer-rimus

102. The following six adjectives form their superlative by adding *-limus* to the base.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis	<i>easy</i>	facil-	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis	<i>difficult</i>	difficil-	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis	<i>like</i>	simil-	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis	<i>unlike</i>	dissimil-	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
gracilis	<i>slender</i>	gracil-	gracil-ior	gracil-limus
humilis	<i>low</i>	humil-	humil-ior	humil-limus

Obs.—All other adjectives in *-ilis* form the superlative in the ordinary way; e.g. *fragilis*, *brittle*, *fragilissimus*.

EXPRESSIONS OF COMPARISON.

103. In comparisons *quam* means *than*; the substantives, pronouns, etc., which are compared must be in the same case.

virī fortiōrēs quam fēminae sunt	<i>men are stronger than women</i>
cūr Caesarem fēliciōrem quam Pompēium putās?	<i>why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompey?</i>
māiōra dōna nautīs quam militibus dōnātis	<i>you give greater gifts to sailors than to soldiers</i>

Instead of *quam* followed by a substantive in the nominative or accusative, a substantive in the ablative may express that with which the comparison is made.

virī fēminis fortiōrēs sunt	<i>men are stronger than women</i>
cūr Caesarem Pompēiō fēlici- ōrēm putās?	<i>why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompeius?</i>

VOCABULARY 15.

dēcid-ō, dēcidī, dēcīsum, 3 (<i>opd. of caedō</i>), <i>I cut down</i>	exs-ul, -ulis, c., <i>exile (a person)</i>
ērig-ō, ērexi, ērectum, 3, I <i>raise, erect</i>	frig-us, -oris, n., <i>cold</i>
miser-or, 1, I pity	glaci-ēs, -ēi, f., <i>ice</i>
	hiem-s, -is, f., <i>winter</i>
	ux-or, -ōris, f., <i>wife</i>
ae-s, -ris, n., <i>bronze</i>	nimis, too, too much
cār-us, -a, -um, <i>dear</i>	saepe, adv., <i>often</i>
exsili-um, -i, n., <i>exile (state of)</i>	ubique, <i>everywhere</i>

EXERCISE 15.

A. Translate into English :—

Ovidius exsul.

Quis miserior umquam fuit quam Ovidius Naso, poeta clarissimus? Inter homines lupis saeviores vivere cogeatur; nusquam frigus erat gravius, ibi enim a barba pendebat glacies; ubique nix altissima iacebat. Neque natura solum ferox erat, sed etiam homines ferocissimi: hostes densissimi oppidi muros adoriebantur: tempus longius bello et armis in agris barbarorum dabat poeta, quam olim in patria dederat. Prius enim lusus arma gesserat: iam hostes depellendi causa semper hastam manu tenet.

Saepe exsul scribebat ad amicos se feliciorem in urbe Roma fore quam apud Scythas : vitam enim suam asperrimam esse. "Patria," inquit, "exsilio dulcior est : quid turpius mihi erit quam semper vitam apud barbaros agere, lupis quam hominibus similiores ? Opus facillimum vobis erit, amicum vestrum ad uxorem vita cariorum reducere."

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur poeta se miserrimum esse putabat ?

Quomodo sois gravissimum in Scythis fuisse frigus ?

Nonne putas hiemes apud Scythas graviores quam apud Romanos fuisse ?

Quid poeta a barbaris timebat ?

Quid amicis scribebat poeta ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. We think that our work is easier than yours. 2. The boys' work ought not to be too difficult. 3. The Germans were the bravest enemies of the Roman general. 4. While waiting-for the return of summer, they hoped that the winter would be shorter for themselves than for the Scythians. 5. The poet says that he has erected for himself a monument more lasting than bronze. 6. "My life," she said, "is very sad : death is dearer to me than life." 7. Is the fox more like the wolf than the dog ? It is most unlike the lamb. 8. When about-to-cut-down the tree, he perceived that the axe was too short. 9. The voice of the singer was thought to be too weak. 10. By singing I hope to make my voice very strong. 11. Why are you sad ? 12. Your wife is very happy, mine very wretched. 13. The Romans used to call you, Laelius, the wisest of men. 14. Colder than ice and harder than oak art thou, O Galatea. 15. Nero had very slender legs. 16. Nothing is dearer to the poet than Rome. 17. The sheep of the mountains are sweeter than the fat sheep of the valleys. 18. The leaders of the Remi are very bold. 19. Why did you choose the heavier sword ? 20. I did not think that you would send a very long letter.

LESSON 16.

Principal parts (continued); the uses of the perfect participle.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *pellō* to *fundō* (§ 356, A-B).

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

104. The perfect participle is that most frequently used in Latin. The perfect participles are **passive** in meaning, except when they come from **deponent** verbs.

<i>rex locūtus consēdit</i>	<i>the king, having spoken, sat down</i>
<i>rēgi locūtō pārui</i>	<i>he obeyed the king when he had spoken</i>
<i>urbem captam incendit</i>	<i>he burned the city which he had taken</i>
<i>militēs, urbem oppugnāre vetitī, prōgrediēbantur</i>	<i>the soldiers, being forbidden (or when forbidden, or when they were forbidden) to storm the city, advanced</i>
<i>ab urbe expulsī, colloquium petivērunt</i>	<i>being driven (or when they were driven) from the city, they asked for a conference</i>

105. A common way of rendering Latin past participles is by a principal clause, coordinate with the clause represented by the Latin main verb; this makes a compound sentence in English. It is the tendency of Latin to combine sentences, which would be separate in English,

into one. Thus the first three examples in § 104 could be translated as follows :—

rex locūtus consēdit	<i>the king spoke and sat down</i>
rēgi locūtō pārui	<i>the king spoke, and he obeyed</i>
urbem captam incendit	<i>he took the city and burned it</i>

Obs.—Note the idiomatic use of the present participle in English to render the Latin perfect.

deōs testātus ē templō excessit	<i>calling the gods to witness, he</i> <i>(or, as above, he called</i> <i>. . . and) left the temple</i>
--	--

106. We thus get a rule for turning English sentences like the above into Latin:—Make the chief verb in the English the main verb in Latin, and translate the less important verb in English by a participle in agreement with the subject or object (direct or indirect).

VOCABULARY 16.

cit-ō, 1, I summon	lut-um, -ī, n., mud
mer-eor, 2 (dep.), I deserve	
quer-or, 3, I complain	quārē, adv., wherefore
toler-ō, 1, I endure	

EXERCISE 16.

A. Translate into English :—

Canes olim, vitam meliorem optantes, legatos ad deum miserunt. “Domini,” dicere iussi sunt, “panem luto conspersum nobis dant. Fame cruciari quam cibum turpem edere melius erit.” Sed legati rem sibi mandatam non confecerunt: fame moti in ossibus prope viam inventis dentes fregerunt: quare citati deo non respondēt. Tum minister deorum timentes ad deum trahit; “Meliozem cibum,” inquit, “numquam habebitis: cur ad me canum mandata portare iussi, in via morati estis, nec mihi citanti paruistis? Poenae dignae a vobis dabuntur: saevitiam dominorum meriti, famem tolerabitis.” Ita deus iratus legatos expulsos ad canes remisit. Inter se locuti, post legatorum reditum diu expectatum, canes negaverunt se postea de dominis panem turpem dantibus questuros esse.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid legati ad deum missi rogare iussi sunt ?

Quare canes de dominis querebantur ?

Quare citati non respondent legati ?

Nonne recte deus ob legatorum moram iratus est ?

Quid canes, legatos expectantes, inter se loquebantur ?

Putasne legatos a canibus remissos in honore habitos esse ?

C. Translate into Latin, using participles for the dependent clauses :—

1. What does the poet ask from the god, when pouring the wine on to (in, with *acc.*) the altar ? 2. The long expected peace has made us all glad. 3. I will speak to the soldiers, when they have divided the booty. 4. The slaves have followed their master, and are praised. 5. He forbade the citizens to give help to the accused. 6. Now that I have been driven from the city, I never see my friends. 7. We ought to have read the books after they had been given to us. 8. Having exhorted the soldiers of the legion, he drew up his line of battle. 9. We think that the slave will carry out the work entrusted to him. 10. To me, when I had spoken about the war, he answered nothing ; while I was speaking he listened to me. 11. When he had exhorted the soldiers, he attacked the enemy. 12. He punished the boys on account of their idleness and dismissed them. 13. Are you the ambassadors sent by the king ? 14. The poet encouraged the minds of the soldiers by the songs he had written. 15. The citizens complained about the peace, and the general answered them.

LESSON 17.

Principal parts (continued) ; the ablative absolute.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from **cernō** to **suescō** (§ 356, D).

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION.

107. In such English sentences as—

- (a) *the day being fine, I took a walk*
- (b) *all else failing, I shall trust to you*
- (c) *all his schemes having failed, he was thrown into despair*
- (d) *the enemy having been driven off, the British entered the town*

the phrase containing a participle, although it adverbially qualifies the statement, is regarded as independent of the construction, and has been given the name of **nominative absolute** (**absolūtus** = *freed*).

108. A corresponding construction exists in Latin, but the case of the participle and of the word with which the participle agrees is **ablative**. The participles used in Latin in the **ablative absolute** construction are usually the **present participle active** and the **perfect participle passive**.

109. If neither of these is available, an English **nominative absolute** phrase must be rendered by a Latin clause—temporal, conditional, or other, according to the meaning ;

and such a clause is always admissible, even if the required participle exists. Thus, in the examples given above, the nominative absolute might be represented by English (and so Latin) clauses such as—

- (a) *as the day was fine . . .* (causal)
- (b) *if all else fails . . .* (conditional)
- (d) *when the enemy had been driven off . . .* (temporal)

110. The ablative absolute is, however, more used in Latin than is the nominative absolute in English, so that an English temporal or other clause may often conveniently be rendered by it; but the form of the expression must be so altered that the participle may be either present active or perfect passive; moreover, the substantive or pronoun with which this participle agrees must be neither the subject nor the object of the sentence. Thus—

Sentence with dependent clause.	Sentence as rendered with ablative absolute.
<i>while the consul was saying these words, the horsemen departed</i>	<i>the consul saying these words, the horsemen departed</i>
haec dicente consule, equitēs discesserunt	
<i>when many had been killed the remainder threw themselves into the river</i>	<i>many having been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the river</i>
multis interfectis, reliqui sē in flūmen praecipitaverunt	
<i>the townsfolk, hearing the shouts, slew the hostages</i>	<i>the townsfolk, the shouts having been heard, slew the hostages</i>
oppidāni, clamōribus auditis, obsidēs interfecerunt	

Obs.—In the last sentence it should be noticed (1) that *hearing* really means *having heard*, for the slaying of the hostages followed as the result of the hearing, (2) that, as Latin has no perfect participle active, the active form *having heard the shouts* is converted to the passive form *the shouts having been heard*, and, *the shouts being* neither the subject nor the object of the verb *slew*, the phrase is put in the ablative absolute.

VOCABULARY 17.

(proelium) committ-ō (cpd. of mittō), 3, <i>I join (battle)</i>	impediment-a, -ōrum, n., <i>baggage</i>
perfring-ō (cpd. of frangō), 3, <i>I break through</i>	ort-us, -ūs, m., <i>rising</i>
succēd-ō (cpd. of cēdō), 3, <i>I approach.</i>	pil-um, -ī, n., <i>javelin</i>
den s, -tis, m., <i>tooth</i>	terg-um, -ī, n., <i>back</i>
dūr-us, -a, -um, <i>hard</i>	deinde, adv., <i>afterwards</i>
equ-us, -ī, m., <i>horse</i>	facile, adv., <i>easily</i>
ict-us, -ūs, m., <i>blow</i>	

EXERCISE 17.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar contra Helvetios pugnāt.

Caesar, equis omnium militum e conspectu remotis, suos cohortatus proelium commisit. Milites, pilis missis, facile aciem hostium perfregerunt. Deinde, gladiis strictis, impetum fecerunt. Galli autem in montem non multum ab eo loco distantem se receperunt. Capto monte et nostris succedentibus, nonnulli Gallorum, qui agmen clauderant, nostros aggrediebantur. Tum Helvetii proelium renovaverunt: Romani igitur, duce Caesare, conversis signis venientes sustinuerunt. Ita ab ortu solis ad noctem pugnabant. Tandem nostri victoria reportata Gallorum impedimenta et castra diripuerunt. Ibi principis filia et unus e filiis captus est.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo Romani impetum ineeperunt?

Quo Galli se receperunt?

Cur Helvetii pugnam renovaverunt?

Quid Caesar suis imperavit?

Quam praedam ceperunt Romani?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. We will not despair, when Caesar is leader. 2. In the consulship of Sulla (*say Sulla being consul*); many citizens were slain. 3. When he had finished the war, he sent all the soldiers back into Italy. 4. I will dismiss the boys and will accompany you to the

city. 5. Throwing down their weapons, the enemy turned their backs. 6. While the battle lasted, the general cheered up the minds of the soldiers with speeches. 7. Following the robbers, he took away the booty. 8. I saw your brother, while I was watching the games. 9. We attacked the Gauls, when they were not expecting battle. 10. We ought to spare the brave enemies, when we have conquered them. 11. While Horatius and his comrades were fighting, the senators were destroying the bridge. 12. The Carthaginian feared the Roman when he was unwilling to fight. 13. The Britons attack our men as they disembark. 14. Suddenly leaving their camp, they made a charge upon us. 15. He advanced to the river and built a bridge. 16. After capturing the camp, Labienus pursued the enemy. 17. Our men, as soon as they heard of the approach of the enemy, raised a shout. 18. When the signal had been given, the slaves burst through the gates and ran away. 19. He encouraged the soldiers in a short speech, and sent forward the cavalry.

NOTE.—In all these sentences, except 1 and 2, the participle present or perfect must be used to render the less important idea in the sentence. In 1 and 2, the participle of *esse* being non-existent, the nouns only are in the ablative.

LESSON 18.

Adverbs and comparison of adverbs.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *alō* to *constituō* (§ 356, E).

ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

111. From adjectives which follow the first and second declensions of substantives, the adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ē* to the base of the adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
<i>acūtus, sharp</i>	<i>acūt-</i>	<i>acūtē, sharply</i>
<i>liber, free</i>	<i>liber-</i>	<i>liberē, freely</i>

112. From adjectives which follow the third declension of substantives, the adverbs are formed by the addition of *-iter* to the base of the adjective; but if the base of the adjective ends in *-nt*, *-er* is added instead of *-iter*.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
<i>memor, mindful</i>	<i>memor-</i>	<i>memoriter, by heart</i>
<i>acer, keen</i>	<i>acr-</i>	<i>acriter, keenly</i>
<i>brevis, short</i>	<i>brev-</i>	<i>breviter, briefly</i>
<i>sapiens, wise</i>	<i>sapient-</i>	<i>sapienter, wisely</i>

113. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb; e.g. *multum, much* (from *multus*), *facile, easily* (from *facilis*).

114. The following are irregularly formed :—

From audax ,	<i>bold</i>	audacter ,	<i>boldly</i>
„ bonus ,	<i>good</i>	bene ,	<i>well</i>
„ citus ,	<i>quick</i>	cito ,	<i>quickly</i>
„ difficilis ,	<i>difficult</i>	difficulus ,	<i>with difficulty</i>
„ magnus ,	<i>great</i>	magnopere ,	<i>greatly</i>
„ malus ,	<i>bad</i>	male ,	<i>badly</i>

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

115. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative: *e.g.* **breviter**, *briefly*; **brevius**, *more briefly*; **brevissimē**, *most briefly*. **Brevius** may also mean *somewhat briefly* or *too briefly*, **brevissimē**, *very briefly* (cp. § 100).

116. A comparative adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the corresponding comparative adjective.

A superlative adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the corresponding adjective (cp. § 111).

EXAMPLES.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective.	sanctus , <i>religious</i>	sanctior ,	sanctissimus
Adverb.	sanctē , <i>religiously</i>	sanctius	sanctissimē
Adjective.	acer , <i>sharp</i>	acrior	acerrimus
Adverb.	acriter , <i>sharply</i>	acrius	acerrimē
Adjective.	facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
Adverb.	facile ,	facilius	facillimē

VOCABULARY 18.

abstrah-ō (cpd. of trahō), 3, <i>I carry off</i>	hosp-es , -itis , <i>m.</i> , <i>a host</i> (entertainer)
min-or , 1 (with <i>dat.</i> of pers.), <i>I threaten</i>	vestigi-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>trace</i>
pecc-ō , 1, <i>I sin</i>	deinde , <i>then</i> (= <i>next, after that</i>)
antr-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>cave</i>	ibi , <i>there, in that place</i>
cōter-us , -a , -um , <i>the rest of, remaining</i>	praeterea , <i>moreover</i>
furt-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , <i>theft</i>	tum , <i>then</i> (= <i>at that time, after that</i>)

EXERCISE 18.

A. Translate into English :—

Hercules et Cacus.

Olim Herculis tauri per hospitis arva vagabantur : ibi a Caco, fero latrone, in antrum tracti sunt. Diligenter quaerens taurorum amissorum vestigia, Hercules, mugitu audito, furtum plane perspexit : vocem celerrime secutus, magnum lapidem, antri praesidium, evertit. Cacus intus iacentem invenit. Tum latro ferocissime saxa torquens in omnem antri partem ruebat : deinde ex ore ingenti flammam in virum fortissimum vomuit. Sed Hercules, ramo arboris arrepto, latronis caput graviter percussit ; latro igitur tauros abstrahendo sibi mortem miserrimam paraverat. Laetus tandem tauros tam audacter abstractos Hercules recepit. “Nemo,” inquit, “me leviter lacesset. Quis postea tam nefarie in me peccare audebit ?”

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo Hercules tauros amissos invenit ?

Quid fecit latro, se contra Herculem defendens ?

Cur Hercules latronem tam facile superavit ?

Nonne putas poenas a latrone iustissime sumptas esse ?

Quomodo tandem ceteris hominibus Hercules minatus est ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Gladly will I promise to bear a message swiftly to your brother. 2. The work will be done more easily when the winter comes. 3. How often have I most earnestly warned you that you were not very diligent ? 4. To live wisely is nobler than to seek greedily [after] praise. 5. Nowhere more pleasantly than in the sunny fields do men spend the summer. 6. They have laid on the shoulders of the slaves too heavy burdens. 7. Sadly (use adj.) the ambassadors departed from the city—more sadly they carried back the king's answer. 8. By singing so sweetly, you have made us very happy. 9. Having spoken very freely about his own work, he asked me suddenly my opinion. 10. I think you have very foolishly divided your forces : you ought to have acted more prudently.

LESSON 19.

Irregular comparison of adjectives and adverbs.

Learn the principal parts of verbs in thick type from **ruō** to **scindō** (§ 356, F).

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED.

117. I. Adjectives ending in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, and **-volus** form their comparative and superlative as if their positive ended in **-dicens** (base, **dicent-**; cp. **dicō**, *I say*), **-ficens** (base, **ficient-**; cp. **faciō**, *I make*), **-volens** (base, **volent-**; cp. **volō**, *I will*).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledicus <i>slanderosus</i>	maledicent-	maledicent-ior	maledicent-issimus
magnificus <i>magnificent</i>	magnificent-	magnificent-ior	magnificent-issimus
benevolus <i>benevolent</i>	benevolent-	benevolent-ior	benevolent-issimus

Note also—

egēnus <i>n</i>	egent-	egent-ior	egent-issimus
---------------------------	---------------	------------------	----------------------

II. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than **u** in the combination **gu** or **qu**) are not inflected for the comparative or superlative; the comparative is expressed by **magis**, *more*, and the superlative by **maximē**, *most*, preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pius	<i>dutiful</i>	pi-	magis pius	maximè pius
arduus	<i>lofty</i>	ardu-	magis arduus	maximè arduus

But—

pinguis	<i>fat</i>	pingu-	pingu-ior	pingu-issimus
antiquus	<i>ancient</i>	antiqu-	antiqu-ior	antiqu-issimus

III. Two indeclinable adjectives are thus compared :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
frūgī	<i>of worth</i>	frūgālior	frūgālissimus
nēquam	<i>worthless</i>	nēquior	nēquissimus

IV. The following adjectives have a comparative and superlative not formed directly from the positive.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus	<i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus	<i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
magnus	<i>great</i>	māior	maximus
parvus	<i>small</i>	minor	minimus
multus	<i>much</i>	plūrēs (pl.)	plūrimus
dīves	<i>rich</i>	dītior	dītissimus

Obs.—**Nātū** is the ablative of a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth*. Hence **nātū minimus**, **nātū maximus**, mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth*.

NOTE.—**Plūrēs** is thus declined :—

	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V. A.</i>	plūrēs	plūra
<i>G.</i>	plūrium	
<i>D. A.</i>	plūribus	

Plūs, *gen. plūris*, *more*, is a neuter substantive; the dative and ablative are not in use. **Plūs** is also used as an adverb.

V. The following adjectives have no positive degree.

(<i>Cp.</i> iuvenis , <i>young man</i>)	iūnior <i>younger</i>	(nātū minimus)
(<i>Cp.</i> senex , <i>old man</i>)	senior <i>older</i>	(nātū maximus)

VI. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs, are irregularly compared; they have no positive degree:—

Adverb.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>citrā, on this side</i>		<i>citerior, nearer, hither</i>	<i>citimus</i>
<i>dē, down</i>		<i>dēterior, worse</i>	<i>dēterrīmus</i>
<i>extrā, outside</i>	(<i>exterus</i>)	<i>exterior, outer</i>	{ <i>extrēmus</i> <i>extimus</i>
<i>infrā, below</i>	<i>inferus, lower</i>	<i>inferior</i>	<i>infimus</i> or <i>imus</i>
<i>intrā, within</i>	—	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus</i>
<i>post, after</i>	(<i>posterus</i>)	<i>posterior, later</i>	{ <i>postrēmus, last</i> <i>postumus, last-born</i>
<i>prae, before</i>		<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus</i>
<i>prope, near</i>		<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus</i>
<i>suprā, above</i>	<i>superus, upper</i>	<i>superior, higher, previous</i>	{ <i>suprēmus, highest, last</i> <i>summus, highest</i>
<i>ultrā, beyond</i>	—	<i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultima, farthest, last</i>

NOTE.—*Exterus* and *posterus* are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nominative singular masculine being in use.

118. Some adjectives, instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often specify certain parts of the persons or things denoted by those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are:—

<i>primus, first</i>	<i>medius, middle</i>	<i>extrēmus, last</i>
<i>summus, highest</i>	{ <i>infimus</i> or <i>imus</i> } <i>lowest</i>	<i>reliquus, remaining</i>

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus: *primum vēr*, the beginning of spring; *media urbs*, the middle of the city; *extrēma orātiō*, the end of the speech; *summus mons*, the top of the mountain; *infima āra*, the lowest part of the altar; *reliqua praeda*, the rest of the booty.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

119. The rule for forming the comparative and superlative of adverbs (§ 116) applies whether the comparison of the adjectives is regular or irregular. Thus:—

	Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.
Adjective.	bonus	<i>good</i>	mellor	optimus	
Adverb.	bene	<i>well</i>	melius	optimè	
Adjective.	malus	<i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus	
Adverb.	male	<i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimè	

The following are the only exceptions to the above rule:—

	Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.
	magnopere	<i>greatly</i>	magis	maximè	
	multum	<i>much</i>	plūs	plurimum	

120. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS NOT FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

	Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.
	dīū	<i>long</i>	dīūtius	dīūtissimè	
	nūper	<i>recently</i>	—	nūperrimè	
	saepe	<i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimè	

121. Some words which are usually adverbs serve also as substantives denoting quantity and are constructed with a genitive; *e.g.* **nimis cibī**, *too much food*; **parum fortitudinis**, *too little bravery*; **satis frūmentī**, *enough corn*.

Plūs, *more*, denotes quantity and is followed by the genitive (partitive) case.

plūs labōris quam honōris habet *he has more toil than honour*

Cp. French use of *de* in **plus de vin**, **un peu de pain**.

Obs.—**Magis**, *more, rather*, is the adverb generally used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

ego magis gaudeō quam tū *I rejoice more than you*
patiens est magis quam validus *he is enduring rather than strong*

VOCABULARY 19.

dēsīl-lō , -ui, -sultum, 4, <i>jump down</i>	incolum-is , -e, <i>safe</i>
	poster-i , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , <i>posterity, later (men)</i>
com-es , -itis, <i>m.</i> , <i>comrade</i>	in (with acc.) 1, <i>against (enemies, etc.)</i> ; 2, <i>into</i>
discrim-en , -inis, <i>n.</i> , <i>danger</i>	
fid-ēs , -eī, <i>f.</i> , <i>belief</i>	

EXERCISE 19.

A. Translate into English :—

Horatius pontem defendit.

Etruscis urbem Romam oppugnantibus et trans Tiberim flumen castra tenentibus, Horatius, vir fortissimus, in extremo ponte cum Lartio et Herminio, viris haud minus fortibus, stabat. Cives summa celeritate pontem ab Horatio diu defensum interrumpere conabantur. Tandem Horatius comites suos trans pontem remisit, et solus contra Etruscoos pugnavit; deinde ponte interrupto, armatus in flumen desiluit, et incolumis in ripam ulteriorem tranavit, rem ausus plus famae quam fidei apud posteros habituram.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo hostes urbem oppugnantes Horatius vicit?

Quis cum Horatio in ponte stabat?

Cur Horatius comites suos remisit?

Quomodo Horatius ponte interrupto vitam suam servavit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. In my former letter I wrote to you that I was ill. 2. I have very little pleasure and too much pain. 3. Why is the beginning of spring colder than the end of summer? 4. Without waiting for an answer any longer, he sent the envoys back to the city by a nearer way. 5. What is worse for boys when they are reading than to hear voices in the middle of the road? 6. In the most ancient times the province of Hither Gaul lay without the boundaries of Italy; the name of Italy has now been extended further. 7. I feared more concerning the nearer than the further nations, while you were consul. 8. The enemy made a charge against our men from the higher ground, and fought with more success than in the former battle. 9. The poet complained bitterly that he had been driven to the furthest shores of the world. 10. The outer part of the walls was very little protected from the nearest foot-soldiers.

LESSON 20.

Present and imperfect subjunctive and present imperative active ; jussive and deliberative subjunctive.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *pariō* to *coepiō* (§ 357)

122. SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III <i>a.</i>	III <i>b.</i>	IV.
PRESENT TENSE.				
am em	mon- eam	reg- am	cap- iam	aud- iam
am- ēs	mon- eās	reg- ās	cap- iās	aud- iās
am- et	mon- eat	reg- at	cap- iat	aud- iat
am- ēmus	mon- eāmus	reg- āmus	cap- iāmus	aud- iāmus
am- ētis	mon- eātis	reg- ātis	cap- iātis	aud- iātis
am- ent	mon- eant	reg- ant	cap- iant	aud- iant

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am- ārem	mon- ērem	reg- erem	cap- erem	aud- irem
am- ārēs	mon- ērēs	reg- erēs	cap- erēs	aud- irēs
am- āret	mon- ēret	reg- eret	cap- eret	aud- iret
am- ārēmus	mon- ērēmus	reg- erēmus	cap- erēmus	aud- irēmus
am- ārētis	mon- ērētis	reg- erētis	cap- erētis	aud- irētis
am- arent	mon- ērent	reg- erent	cap- erent	aud- irent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.

am- ā	mon- ē	reg- e	cap- e	aud- i
am- āte	mon- ēte	reg- ite	cap- ite	aud- ite

SUM.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

sim	simus	essem or forem	essēmus or forēmus
sis	sitis	essēs or forēs	essētis or forētis
sit	sint	esset or foret	essent or forent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE.

es

es-te

123. In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—**dicō**, *say*; **dūcō**, *lead*; **faciō**, *make, do*—have respectively **dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, the final **-e** being dropped. This applies to the compounds of **dicō** and **dūcō**, and to compounds of **faciō** which retain **a** in the present base, e.g. **satisfac-**; other compounds are regular, e.g. **afficiō**, *affect*, has imperative **affice**.

124. The subjunctive has **two main uses** in Latin—in principal, and in dependent, clauses. It bears a variety of meanings in both.

JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

125. Two sets of usages in principal sentences may be grouped under the term **jussive** :—

(a) Subjunctive expressing a command or exhortation (**jussive use proper**—from **iussus**, past participle passive of **iubeō**, *I command*) ;

(b) Subjunctive questioning what should be done (**deliberative subjunctive**).

126. (a) The present subjunctive expresses a **command** or **exhortation** in the first person plural, and in the third person singular or plural. Commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative.

pugnēmus, ait

let us fight, he says

paupertātem pati discat puer

*let a boy learn to endure
poverty*

pugnāte, militēs

fight, soldiers

(b) The interrogative form of the jussive subjunctive is called the **deliberative subjunctive**; the **present** is used in questions as to the course of action which is to be pursued, the **imperfect** in questions as to the course which should have been pursued.

<i>quot mēcum veniant ?</i>	<i>how many are to come with me ?</i>
<i>quid agerem ? contenderem (or num contenderem) contra tribūnum plēbis ?</i>	<i>what was I to do ? was I to fight against a tribune of the people (one of the Roman magistrates) ?</i>

Contrast

<i>quid agēbam ?</i>	<i>what was I doing ?</i>
----------------------	---------------------------

VOCABULARY 20.

<i>exci-eō</i> (cpd. of <i>cieō</i>), 2, <i>I stir up</i>	<i>arrogan-s</i> , gen. <i>-tis</i> , <i>haughty</i>
<i>laccēss-ō</i> , 3, <i>I assail</i>	<i>mūn-us</i> , <i>-eris</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>gift</i>

EXERCISE 20.

A. Translate into English :—

Turnus et Drances verbis contendunt.

Bellum quondam fuit inter Latinos et Troianos, ab Aenea ductos ; et Latini in concilio deliberabant. Rex Latinus, "Oratores," inquit, "prima de gente ad Troianos mittamus ; munera portent, auri magnum pondus. Deos pacem rogemus et cladem precibus a Latinis avertamus. Vos, senatores, pro bono publico consulite ; de re summa sententias promite." Tum surgit Drances, homo turpissimus ; negat fortunam populi esse sibi ignotam. "Quid plura," inquit, "loquar ? Nonne omnes intellegitis causam belli esse manifestam ? Turnus, dico, Turnus omne bellum excivit ; sed discat Turnus civium opinionem. In Turno potius malorum nostrorum originem quaeramus." Tum Turnus : "Ego me cum homine nequissimo componam ? quid dicerem, quid facerem tam iniuste accusatus ? bonum consilium regi semper dabam et dabo : accuset me Drances. Vos, cives, inter nos iudicate : num Drances invidia et ira motus me patriae defensorem semper laccasset ?"

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur regi placet legatos de pace mittere ?
Quis erat Latinorum hostis ?
Quis erat Drances ?
Quid dixit Drances, sententiam suam promens ?
Quomodo se contra Drancem Turnus defendit ?
Quid de Drance putas ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Let the buyer beware about the age of the horse he has bought from the merchant. 2. What are we to think has happened to the ship? 3. How was I to know that the book was lost? 4. Let us live, despising the opinion of the multitude. 5. O my sons, bring my friend from the city into the fields. 6. What will you say, when you have read the letter? 7. Let the rich bear the burdens of the poor. 8. How many times am I to recall to your memory the tale? 9. Are we to expel our friends from their beloved fatherland? 10. Citizens, fear the words of the orator, both when he is beginning and when he is making an end of speaking. 11. Grant, ye gods, long years and great riches to those that pray to you. 12. Let us change shields and die fighting. 13. Let us break down the bridge, citizens, with all the speed we can (*quam celerrime*). 14. As thou sayest, so be it. 15. Let the father rejoice in his beautiful daughter. 16. What have I done? Why should they laugh? 17. Am I to try to please this crowd of slaves? 18. How were we to think that this man would be our enemy? 19. Tell me, why do you stay here? 20. What were we to do? were the soldiers to stir up war in the state?

LESSON 21.

The subjunctive mood (continued); present imperative passive and deponent; wishes, commands, prohibitions.

127. PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
amāv-erim	monu-erim	rex-erim	cēp-erim	audīv-erim
amāv-eris	monu-eris	rex-eris	cēp-eris	audīv-eris
amāv-erit	monu-erit	rex-erit	cēp-erit	audīv-erit
amāv-erimus	monu-erimus	rex-erimus	cēp-erimus	audīv-erimu
amāv-eritis	monu-eritis	rex-eritis	cēp-eritis	audīv-eritis
amāv-erint	monu-erint	rex-erint	cēp-erint	audīv-erint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

amāv-issem	monu-issem	rex-issem	cēp-issem	audīv-issem
amāv-issēs	monu-issēs	rex-issēs	cēp-issēs	audīv-issēs
amāv-isset	monu-isset	rex-isset	cēp-isset	audīv-isset
amāv-issēmus	monu-issēmus	rex-issēmus	cēp-issēmus	audīv-issēmus
amāv-issētis	monu-issētis	rex-issētis	cēp-issētis	audīv-issētis
amāv-issent	monu-issent	rex-issent	cēp-issent	audīv-issent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE.

REGULAR VERBS.

<i>2nd Sing.</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>	monēre, <i>be thou advised</i>	regere, <i>be thou ruled</i>	audire, <i>be thou heard</i>
<i>2nd Plur.</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>	monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled</i>	audimini, <i>be ye heard</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

<i>2nd Sing.</i>	hortāre, <i>urge (thou)</i>	verēre, <i>fear (thou)</i>	loquere, <i>speak (thou)</i>	partire, <i>divide (thou)</i>
<i>2nd Plur.</i>	hortāmini, <i>urge (ye)</i>	verēmini, <i>fear (ye)</i>	loquimini, <i>speak (ye)</i>	partimini, <i>divide (ye)</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH.

128. The subjunctive expressing a wish (or the optative subjunctive) is a third variety of the jussive subjunctive (§ 125). It is commonly introduced by *utinam* (equivalent to *would that . . . !*). The negative is *nē*.

(1) The **present** subjunctive expresses a wish that **may** be fulfilled in the future.

(2) The **imperfect** subjunctive expresses a wish that something **were otherwise** than it is now.

(3) The **pluperfect** subjunctive expresses a wish that something **had been otherwise** than it was in the past.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) <i>utinam Colossēum aspiciam</i> | <i>O that I might see the Colosseum !</i> |
| <i>utinam nē bellum faciat</i> | <i>I hope he may not make war</i> |
| (2) <i>utinam Alexander adhūc regnāret</i> | <i>would that Alexander were yet on the throne !</i> |
| <i>utinam nē adesset</i> | <i>O that he were not here !</i> |
| (3) <i>utinam Pompēius Caesarem superāvisset</i> | <i>I wish that Pompey had conquered Caesar</i> |
| <i>utinam Caesar Pompēium nē superāvisset</i> | <i>would that Caesar had not conquered Pompey !</i> |

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

129. A command or a prohibition, if in the first or third person, is expressed by the **present subjunctive**.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>cēdant arma togae</i> | <i>let arms give place to peace</i> |
| <i>veniant omnēs</i> | <i>let them all come</i> |
| <i>moriāmur et in arma ruāmus</i> | <i>let us die and rush upon their weapons</i> |
| <i>nē veniat</i> | <i>let him not come</i> |

130. A command, if in the second person, is expressed by the **present imperative**.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>divide et imperā</i> | <i>divide and rule</i> |
| <i>sparge rosās</i> | <i>scatter roses</i> |

131. A prohibition, if in the second person, is expressed by *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (imperative of *nōlē*, see § 158) with present infinitive.

nōlī sapientiam contemnere *do not despise wisdom*

VOCABULARY 21.

obsecro-eō, 2, *I check*

dissid-eō, 2 (cpd. of *sedeō*), *I*
quarrel (lit. *sit apart*)

record-or, 1 (*dep.*), *I remember*

vid-eor, *visus sum* (passive
of *videō*), *I seem*

potius quam, *rather than*

EXERCISE 21.

A. Translate into English :—

Rex moriens liberos admonet.

Rex moriens talibus verbis liberos duos admonuit : “ Nunc mihi,” ait, “ natura finem vitae facit ; vos igitur per regni stabilitatem obsecro, verba mea semper recordamini. Nolite patriae hostes potius quam amicos amare. Utinam aut diutius viverem aut vos seniores relinquerem ; nunc tamen deorum fidei vos tradam. Utinam regnum meum feliciter administretis ; cura sit vobis hostes depellere, seditiosos cives coercere ; nolite putare vos, dissidentes, regnum firmum habituros esse.” Tum ad seniores conversus : “ Tu,” inquit, “ fratrem tuum semper defende ” : et ad iuniorem conversus : “ Fratri,” inquit, “ seniori semper pare.” Tum fratres promiserunt se patris verba morientis numquam neglecturos esse : “ In mente semper,” inquit, “ memoriam patris nostri, viri optimi, regis sapientis, servabimus.”

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quot filios habuit rex moriens ?

Cur rex moriens filios iuvenes admonuit ?

Quid facere a patre iussi sunt fratres ?

Quid dixerunt fratres verbis patris auditis ?

Putasne fratres fidem praestitisse ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Do not touch me ! So the fierce dog seems to say. 2. Would that the gods were kinder to me ! 3. I would like you to write to me very often. 4. By all means watch the games when you are dwelling in the city. 5. Would that your excellent father still lived ! 6. Farewell, friends ; may you always be fortunate ! 7. Let us lie beneath the shade of the tall beech-tree. 8. Do you deny this ? Ought he not to have obeyed me when I gave him orders ? 9. Fear God : have the king in honour : do not neglect the duty of the pious citizen. 10. O my country, how sadly I leave thee ! may thy enemies ever fear thee ! 11. I would that they had not done this ! 12. Do not ask my name ; let us rather fight each other. 13. Help us, we beseech you, against our enemies. 14. O that our hopes were not empty ! 15. Let all men honour us for our laws and justice. 16. May our ship carry thee safe across the seas ! 17. Do you dare to deny that you are wrong ? 18. Give me your opinion, but do not make a long speech. 19. Why should you complain ? Have you not received many gifts ? 20. Long live the king and queen and their children !

LESSON 22.

The subjunctive mood (continued).

132. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD PASSIVE VOICE.

I.	II.	III a.	III b.	IV.
PRESENT.				
am-er	mon-ear	reg-ar	cap-lar	aud-lar
am-ēris or	mon-eāris or	reg-āris or	cap-iāris or	aud-iāris or
am-ēre	mon-eāre	reg-āre	cap-iāre	aud-iāre
am-ētur	mon-eātur	reg-ātur	cap-iātur	aud-iātur
am-ēmur	mon-eāmur	reg-āmur	cap-iāmur	aud-iāmur
am-ēmini	mon-eāmini	reg-āmini	cap-iāmini	aud-iāmini
am-entur	mon-eantur	reg-antur	cap-iantur	aud-iantur
IMPERFECT.				
am-ārer	mon-ērer	reg-erēr	cap-erēr	aud-irer
am-ārēris or	mon-ērēris or	reg-erēris or	cap-erēris or	aud-irēris or
am-ārēre	mon-ērēre	reg-erēre	cap-erēre	aud-irēre
am-ārētur	mon-ērētur	reg-erētur	cap-erētur	aud-irētur
am-ārēmur	mon-ērēmur	reg-erēmur	cap-erēmur	aud-irēmur
am-ārēmini	mon-ērēmini	reg-erēmini	cap-erēmini	aud-irēmini
am-ārentur	mon-ērentur	reg-erentur	cap-erentur	aud-irentur
PERFECT.				
amāt-us sim	monit-us sim	rect-us sim	capt-us sim	audit-us sim
amāt-us sis	monit-us sis	rect-us sis	capt-us sis	audit-us sis
amāt-us sit	monit-us sit	rect-us sit	capt-us sit	audit-us sit
amāt-i simus	monit-i simus	rect-i simus	capt-i simus	audit-i simus
amāt-i sitis	monit-i sitis	rect-i sitis	capt-i sitis	audit-i sitis
amāt-i sint	monit-i sint	rect-i sint	capt-i sint	audit-i sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāt-us	monit-us	rect-us	capt-us	audit-us
essem		essem		
essēs	essēs	essēs	essēs	essēs
esset	esset	esset	esset	esset
amāt-ī	monit-ī	rect-ī	capt-ī	audit-ī
essēmus	essēmus	essēmus	essēmus	essēmus
essētis	essētis	essētis	essētis	essētis
essent	essent	essent	essent	essent

133. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (DEPONENT VERBS).

I.

II.

III.

IV.

PRESENT.

hort-er	ver-ear	loqu-ar	part-iar
hort-ēris <i>or</i>	ver-eāris <i>or</i>	loqu-āris <i>or</i>	part-iāris <i>or</i>
hort-ēre	ver-eāre	loqu-āre	part-iāre
hort-ētur	ver-eātur	loqu-ātur	part-iātur
hort-ēmur	ver-eāmur	loqu-āmur	part-iāmur
hort-ēmini	ver-eāmini	loqu-āmini	part-iāmini
hort-entur	ver-eantur	loqu-antur	part-iantur

IMPERFECT.

hort-ārer	ver-ārer	loqu-erer	part-irer
hort-ārēris <i>or</i>	ver-ārēris <i>or</i>	loqu-erēris <i>or</i>	part-irēris <i>or</i>
hort-ārēre	ver-ārēre	loqu-erēre	part-irēre
hort-ārētur	ver-ārētur	loqu-erētur	part-irētur
hort-ārēmur	ver-ārēmur	loqu-erēmur	part-irēmur
hort-ārēmini	ver-ārēmini	loqu-erēmini	part-irēmini
hort-ārentur	ver-ārentur	loqu-erentur	part-irentur

PERFECT.

hortāt-us sim	verit-us sim	locūt-us sim	partit-us sim
hortāt-us sis	verit-us sis	locūt-us sis	partit-us sis
hortāt-us sit	verit-us sit	locūt-us sit	partit-us sit
hortāt-ī simus	verit-ī simus	locūt-ī simus	partit-ī simus.
hortāt-ī sitis	verit-ī sitis	locūt-ī sitis	partit-ī sitis
hortāt-ī sint	verit-ī sint	locūt-ī sint	partit-ī sint

PLUPERFECT.

hortāt-us essem	verit-us essem	locūt-us essem	partit-us essem
hortāt-us essēs	verit-us essēs	locūt-us essēs	partit-us essēs
hortāt-us esset	verit-us esset	locūt-us esset	partit-us esset
hortāt-i essēmus	verit-i essēmus	locūt-i essēmus	partit-i essēmus
hortāt-i essētis	verit-i essētis	locūt-i essētis	partit-i essētis
hortāt-i essent	verit-i essent	locūt-i essent	partit-i essent

DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

134. The first member of a double question is most often introduced by *utrum*, the second by *an*; less frequently the first member is introduced by *-ne*, or stands without an interrogative particle.

<i>utrum Rōmānis (or Rōmānisne)</i>	<i>will the money be given to the</i>
<i>an Pergamēnis pecūnia dabitur?</i>	<i>Romans or the Pergamenes?</i>
<i>ēloquar an sileam?</i>	<i>am I to speak out or be silent?</i>

135. The latter alternative, when the contradictory of the former, is usually expressed by *annōn*.

<i>utrum Caesar (or Caesarne)</i>	<i>did Caesar conquer the Nervii</i>
<i>Nerviōs superāvit annōn?</i>	<i>or not?</i>

136. Frequently the second alternative only is expressed, the first being indignantly rejected.

<i>an tū esse mē tristem putās?</i>	<i>do you suppose that I am</i>
	<i>down-hearted?</i>

Obs.—Here some such sentence as *nonne hilaris videor?* *do not I seem to be in good spirits?* is to be understood.

VOCABULARY 22.

<i>arrog-ō</i> , 1, <i>I claim</i>	<i>cēn-a</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , <i>banquet</i>
<i>excipi-ō</i> , <i>excēpi</i> , <i>exceptum</i> (opd. of <i>capiō</i>), <i>I except, claim</i>	<i>collēg-a</i> , -ae, <i>m.</i> , <i>colleague</i>
<i>excūs-ō</i> , 1, <i>I excuse</i>	<i>dign-us</i> , -a, -um, <i>worthy</i> (with <i>abl.</i>)
<i>servi-ō</i> , 4, <i>I am a slave to</i> (with <i>dat.</i>)	<i>etiā</i> , <i>even</i>
	<i>strēnuū</i> , <i>adv.</i> , <i>vigorously</i>

EXERCISE 22.

A. Translate into English :—

Epistula ad amicum scripta.

(Adapted from Cicero.)

Cum homine omnium nequissimo, Antonio, bellum gerimus; puto tamen bonos cives iam nullum ducem me excepto habituros esse. Utrum me Antonius an ego Antonium victurus sum? Talia, opinor, nemo scit, sed rem publicam omnes servare conemur; ne spem omnem deponamus. Maximas laudes ob fortitudinem ego adeptus sum; tu provinciam in fide retine. Quid enim faciamus, provinciois a fide motis! An servient homini tam turpi cives Romani?

Utinam vero me Idibus Martiis¹ ad cenam² invitavissent! nonne putas Antonium morte tum dignum fuisse? Nunc homo turpissimus relictus est; et imperium summum sibi adrogavit. Utinam tamen me excuses. Non plura scribam; agendo, sed non loquendo, de re publica optime merebor.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid Cicero ad amicum de Antonio scribit?

Num putat se Antonium superaturum esse?

Quid de rei publicae fortuna putat Cicero?

Quid de amico provincia scribit?

Utrum melius putat esse, bellum verbis an armis contra Antonium gerere?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. May you live long and feel the joys of a virtuous life. 2. Let us not turn peace into war. 3. Do not think that you are wiser than your ancestors. 4. Have you deserted Caesar, or has Caesar deserted you? 5. Do you not know that horses have long legs? 6. O that the gods had destroyed me, while my country kept her liberty! 7. Let not the wicked man dare to propitiate the gods with gifts. 8. Shall I speak of his cruelty first, or of his arrogance? 9. You would easily avoid an open adversary by taking care. 10. Let us not desire difficult things; rather let us choose what-is-easy.

¹ *The Ides of March*, i.e. March 15th, 44 B.C., when C. Julius Caesar, the dictator, was killed.

² *dinner*: he means the murder of Caesar.

LESSON 23.

Demonstrative pronouns and adjectives.

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in thick type from *reor* to *ulciscor* (§§ 360-61).

137. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(1) **Hic** (or *hic*), *haec*, *hōc*, *this*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic or <i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	hī	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	hōs	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>hūius</i>		hōrum	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>huic</i>			<i>his</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>his</i>	

(2) **Iste**, *ista*, *istud*, *that (of yours)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	isti	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	istōs	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>istius</i>		istōrum	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>isti</i>			<i>istis</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>		<i>istis</i>	

(3) **Ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *that (yonder)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	illī	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	illōs	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>illius</i>		illōrum	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>illi</i>			<i>illis</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>		<i>illis</i>	

(4) **Is, ea, id, that**; used of what has just been mentioned.

NOTE.—**Idem, eadem, idem, the same**, is formed from **is, ea, id** and the particle **-dem**.

Singular.			Plural			
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or ii	eaē	ea
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Gen.</i>		ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		eī			eīs or iīs	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō		eīs or iīs	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	idem or eidem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>		ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>		eīdem			isdem or eisdem	
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		isdem or eisdem	

(5) **Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, or himself, herself, itself.**

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>		ipsius			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		ipsī				ipsīs	
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō			ipsīs	

138. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both as true pronouns (substantively) and as adjectives (adjectively).

hōc vērum est

this (pron.) is true

haec rēs vēra est

this (adj.) statement is true

139. The personal pronoun of the third person, *he, him*, etc., is translated by **is, ea, id**; sometimes, when it is emphatic or where its omission would cause ambiguity, by **ille, illa, illud**.

Contrast the following :—

eum dē locō mōvi

I moved him from the place

sē dē locō mōvit

he moved (i.e. he moved himself) from the place

140. Similarly *his, her*, etc., is translated by *ēius* (= *of him, etc.*) where it does not refer to the subject of the sentence—in which case it is translated by *suus* (cp. § 77). It is only, however, inserted at all where it is emphatic or where its omission would cause ambiguity.

Contrast the following :—

patrem ēius occīdit

he kills his (somebody else's) father

patrem suum occīdit

he kills his (own) father

141. *Ille . . . hīc* are often used to mean *the former . . . the latter*.

VOCABULARY 23.

certiōrem fac-iō, 3, *I inform*
(lit. *make more certain*)

cās-us, -ūs, *m.*, *chance*

consent-iō (cpd. of **sentiō**), 4,
I agree

corōn-a, -ae, *f.*, *garland, crown*

dēpōn-ō (cpd. of **pōnō**), 3,
I lay aside

dol-or, -ōris, *m.*, *pain*

servit-ūs, -ūtis, *f.*, *slavery*

test-or, 1, *I bear witness*

volupt-ās, -ātis, *f.*, *pleasure*

EXERCISE 23.

A. Translate into English :—

Quomodo Xenophon deorum voluntatem accepit.

Hominis dolore superati exemplum mihi proponis. An ego illum liberum esse putem? Nonne ei dolor imperat, nonne casu repentino perturbatur? Quis non istam servitutem miserrimam potius censeat? Hinc enim ponamus hostium captivum, illinc captivum doloris sui. Nonne eadem est servitus et huic et illi?

A Xenophonte ipso accepimus eum sacra peragentem, morte filii natu maioris nuntiata, inde haud minus constanter sacra peregrisse. Hunc vero sapientius se gessisse quam illos omnes confitentur.

Idem Xenophon, filium fortiter cecidisse certior factus, coronam prius depositam iterum capiti imposuit, et deos ipsos testatus est se ex filii virtute voluptatem maiorem quam ex obitu molestiam cepisse. Hic erat animus Xenophontis, haec fortitudo: utinam omnes eodem modo deorum voluntati consentirent!

B. Oral Exercise :—

Num liber esse putatur homo dolore superatus?

Quomodo hostium captivus similis est doloris captivo?

Quid fecit Xenophon, morte filii nuntiata?

Utrum sapientior Xenophon erat, an isti priores?

Quid dixit Xenophon, certior factus filium suum fortiter cecidisse?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. While the wolf was drinking at the spring, a lamb came down to the same place. 2. These same songs have delighted our grandfathers and then our fathers. 3. The ships were driven hither and thither by the violence of the sea. 4. Let us come together to the same spot, when the treaty has been confirmed. 5. May this be fortunate for you and for him! 6. I myself was sitting under the shade of the great tree, when my work was finished. 7. At that time no stone was fixed in the ground. 8. Again and again I warned that friend of yours that he was making a mistake. 9. Here the Greeks pitched their camp: there the Trojans were encamped. 10. By this way the Gauls themselves will march out of their lands; by that way will they order their allies to march. 11. O that this misfortune may not happen to us! 12. Those songs of yours have given pleasure to many. 13. The gods gave men life and liberty at the same time. 14. This man sent him a message that his life was in danger. 15. Laelius and Marcus were brothers; the latter was very prudent, the former very foolish.

LESSON 24.

Complex sentences ; relative pronouns and clauses ; correlative adverbs ; principal parts (continued).

Learn the principal parts of the verbs in **thick** type from **morior** to **ordior** (§§ 362-3).

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

142. Simple sentences, with which alone up to the present we have dealt, are such as contain a single verb in the indicative, imperative, or subjunctive mood. Such sentences, in English and in Latin, contain subject and predicate, verb, object, adverb, while the substantives forming the subject and object may each be qualified by an adjective.

Another sentence may, in Latin as well as in English, take the place of the **adjective, substantive** (whether subject or object), or **adverb**. This separate sentence is introduced (1) by a **conjunction** (e.g. *that, when, since*), or (2) by a **relative pronoun** (e.g. *who, which*), and is known as the **dependent** or **subordinate** clause, the sentence containing the original verb being the **principal** clause, and its verb being known as the principal verb. The whole sentence, made up of principal and one or more dependent clauses, is a **complex** sentence.

Clauses taking the place of the adjective, substantive, or adverb of the simple sentence are respectively known as **adjectival, substantival** (subject- or object-clauses), or **adverbial** clauses. Compare the following (S.S. = simple sentence ; C.S. = complex sentence) :—

S.S. Britannia est mea patria Britain is my native land

*C.S. Britannia est terra in Britain is the land in which
 quā nātus sum I was born (adjectival)*

<i>S.S.</i> eō diē hōc accidit	<i>this happened on that day</i>
<i>C.S.</i> eō diē accidit ut lūna esset plēna	<i>on that day it happened that there was a full moon (subject clause)</i>
<i>S.S.</i> militēs graviter pūniēbantur	<i>the soldiers were being punished severely</i>
<i>C.S.</i> militēs pūniēbantur, quamvis essent innocentēs	<i>the soldiers were being punished, even though they were innocent (adverbial)</i>

RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND CLAUSES.

143. The relative pronouns are three in number, viz. :—

(1) **Qui, quae, quod, who, which, that** (generally substantival).

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui			quibus	
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō		quibus	

144. (2) **Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever** (substantival or adjectival);

In the declension of **quicumque** the ending **-cumque** is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative **quī**, *e.g.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing. nom.	quicumque	quaecumque	quodcumque
„ acc.	quemcumque	quamcumque	quodcumque
	etc.	etc.	etc.

145. (3) **Quisquis, quidquid, whoever, whatever** (substantival or adjectival).

Of **quisquis** the only forms in common use are :—

Sing. nom. masc.	quisquis, neut. quidquid or quicquid ;
„ abl. masc. and neut.	quōquō

146. Relative clauses are adjectival. The word denoting that to which a relative pronoun *relates* or refers is called the **antecedent**. The relative is regularly of the same gender and number and person as its antecedent, but its case is determined by its own clause.

sōl, qui terrārum flammis *sun, that visitest with thy beams*
opera omnia lustrās *all the actions of the world*

Obs.—In the above example **sōl** is a masculine substantive in the vocative singular and of the second person; the relative **qui** is the subject of its clause and is therefore nominative, but its gender (masculine), number (singular), and person (second) are determined by its antecedent **sōl**.

NOTE.—**Cum**, *with*, is enclitic sometimes with **quōd**, usually with **quibus**; e.g. **eī quibuscum vixī**, *those with whom I have lived*.

147. The relative pronoun is often used as an adjective with a substantive which in English would be the antecedent; in such a case a demonstrative pronoun generally stands as the formal antecedent in Latin.

quōs librōs ēmeram, eōs *the books which I had bought, I*
perdidi *lost*

148. In the above example **eōs** and **quōs** are called **correlatives**, the demonstrative and relative making a pair; other correlatives are the following adjectives and pronouns:—

Demonstrative.	Relative.
tāl-is, -e (<i>such</i>)	quāl-is, -e
tant-us, -a, -um (<i>so great</i>)	quant-us, -a, -um
tot (<i>so many</i> : indeclinable)	quot (indeclinable)
idem (<i>the same</i> , § 137)	quī

When corresponding to the demonstratives, the relative words above are all translated *as*.

tālis est quālis semper fuit	<i>he is the same (of such a sort) as he has ever been</i>
tantam habeo voluptātem quantam tū	<i>I have as much pleasure as you</i>
fluctūs erant tantī quantōs numquam antea videram	<i>the waves were such (so great) as I had never seen before</i>

quot hominēs (sunt), tot (sunt) sententiæ	there are as many opinions as men
rēs peracta est eōdem modō quō antea	the deed has been done in the same manner as before

CORRELATIVE ADVERBS.

149. Correlative adverbs are the following :—

Demonstrative.	Relative.
hic, here	ubi, where
ibi, there	
hūc, to this place, hither }	quō, whither
eō, to that place, thither }	
hinc, hence	unde, whence
inde, thence	
tam, so (with adjectives)	quam, as
totiēs, so often	quotiēs, as (as often)

NOTE.—Distinguish *such* as an adjective in English (e.g. *such a man*, *tālis* or *tantus vir*) from *such* as an adverb qualifying an adjective (e.g. *such a good man*, *tam bonus vir*).

150. The verb in clauses introduced by the relative adverbs is usually in the indicative mood.

ubi tū stās, ego prope stō	where you stand, I stand near you
Patāvium, unde venit, mul- tum distat	Padua, whence (or from which) he is coming, is a long way off

VOCABULARY 24.

adipisc-or, adeptus, 3, I gain	alacrit-ās, -ātis, f., eagerness
āmitt-ō, cpd. of mittō, 3, I lose	fruct-us, -ūs, m., fruit
revert-or (cpd. of vector), 3, I return	inerti-a, -ae, f., sloth
toler-ō, 1, I endure	pig-er, -ra, -rum, lazy

EXERCISE 24.

A. Translate into English :—

Alexander, Macedonum rex, milites cohortatur.

Vos, quorum animi pleni sunt alacritatis, fideles este : quoties enim cum meis militibus in acie sto, toties hostium numerum con-

temno. Eo nos progrediamur, quo adhuc nemo pervenit. Nolite tales esse, quales pigri agricolae sunt : hi enim per inertiam laborum fructus saepe amittunt.

Maiora vobis erunt praemia quam pericula ; gloriam adipiscemini, sed non tam ad gloriam quam ad praedam vos duco. Quicumque tales hostes aggredi audebit, multa cum praeda ad patriam revertetur. Tantum erit vestrum praemium, quantam fortitudinem in pugna adhibueritis ; et eosdem labores, quos exercitus meus, ipse tolerabo.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quis erat Alexander ?

Quid de praeda potius quam de gloria loquitur ?

Cur milites hortabatur Alexander ?

Cur Alexander dicit hostes a se contemni ?

Quid promittit eis qui ei fideles sunt ?

Cur tot labores rex ipse tolerabat ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. You will always have the friends whom you make in the first years of life. 2. Whoever thinks that he knows everything is more foolish than the man who knows nothing. 3. Let us be the same in prosperity as we were in adversity. 4. We ought to love very much the city in which we have been brought up. 5. Will you lose the friends whose love is so great ? 6. That state which was most faithful to the king was honoured with a great reward [put relative pronoun first, as in § 147). 7. We, who are older, ought to show a good example to those who are younger. 8. Do not remain in the same place as your brothers. 9. You, who have seen such great (sights), are more fortunate than your fathers. 10. Whatever wars he waged, he was always fortunate in them. 11. Do we know as much as we have learned ? 12. I do not receive as many letters as I write. 13. Where the tree fell, there let it lie. 14. Animals do not often move from the place in which they were born. 15. He whom we now call a foreigner (*peregrinus*) was by our ancestors called an enemy.

LESSON 25.

Possum and other compounds of **sum**; interrogative pronouns and adjectives; some irregular adjectives.

THE VERB **Possum**.

151. **Possum**, *I am able, I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective **pot-is**, *able*, + **sum**), is conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potu-ī**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjective only): **potens** (gen. **potent-is**), *powerful*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am able.*)

pos-sum	pos-sumus
pot-es	pot-estis
pot-est	pos-sunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was able.*)

pot-eram	pot-erāmus
pot-erās	pot-erātis
pot-erat	pot-erant

FUTURE. (*I shall be able.*)

pot-erō	pot-erimus
pot-eris	pot-eritis
pot-erit	pot-erunt

PERFECT. (*I was or have been able.*)

potu-ī, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been able.*)

potu-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been able.*)

potu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

pos-sim	pos-simus
pos-sis	pos-sitis
pos-sit	pos-sint

IMPERFECT.

pos-sem	pos-sēmus
pos-sēs	pos-sētis
pos-set	pos-sent

PERFECT.

potu-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

potu-issem, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **posse**, *to be able*.

PERFECT: **potu-isse**, *to have been able*.

Possum has no imperative, no supine, and no future participle.

152. *Possum* is used with the present infinitive as *is can* in English, and the present infinitive is retained with the past tenses of the indicative of *possum*.

exercitus dēlērī potest *the army can (or may) be destroyed*

exercitus dēlērī potuit *the army could (or might) have been destroyed*

Obs.—Compare the use of *debeo*, § 69.

THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

153. The following compounds of *sum* are conjugated like the simple verb.

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect.	
<i>ab-sum</i>	<i>ab-esse</i>	<i>āfu-ī</i>	<i>I am absent</i>
<i>ad-sum</i>	<i>ad-esse</i>	<i>adfu-ī</i>	<i>I am present</i>
<i>dē-sum</i>	<i>dē-esse</i>	<i>dēfu-ī</i>	<i>I am wanting, am neglectful</i>
<i>in-sum</i>	<i>in-esse</i>	<i>infu-ī</i>	<i>I am in</i>
<i>inter-sum</i>	<i>inter-esse</i>	<i>interfu-ī</i>	<i>I am in the midst</i>
<i>ob-sum</i>	<i>ob-esse</i>	<i>obfu-ī</i>	<i>I am harmful, do harm</i>
<i>prae-sum</i>	<i>prae-esse</i>	<i>prae-fu-ī</i>	<i>I am in command</i>
<i>prō-sum</i>	<i>prōd-esse</i>	<i>prōfu-ī</i>	<i>I am beneficial, do good</i>
<i>super-sum</i>	<i>super-esse</i>	<i>superfu-ī</i>	<i>I am left</i>

NOTE 1.—*Absum* and *praesum* have present participles *absens*, *praesens*.

NOTE 2.—*Prōsum* retains *d* (elsewhere dropped) before *e*; *e.g.* the present indicative is

<i>prō-sum</i>	<i>prō-sumus</i>
<i>prōd-es</i>	<i>prōd-estis</i>
<i>prōd-est</i>	<i>prō-sunt</i>

154. The compounds of *sum* (except *possum*) are constructed with the dative case.

Caesar exercitui praecerat *Caesar was in command of the army*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

155. The interrogative pronoun is **quis**, **quae**, **quid**, *who? which? what?* It is used both substantivally and adjectivally, except in the forms **quī** (nominative singular masculine) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter), which are adjectival only.

quis venit?	<i>who is coming?</i> (substantival)
quī miles venit?	<i>what soldier is coming?</i> (adjectival)
quid vidēs?	<i>what do you see?</i> (substantival)
quod animal vidēs?	<i>what animal do you see?</i> (adjectival)

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ quis }	quae	{ quid }	quī	quae	quae
	{ quī }		{ quod }			
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	{ quid }	quōs	quās	quae
			{ quod }			
<i>Gen.</i>		cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		cui			quibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

Obs.—Except in the forms **quis**, **quid**, the interrogative pronoun is identical with the relative.

NOTE 1.—**Quisnam**, **quaenam**, **quidnam**, *who, pray? what, pray?* is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle **-nam** to the simple interrogative.

156. **Quālis**, **quantus**, **quot** (see § 148), can also be used as interrogative adjectives to mean *of what kind? how great? how many?*

quot hominēs vērērunt?	<i>how many men came?</i>
quantum est templum?	<i>how great is the temple?</i>

Obs.—For the interrogative adjective **uter** see § 157.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

157. Nine adjectives have genitive singular of all genders ending in **-ius** (sometimes **-ius**), and dative singular of all genders ending in **-i**. They are otherwise (except the neuter singular of **alius**) declined like **bonus**.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone*
 tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole*
 ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*
 ullus, ulla, ullum, *any* (after a negative)
 nullus, nulla, nullum, *no, none*
 uter, utra, utrum, *which (of the two) ?*
 neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*
 alter, altera, alterum, *the one (of two), the other (of two),*
 the second (of two)
 alius, alia, aliud, *one (of several), another (of several)*

Example: nullus, nulla, nullum, *no, none.* Base, null-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	null-us	null-a	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-a
<i>Acc.</i>	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-a
<i>Gen.</i>	null-ius	null-ius	null-ius	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Alter . . . alter is used for *the one . . . the other* (of two), **alius . . . alius** for *one (some) . . . another (others)*.

alter hōc, alter illud faciet *the one will do this, the other that*
 alii hōc, alii illud facient *some will do this, others that*

Alius is frequently repeated in a different case, or followed by an adverb formed from it. The translation of the doubled **alius** is to be noted.

alius in aliā rē est magis *one is more useful in one busi-*
 utilis *ness, another in another*
 alii aliō mittēbantur *some were being sent one way,*
 some another

NOTE.—**Alius** followed by **atque** or **ac** is used in the sense of *other than*; e.g. hī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Galli bellum gerunt, *these wage war in a manner very different from the rest of the Gauls.*

VOCABULARY 25.

commest-us, -ūs, *m., provisions* quārē, *for which reason*
 paulātim, *gradually* (relative)

EXERCISE 25.

A. Translate into English :—

Principes Britannorum Caesari resistere constituunt.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britannorum inter se colloqui statuerunt, rebellione facta, Romanos frumento comestatuque prohibere, et bellum in hiemem producere: confidebant enim, his reditu interclusis, nullum populum in fines Britanniae invadere conaturum esse.

“Quosnam equites,” dicunt, “et quot naves Romani habent? quid contra nos facere poterunt, longe a patria pugnantes? Quare paulatim a Caesare discedamus, ac nostros ex agris cogamus: mox nullus Romanus in hac insula supererit. Tales non sumus, quales Romani saepissime vicerunt—vos igitur, qui libertatem amatis, nobiscum arma sumite.”

B. Oral Exercise :—

Qui Caesari resistendi causa convenerunt?

Cur Britanni confidebant se Romanos superaturos esse?

Utrum in bello Caesarem Britannos an Britannos Caesarem victuros esse putas?

Quid Romanis in hoc bello deerat, quod Britannis non deerat?

Cur Britanni se alios esse putabant ac ceteros Romanorum hostes?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Nothing stood in his way, except weakness of body. 2. How many men there are, who have never seen the sea! 3. Which of these books will you choose? Take the one and leave the other. 4. Many of our ancestors could not write, but they did good to the State by fighting for their country. 5. O that Caesar had been in command of the legions, rather than Sabinus and Cotta! 6. What work have you finished, while I have been watching you? 7. To neither of the two shall we give the praise which he thinks he has deserved. 8. Let the streets of the whole city be cleansed: this is our only hope. 9. I had hoped to be present at the games given by Brutus. 10. By the shouts of those looking on, he understood that the general was absent.

LESSON 26.

Volō, nōlō, mālō ; consecutive clauses.

VOLO, NOLO, AND MALO.

158. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

volō, velle, volu-ī, I will, am willing.

nōlō (ne-, not, + volō), nolle, nōlu-ī, I will not, am unwilling.

mālō (mag-, as in magis, more, + volō), malle, mālu-ī, I am more willing, prefer.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

volens (gen. volent-is), <i>willing.</i>	nōlens (gen. nōlent-is), <i>unwilling.</i>	<i>None.</i>
--	--	--------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>(I am willing)</i>	<i>(I am unwilling)</i>	<i>(I prefer)</i>
PRESENT :—	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
	<i>(I was willing)</i>	<i>(I was unwilling)</i>	<i>(I was preferring)</i>
IMPERFECT :—	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

	<i>(I shall be willing)</i>	<i>(I shall be unwilling)</i>	<i>(I shall prefer)</i>
FUTURE :—	volam volēs volet volēmus volētis volent	(nōlam) nōlēs nōlet (nōlēmus) (nōlētis) (nōlent)	(mālam) (mālēs) (mālet) (mālēmus) (mālētis) (mālent)
	<i>(I was or have been willing)</i>	<i>(I was or have been unwilling)</i>	<i>(I preferred or have preferred)</i>
PERFECT :—	volu-I, etc.	nōlu-I, etc.	mālu-I, etc.
	<i>(I had been willing)</i>	<i>(I had been unwilling)</i>	<i>(I had preferred)</i>
PLUPERFECT :—	volu-eram, etc.	nōlu-eram, etc.	mālu-eram, etc.
	<i>(I shall have been willing)</i>	<i>(I shall have been unwilling)</i>	<i>(I shall have preferred)</i>
FUTURE- PERFECT :—	volu-erō, etc.	nōlu-erō, etc.	mālu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT :—	velim velis velit velimus velitis velint	nōlim nōlis nōlit nōlimus nōlitis nōlint	mālim mālis mālit mālimus mālitis mālint
IMPERFECT :—	vellem vellēs vellet vellēmus vellētis vellent	nollem nollēs nollet nollēmus nollētis nollent	malle mallēs mallet mallēmus mallētis mallent
PERFECT :—	volu-erim, etc.	nōlu-erim, etc.	mālu-erim, etc.
PLUPERFECT :—	volu-issem, etc.	nōlu-issem, etc.	mālu-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		<i>(Be unwilling)</i>	
PRESENT :—	None	nōli nōlite	None

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :— **velle**, to be willing **nolle**, to be unwilling **malle**, to prefer

PERFECT :— **volu-isse**, to have been willing **nōlu-isse**, to have been unwilling **mālu-isse**, to have preferred

Obs.—**Volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs ; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE.—These verbs, like **dēbeō** and **possum** (see §§ 68, 69), are constructed with the simple object infinitive, *e.g.* **volui venire**, *I wished to come.*

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

159. A consecutive clause expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence. It is usually introduced in Latin by **ut** (*that, so that*), or, if the clause is negative, by **ut** followed by **nōn** or some other negative word. The principal sentence often contains a demonstrative adverb meaning *so*, *e.g.* **adeō**, **ita**, **sic**, **tam**, or an adjective such as **tot** (indeclinable), *so many*, **tantus** (*so great*), **tālis**, *such*.

160. The mood of the verb in the consecutive clause is always **subjunctive** ; the tense of the subjunctive is partly determined by the tense of the indicative in the principal sentence, according to the following rule, known as the rule for the **sequence of tenses**.

161. A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a historic tense in the principal sentence requires a historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause. The above rule is based on the following division of tenses :—

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.

Present.

Future.

Perfect (with Present-Perfect meaning).

Future-Perfect.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Perfect.

HISTORIC.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect (with past meaning).	Pluperfect.
Pluperfect.	

Obs.—The perfect indicative is said to be used with “present-perfect” meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, e.g. *amāvi*, *I have loved*, and is said to be used with a “past” meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, e.g. *amāvi*, *I loved*. Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

162. Whether the present or perfect subjunctive is to be used after primary tenses of the indicative, and the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after historic tenses of the indicative, depends on the sense required, as will be seen from the following examples of consecutive clauses.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE.

<i>ita vivit ut omnibus cārus sit</i>	<i>he so lives that he is dear to all</i>
<i>adeō mē timet ut adhuc</i>	<i>he fears me so much that he</i>
<i>tacuerit</i>	<i>has been silent till now</i>

HISTORIC SEQUENCE.

<i>ita vixit ut omnibus cārus</i>	<i>he so lived that he was dear to</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>all</i>
<i>tanta erat munitiōnis firmi-</i>	<i>such was the strength of the</i>
<i>tudō ut Rōmānis saepe re-</i>	<i>fortification that it had often</i>
<i>stitisset</i>	<i>resisted the Romans</i>

VOCABULARY 26.

<i>cunct-or</i> , 1, <i>dep.</i> , <i>I delay</i>	<i>vag-or</i> , 1, <i>I wander</i>
<i>prōsil-iō</i> (cpd. of <i>sal-iō</i>), <i>I leap</i>	
<i>forth</i>	<i>insidi-ae</i> , - <i>arum</i> , <i>f. pl.</i> , <i>ambush</i>

EXERCISE 26.

A. Translate into English :—

Fabiorum exitium.

Quis tam ignarus est ut Fabiorum famam et nomen nesciat? haec enim gens sola Romanorum causam suscepit. Nolebant civium agros ab hostibus diutius vastari; quare ipsi in hostium finibus

bellum gerere statuerunt. Hostes vero, ubi vincere aperte non poterant, insidias paraverunt. Fabiis enim tanta erat animi fortitudo, ut sine timore ubique vagarentur. Quibus ita vagantibus subito tanta hostium multitudo ex insidiis prosiluit, ut impetum sustinere Romani non possent, et fere omnes interficerentur. Unus tamen de gente Fabiorum, deorum beneficio, ita superfuit ut Quintus Fabius Maximus, vir clarissimus, qui Hannibali postea restitit, nasci posset.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur tam clari erant Fabii ?

Cur Fabii Romanorum causam susceperunt ?

Quomodo hostes Fabios superare poterant ?

Utrum hostes perfidi erant annon ?

Cur dei voluerunt unum de Fabiorum gente superesse ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. I have so lived that I can cheerfully leave life. 2. Who is so cruel as not to pity our miserable lot ? 3. Which of the two do you prefer, to gain wealth or to do good to the citizens ? 4. I wish to say a few words, when your speech is finished (*abl. abs.*). 5. It happened that the friends of the consul were present. 6. I would rather be good than wise. 7. He so lived that he was not afraid to die. 8. You do not think, do you, that all citizens desire the welfare of the State ? 9. I am unwilling to hinder the boy when he is trying to finish his work. 10. No one is so learned that he cannot learn new accomplishments (*artes*). 11. Where are you living now ? 12. I hear that you have been very ill. 13. Who has ever had such an opportunity (*occasio*) as you have now ? 14. Hannibal was not so foolish as not to understand the plans of the Romans. 15. When am I to get another letter ? 16. Those who survived the battle (*supersum* and *dat.*) escaped to their own towns. 17. His arrival so frightened the Gauls that no one dared to go outside the fortifications. 18. The fox was so cunning that the goat was deceived. 19. The gods helping me, said Fabius, I will not lose a single soldier. 20. Do you think that you ought to have been so angry ?

LESSON 27.

Ferō, fiō and compounds; impersonal use in the passive.

FERO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

163. PRINCIPAL PARTS: fer-ō, fer-re, tul-i, lāt-um, *I bear.*

BASES: fer- (present); tul- (perfect); lāt- (supine).

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: fer-ens (gen. ferent-is),
bearing

FUTURE: lāt-ūrus, lāt-ūra, lāt-ūrum, *about to bear*

PERFECT: lāt-us, lāt-a, lāt-um,
borne or having been borne

GERUNDIVE: fer-endus, fer-enda,
fer-endum, *fit to be borne*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I bear.*)

fer-ō	fer-imus
fer-s	fer-tis
fer-t	fer-unt

IMPERFECT. (*I was bearing.*)

fer-ēbam	fer-ēbāmus
fer-ēbās	fer-ēbātis
fer-ēbat	fer-ēbant

FUTURE. (*I shall bear.*)

fer-am	fer-ēmus
fer-ēs	fer-ētis
fer-et	fer-ent

PERFECT. (*I bore or have borne.*)
tul-i, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had borne.*)
tul-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have borne.*)
tul-erō, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am borne.*)

fer-or	fer-imur
fer-ris	fer-imini
fer-tur	fer-untur

IMPERFECT. (*I was being borne.*)

fer-ēbar	fer-ēbāmur
fer-ēbāris or -ēbāre	fer-ēbāmini
fer-ēbātur	fer-ēbantur

FUTURE. (*I shall be borne.*)

fer-ar	fer-ēmur
fer-ēris or fer-ēre	fer-ēmini
fer-ētur	fer-entur

PERFECT. (*I was or have been borne.*)
lāt-us sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been borne.*)
lāt-us eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been borne.*)
lāt-us erō, etc.

ACTIVE VOICE.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

fer-am	fer-āmus
fer-ās	fer-ātis
fer-at	fer-ant

IMPERFECT.

fer-rem	fer-rēmus
fer-rēs	fer-rētis
fer-ret	fer-rent

PERFECT.

tul-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

tul-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Bear.*)
fer fer-te

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES. : fer-re, to bear

,, PERF. : tul-isse, to have borne

,, FUT. : lātūr-us esse, to be about to bear

GERUND : fer-endum, bearing, etc.

SUPINE : lāt-um, to bear; lāt-ū, in bearing

PASSIVE VOICE.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

fer-ar	fer-āmur
fer-āris or fer-āre	fer-āmini
fer-ātur	fer-antur

IMPERFECT.

fer-rer	fer-rēmur
fer-rēris or fer-rēre	fer-rēmini
fer-rētur	fer-rentur

PERFECT.

lāt-us sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

lāt-us essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be borne.*)
fer-re fer-imini

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES. : fer-rī, to be borne

,, PERF. : lāt-us esse, to have been borne

,, FUT. : lātum irī, to be about to be borne

COMPOUNDS.

164. The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of *ferō*; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive:—

Compounded with

ab :	aufer-ō	-re	abstul-i
ad :	affer-ō	-re	attul-i
cum :	confer-ō	-re	contul-i
dis :	differ-ō	-re	distul-i
ex :	effer-ō	-re	extul-i
in :	infer-ō	-re	intul-i
ob :	offer-ō	-re	obtul-i
re :	refer-ō	-re	rettul-i
sub :	suffer-ō	-re	sustul-i

ablāt-um	bear away
allāt-um	bring
collāt-um	bring together
dilāt-um	separate
ēlāt-um	bring out
illāt-um	bring in
oblāt-um	offer
relāt-um	bear back
sublāt-um	endure

Other preps. unchanged, as in

dēferō -re dētul-i

dēlāt-um bear down

FIO.

165. *Fīō*, *I become, am made*, takes the place of the passive of *faciō*, *I make*, in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of *fīō* are supplied by the passive voice of *faciō*, of which the supine base is *fact-*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fīō*, *fieri*, *fact-us sum*.

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : *fact-us*, *fact-a*, *fact-um*, *having become*
 { GERUNDIVE : *faciend-us*, *-a*, *-um*, *fit to become*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I become.*)

fīō —
fīs —
fīt *fiunt*

IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming.*)

fiēbam *fiēbāmus*
fiēbās *fiēbātis*
fiēbat *fiēbant*

FUTURE. (*I shall become.*)

fiam *fiēmus*
fiēs *fiētis*
fiet *fient*

PERFECT : *fact-us sum*, etc.

PLUPERF. : *fact-us eram*, etc.

FUT.-PERF. : *fact-us erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

fiam *fiāmus*
fiās *fiātis*
fiat *fiant*

IMPERFECT.

fierem *fierēmus*
fierēs *fierētis*
fieret *fierent*

PERFECT. : *fact-us sim*, etc.

PLUPERF. : *fact-us essem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Become.*)

fī *fite*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : *fieri*, *to become* PERFECT : *fact-us esse*, *to have become*

FUTURE : *factum iri*, *to be about to become*

Compounds of *faciō* with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive, e.g. *afficiō*, *I affect* (compounded of the preposition *ad*, *to*, and *faciō*), has passive *afficior*.

Other compounds use *fīō* in the passive, e.g. *calefaciō*, *I make hot*, passive *calefiō*.

COMPOUND VERBS.

166. When compounded with verbs, some prepositions undergo certain changes, as will be seen from the table of verbs in § 365. The following are the most important :—

(i) The final consonant of **ad**, **ob**, **sub** is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb, *e.g.* **afferō** (= **ad** + **ferō**), **oppōnō** (= **ob** + **pōnō**), **summoveō** (= **sub** + **moveō**). **Sus-**, *e.g.* in **sus-pendō**, **sus-tulī**, represents **subs-**, a form of **sub**.

(ii) **Com-** (the usual form of **cum** in composition) and **in** are assimilated to **l** or **r** when the simple verb begins with either of those letters, *e.g.* **corrumpō** (= **com** + **rumpō**), **irruppō** (= **in** + **rumpō**). They are respectively written **com-** and **im-** before **m**, **b**, or **p**, *e.g.* **impellō**; **com-** becomes **con-** before most other letters, *e.g.* **conferō**, **contulī**.

IMPERSONAL USE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS IN THE PASSIVE.

167. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive. A verb is said to be used impersonally when found in the third person singular or the infinitive with an indefinite subject which is not expressed.

venitur ad montēs	<i>the mountains are being reached</i> (lit. <i>there-is-a-coming to the mountains</i>)
ventum est ad montēs	<i>they reached the mountains</i>

168. The intransitive verbs that govern the dative case can only be expressed in the passive in this impersonal way.

lēgātus militibus imperat	<i>the lieutenant commands the soldiers</i>
a lēgātō militibus imperātur	<i>the soldiers are commanded by the lieutenant</i> (lit. <i>there-is-a-giving-of-orders by the lieutenant to the soldiers</i>)

VOCABULARY 27.

dūr-ō, 1, *I last*libenter, *willingly*facult-ās, -ātis, *f., ability*undique, *from all sides*vox, vōcis, *f., voice, word*utrimque, *from both sides*

EXERCISE 27.

A. Translate into English :—

Hirtius scribit se Caesaris "de bello Gallico" commentariis octavum librum addidisse.

Coactus tuis assiduīs vocibus, rem difficillimam suscepi. Caesaris enim libris quos de rebus suis in Gallia gestis scripsit, alium ipse addidi: utinam ei, qui legent, in memoria teneant me hoc opus suscipere noluisse. Libro tamen meo addito, fiet ut omnia bella quae Caesar gessit, narrentur. Fieri non potest ut existimes me a Caesare viro clarissimo laudem abstulisse. Potius tecum semper eius nomen extollam qui fines imperii Romani ad mare ultimum promovit, atque opus tantum perfecit ut in omnes annos durare possit. Spero te hunc librum perfectum atque editum libenter accepturum

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid scripsit Hirtius amico suo se fecisse?

Quomodo Hirtius librum suum composuit?

Quam opinionem de Caesare Hirtium habuisse putas?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. I was willing to endure every pain which the gods sent me. 2. On both sides the contest was waged with the greatest spirit; for neither army was willing to yield to the other. 3. Let us not speak otherwise than those who understand the matter. 4. He said that he had never waged war against his country. 5. It so happened that the consul had led back his forces into the city. 6. Gathering together his friends, he burst into the senate-house so suddenly that the senators were unable to escape. 7. Shall we ever see the end of the wars which have for so long exhausted the strength of the citizens? 8. From all sides there was a rush of those who wished to hinder the tribune. 9. Whoever wishes to learn, shall become my pupil. 10. When he became consul, he proposed many useful laws.

LESSON 28.

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

169. A dependent question is not a question that is then and there asked, but one that is reported or mentioned. The question-clause is in dependence on a principal sentence which may be a statement, a question, or a command.

The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent questions; the right-hand column gives the same questions in a direct or independent form :—

I know *what he is doing*
Tell me *when they will arrive*
He asked me *if I was well*
It is impossible to say *whether*
he is there or no

What is he doing?
When will they arrive?
Are you well?
Is he there or no?

From the above examples it will be seen that direct questions which are introduced by some interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (e.g. *what? which? when?*) retain this interrogative word when they become dependent; other questions when they become dependent are introduced by *if* or *whether*.

170. It is often impossible to tell by the form of the dependent clause whether it is a dependent question or not; compare the following with the sentences given above :—

I don't approve of *what he is doing*
Go to meet them *when they arrive*
I used always to walk *if I was well*
Have you made up your mind to call *whether he is there or no?*

In order to distinguish between dependent questions and clauses such as the above, it is well to consider the character of the principal sentence: a dependent question usually depends on some expression of *wondering, enquiring, knowing, or telling*.

NOTE.—Occasionally, however, it may happen that neither the nature of the principal verb nor the form of the dependent clause enables us to decide whether the latter is a dependent question or a relative clause. Take for instance the sentence

I saw *what he had in his basket*.

If the meaning is "I saw that which he had in his basket," the clause is relative; if the meaning is "I came to know what he had in his basket," the clause is a dependent question (direct form, "*what has he in his basket?*").

171. In Latin a dependent question is introduced either (a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or (b) by one of the particles **-ne, num** (*if or whether*), **nonne** (*if or whether . . . not*). Of these **num** is the commonest, and in a dependent question does not imply that a negative answer is expected.

172. In dependent questions in Latin the verb stands in the **subjunctive mood**. The tense of the subjunctive to be used is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (§§ 160, 161).

A. DIRECT QUESTION:—

aedificantne Galli oppidum? *are the Gauls building a town?*

(a) Primary sequence:—

rogō, I ask	}	num Galli oppidum aedificent
rogābō, I shall ask		<i>whether the Gauls are building</i>
rogāvi, I have asked		<i>a town</i>

(b) Historic sequence:—

rogābam, I was asking	}	num Galli oppidum aedificarent
rogāvi, I asked		<i>whether the Gauls were building</i>
rogāveram, I had asked		<i>a town</i>

B. DIRECT QUESTION :—

vastābantne Galli agrōs? *were the Gauls laying waste the fields?*

vastāvēruntne Galli agrōs? *{ did the Gauls lay waste the fields?
have the Gauls laid waste the fields?*

(a) Primary sequence :—

rogō, I ask } **num Galli agrōs vastāverint**
rogābō, I shall ask } *whether the Gauls were laying (or*
rogāvi, I have asked } *laid or have laid) waste the fields*

(b) Historic sequence :—

rogābam, I was asking } **num Galli agrōs vastāvissent**
rogāvi, I asked } *whether the Gauls had been laying*
rogāveram, I had asked } *waste (or had laid waste) the fields*

C. DIRECT QUESTION :—

quandō Caesar Gallōs superābit? *when will Caesar overcome the Gauls*

(a) Primary sequence :—

rogō, I ask } **quandō Caesar Gallōs superātūrus**
rogābō, I shall ask } **sit**
rogāvi, I have asked } *when Caesar will overcome the Gauls*

(b) Historic sequence :—

rogābam, I was asking } **quandō Caesar Gallōs superāt-**
rogāvi, I asked } **urus esset** [*Gauls*]
rogāveram, I had asked } *when Caesar would overcome the*

VOCABULARY 28.

inveh-or (in with acc.), 3, <i>I attack (in words)</i>	percurr-ō , 3, <i>I run over</i>
ōmitt-ō , 3, <i>I leave out</i>	av-us , -i, m., <i>grandfather</i>
opīn-or , 1, <i>I think</i>	pueriti-a , -ae, f., <i>boyhood</i>

EXERCISE 28.

A. Translate into English :—

Antonii accusationis initium.

Videte, iudices, quantum inter Antonium atque Antonii avum
 intersit: hic enim dicebat ea quae causae proderant, ille contra

quod causae obest dicit. Quis vestrum nescit quoties pater filium turpissimum e domo sua eiecerit? Talis autem fuit vita reliqua qualis erat pueritia. Quantas miseras rei publicae intulerit, nemo vestrum ignorat: sed quae tum fecit omittere volo; ea potius quae nunc impie facit, breviter percurram: quid dicturus sim, ipse optime intellegit—ita enim cum eo agam ut sciat me omnia de vita sua cognovisse. Multa sunt quae dicere non possum, sed vobis satisfacient quae sum dicturus.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Quid nobis de Antonii pueritia orator dicit?

Quare orator Antonium rei publicae nocere putabat?

Cur orator in privatam Antonii vitam invehitur?

C. Translate into Latin:—

1. Do not ask what end the gods have given to your life. 2. Say why he fears the yellow Tiber. 3. Let us hear what you said to the old man when he complained of your harshness. 4. I should like to know where you will find a better citizen. 5. Did you know whether he had read all the books which I had given him? 6. I will write to you what I think about your plan. 7. Are you wondering if you will ever see me again? 8. Cicero wanted to join together all the good citizens. 9. Do you see how the trees scarcely bear the weight of the snow? 10. What my children will do is quite uncertain. 11. Have you heard when he will return? 12. The judge asked the soldier what he had seen in the wood. 13. We cannot forget how many injuries he has inflicted upon us (*say* he has brought on us). 14. It is uncertain why he did these things. 15. I shall not ask how, but why, he killed his father.

LESSON 29.

Eō and its compounds; double dependent question.

173. Eō AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō**, **īre**, **iv-ī**, **it-um**, *I go*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **iens** (gen. **eunt-is**), *going*
 { FUTURE: **it-ūrus**, **it-ūra**, **it-ūrum**, *about to go*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I go*.)

eō	imus
is	itis
it	eunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was going*.)

ibam	ibāmus
ibās	ibātis
ibat	ibant

FUTURE. (*I shall go*.)

ibō	ibimus
ibis	ibitis
ibit	ibunt

PERFECT. (*I went or have gone*.)

ivī or ii	ivimus or iimus
ivistī (iistī) or ivistis (iistis) or istī	istis

ivit, **iit** (or **it**) { **ivērunt** or **iērunt**
 { **ivēre** or **iēre**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had gone*.)

iv-eram or **i-eram**, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have gone*.)

iv-erō or **i-erō**, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

eam	eāmus
eās	eātis
eat	eant

IMPERFECT.

irem	irēmus
irēs	irētis
iret	irent

PERFECT.

iv-erim or **i-erim**, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

iv-issem (**i-issem**) or **issem**, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Go*.)

i	ite
----------	------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **īre**, *to go*

PERFECT: **ivisse** (**iisse**) or **isse**,
to have gone

FUTURE: **itū-us esse**, *to be about to go*

GERUND.

Nom. **eundum**, *going*, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. **it-um**, *to go*

Obs.—In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with **v** are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The forms included in brackets () are comparatively rare.

COMPOUNDS.

ab-eō	<i>I go away</i>	per-eō	<i>I perish</i>
ad-eō	<i>I approach</i>	prae-eō	<i>I precede</i>
co-eō	<i>I come together</i>	præter-eō	<i>I go past</i>
in-eō	<i>I enter</i>	red-eō	<i>I go back</i>
ob-eō	<i>I traverse, die</i>	trans-eō	<i>I go across</i>

DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

174. Double questions, like single questions, may be reported, and are then called **dependent double questions**. The only change is in the verb, which passes into the **subjunctive** and follows the rules already given for the sequence of tenses.

rogō utrum Caesarem an Pompēium laudēs	<i>I ask whether you praise Caesar or Pompeius</i>
rogāvi utrum Caesarem an Pompēium laudārēs	<i>asked whether you were praising Caesar or Pom- peius</i>

In a dependent double question *or not* is expressed by *necne* rather than by *annōn*.

rogāvit utrum Caesar Nervīōs superāvisset necne	<i>he asked whether Caesar had conquered the Nervii or not</i>
--	--

175. *An* is found introducing apparently single dependent questions after expressions of doubt, such as *haud sciō, nesciō, I do not know*. (Compare *an* in direct question, § 136.)

Note the translation of the following:—

haud sciō an hōc ita sit	<i>I am inclined to think that this is so (or I do not know whether this is not so)</i>
--------------------------	---

VOCABULARY 29.

constat, 1, impers., it is	invis-us, -a, -um, <i>hateful</i>
	nimi-us, -a, -um, <i>excessive</i>
	potest-ās, -ātis, <i>f., power</i>

EXERCISE 29.

A. Translate into English :—

Gaius Julius Caesar.

Utrum iure an iniuria Caesar Idibus Martiis a Bruto et Cassio occisus sit, nemo potest dicere: hoc tantum scimus, eum civem fuisse tantum ut nemo ei par esse posset. Regis potestatem habuit, sed Antonio, num rex esse vellet necne, roganti respondit se nolle regem fieri; sciebat enim regis nomen Romanis semper invisum fuisse.

Multa quidem beneficia populus ab eo accepit, sed utrum rei publicae magis profuerit an nocuerit, incertum est: constat eum leges optimas tulisse, libertatem tamen, rem pretiosissimam, populo abstulisse: quare haud scio an merito perierit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quando et a quibus Caesar occisus est?

Quid putas Caesarem de regno voluisse?

Quare Caesarem virum clarissimum fuisse existimare debemus?

Putasne Caesarem merito periisse?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Who can tell whether you are mistaken, or no? 2. Let us return to that point whence we started. 3. I do not care what others think about me. 4. I asked him whether (it was) Caesar or Pompey (that) had won a victory. 5. It is acknowledged that he perished with his whole army. 6. The battle was put off so long that the soldiers had grown weary. 7. The poet and the orator cannot easily be compared. 8. As they were departing from the city, they besought the protection of the gods. 9. Everywhere we can find men so base that they are willing to betray their friends. 10. I will try to do what is pleasing to you. 11. Tell me whether you favour Brutus or Caesar. 12. I am inclined to think that Brutus acted rightly. 13. They could not say why they had crossed the Rhine, or when they would return. 14. We wish to know whether there was sufficient cause for murdering Caesar. 15. He will ask whether the Romans hate the name of king or not.

LESSON 30.

Edō and dō ; indefinite pronouns and adjectives.

EDŌ.

176. The tenses given below are the only ones in which **edō** is irregular.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **ed-ō**, **ed-ere** or **esse**, **ēd-ī**, **ēs-um**, *I eat*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I eat.*)

ed-ō	ed-imus
ed-is or ēs	ed-itis or estis
ed-it or est	ed-unt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ed-am or	ed-āmus or
ed-im	ed-imus
ed-ās or	ed-ātis or
ed-is	ed-itis
ed-at or	ed-ant or
ed-it	ed-int

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

IMPERFECT.

ed-erem or	ed-erāmus or
essem	essēmus
ed-erēs or	ed-erētis or
essēs	essētis
ed-eret or	ed-erent or
esset	essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Eat.*)

ed-e or ēs	ed-ite or este
--------------------------	------------------------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. (*To eat.*)

ed-ere or **esse**

DŌ AND ITS COMPOUND CIRCUMDŌ.

177. **Dō** (perfect **dedī**) follows the first conjugation, but has **a** instead of **ā** after **d** in parts formed from the present or supine base (*e.g.* **damus**, **datus**), except in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative active, **dās**, **dā**.

178. **Circumdō** is conjugated like **dō** ; the other compounds belong to the third conjugation.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

179. The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **qua**, **quid**, *any*, and its compounds. Like the interrogative, the indefinite **quis** has the adjectival forms **quī** (nominative singular masculine) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter).

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ quis quī }	qua	{ quid quod }		quī	quae	qua
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	{ quid quod }		quōs	quās	qua
<i>Gen.</i>		cuius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		cui				quibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō			quibus	

Obs. 1.—Except in the nominative singular feminine and the nominative and accusative plural neuter, the indefinite **quis** is identical with the interrogative. (See § 155.)

Obs. 2.—**Quis** is most commonly used after **sī**, *if*; **nisi**, *unless*; **nō**, *lest*; **num**; with other words *any* is translated by **quilibet** or **quivis** (§ 185), **quisquam** (§ 186), etc.

180. Three indefinite pronouns, also used adjectivally, refer to *all* the individuals belonging to a class, taken one by one:—

quisque, *each*
quilibet, *any you please, any*
quivis, *any you will, any*

181. The word for *which of two?* is **uter** (§ 157); it can be used either as a pronoun or an adjective, and has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable:—

uterumque, **utracumque**, **utrumcumque**, *whichever (of the two)*
uterlibet, **utralibet**, **utrumlibet**, *which (of the two) you please*
uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, *each (of the two)*
utervis, **utravis**, **utrumvis**, *which (of the two) you will*

182. Indefinite pronouns, also used adjectivally, referring in the singular to a single individual and in the plural to several, are:—

quidam, *a certain one*

aliquis, *someone*

Obs.—The force of **aliquis** is best remembered by means of a word which is often used instead of **aliquis**, viz. **nonnullus** (lit. *not none*).

183. A negative or a comparative commonly precedes **quisquam**, *any*.

Obs.—**Quisquam**, unlike the other indefinite pronouns, is substantival only ; its adjectival equivalent is **ullus** (§ 157).

Quis, qua, quid, a, any, some,
 With **nē, num, nisi** ; with it come
 Also **sī, seu, quō** and **cum**.
Quisquam is a substantive,
Ullus is its adjective.
 These must have a negative.
Quīvis, quilibet, you'll use
 When one of many you may choose.

184. **Quīdam** is declined thus :—

Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quædam	{quiddam quoddam}	quīdam	quædam	quædam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemdam	quamdam	{quiddam quoddam}	quosdam	quasdam	quædam
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusdam			quōrum- dam	quārum- dam	quōrum- dam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam				quibusdam	
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quibusdam	

185. **Quīlibet** and **quīvis** are declined like **quīdam**, the endings **-libet** and **-vis** remaining unchanged throughout.

186. **Quisquam** is thus declined in the singular (the plural is not in use) :—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quæquam	quidquam or quicquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quem(n)quam	quam(n)quam	quidquam or quicquam
<i>Gen.</i>		cūiusquam	
<i>Dat.</i>		cuiquam	
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quāquam	quōquam

187. *Quisque* is declined like *quisquam*, and has also in the nominative and accusative singular neuter the adjectival form *quodque*. A common use of *quisque* is with a superlative adjective in the singular to denote the whole of a class.

188. The declension of *aliquis* (adjectival *aliquī*) is the same as that of the indefinite *quis*, except that the nominative singular feminine *aliqua* is adjectival only.

189. The following examples illustrate the use of these indefinite pronouns and adjectives:—

<i>num quis eum vidit?</i>	<i>has anyone seen him?</i>
<i>sua quisque facta narrābat</i>	<i>each man was telling of his own deeds</i>
<i>optimus quisque</i>	<i>all the best men</i> (lit. <i>each best man</i>) [N.B. always singular]
<i>facta sua uterque narrāvit</i>	<i>each of the two told his deeds</i>
<i>praedam aliquam ex illā pugnā comparāverunt</i>	<i>they got some booty from that battle</i>
<i>puella quaedam mihi haec narrāvit</i>	<i>a certain girl told me this</i>
<i>nec quisquam nōs superābit</i>	<i>nor will anyone excel us</i>
<i>neque ullus homō nōs superābit</i>	<i>nor will any man excel us</i>

VOCABULARY 30.

<i>conspic-or</i> , 1, <i>I observe</i>	<i>cohor-s</i> , -tis, f., <i>troop</i>
<i>coor-ior</i> , 4 (cpd. of <i>orior</i>), <i>I begin</i>	<i>impet-us</i> , -tis, m., <i>charge</i>
<i>praefic-iō</i> (cpd. of <i>faciō</i>), <i>I put at the head of</i> (with dat.)	<i>lat-us</i> , -eris, n., <i>side</i>
	<i>manipul-us</i> , -i, m., <i>company</i> (of soldiers)
<i>aci-ēs</i> , -i, f., <i>line</i> (of battle)	<i>quoque</i> , adv., <i>also</i> (always follows the word it qualifies)
<i>alb-us</i> , -a, -um, <i>white</i>	

EXERCISE 30.

A. Translate into English :—

Pugna ad Lacum Regillum.

Olim inter Romanos Latinosque ad lacum Regillum acriter pugnatum est. Una ex cohortibus Romanis proelium iniit; deinde coorta est alia pugna: imperator enim Latinus in primam aciem aliquos manipulos duxit; tum legatus quidam, hos venientes conspicatus, tam vehementer hastam coniecit, ut uno ictu per latus hostium ducem transfigeret. Quare Latini terga verterunt et omnes, pro se quisque, salutem petiverunt. A quibusdam scriptoribus accepimus deos, Castorem et Pollucem, cohortibus Romanis se praeiecisse, et albis equis vectos victoriam civibus dedisse. Tantum autem ardorem dicunt fuisse Romanorum, deis adiuvantibus, ut eodem impetu, quo hostes fuderant, castra quoque caperent.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo proelium initum est?

Utra acies in hoc proelio vicit?

Quid fecit legatus Romanus?

Quomodo dei Romanos adiuverunt?

Num credere possumus deos hominibus nonnumquam apparere?

C. Translate into English :—

1. It is one thing to say this, another thing to think it. 2. Let us give to each boy what we promised. 3. Choose any one you like out of the judges. 4. Will anyone dare to say that the consul was present at the games? 5. He said that he had found some money and had hidden it again in a certain spot. 6. Neither your brother nor anyone else was willing to endure any hardships for the State. 7. All the wisest men have warned us how short is the life of mortals. 8. In some book or other you will find the words written. 9. Let not anyone think that the work is finished. 10. Some were so weary that they could not reach the city before night. 11. These are the names of the bravest soldiers of both armies. 12. Some of our friends think one thing, others another. 13. Whatever I am, I am still the man I then was. 14. So fierce was the fighting (*say so fiercely was it fought*, § 167) that every tenth man was wounded. 15. Can anyone tell me when this battle was fought?

LESSON 31.

Defective verbs ; numerals.

Learn the cardinal and ordinal numbers which are printed in thick type.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

190. The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

(a) **āiō**, *I say.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE :	āiens (gen. āient-is), <i>saying</i>
INDICATIVE PRESENT :	āiō (<i>I say</i>), ais , ait , aiunt
„ IMPERFECT :	āiēbam (<i>I was saying</i>), etc. (complete)
„ PERFECT :	ait , <i>he said</i>

(b) **inquam**, *I say.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT :	inquam , inquis , inquit , inquimus , inquitis , inquiunt
„ IMPERF. :	inquiēbat , <i>he was saying</i>
„ FUTURE :	inquiēs (<i>thou wilt say</i>), inquiet
„ PERFECT :	inquī (<i>I said</i>), inquistī , inquit

(c) The following have no present base in use :—

coep-ī, *I began* ; **memin-ī**, *I remember* ; **ōd-ī**, *I hate*.

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of **meminī** and **ōdī**) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use :—

From **coepī** : Perfect participle passive, **coept-us**, -a, -um, and tenses formed by it with **sum**

„ **meminī** : Imperative, **mementō** (*remember*), **mementōte**

„ **ōdī** : Future participle, **ōsūr-us**, -a, -um, *about to hate*

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	ŭn-us, <i>one</i>	prim-us, <i>first</i>	singul-i, <i>one a-</i>	semel, <i>once</i>
2	du-o	secund-us or alter	bin-i [<i>piece</i>	bis
3	tr-ēs	terti-us	tern-i or trin-i*	ter
4	quattuor	quart-us	quatern-i	quater
5	quinque	quint-us	quin-i	quinquiēs
6	sex	sext-us	sēn-i	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-us	septēn-i	septiēs
8	octo	octāv-us	octōn-i	octiēs
9	novem	nōn-us	novēn-i	noviēs
10	decem	decim-us	dēn-i	deciēs
11	undecim	undecim-us	undēn-i	undeciēs
12	duodecim	duodecim-us	duodēn-i	duodeciēs
13	tredecim	terti-us decim-us	tern-i dēn-i	terdeciēs
14	quattuordecim	quart-us decim-us	quatern-i dēn-i	quater deciēs
15	quindecim	quint-us decim-us	quin-i dēn-i	quindeciēs
16	sēdecim	sext-us decim-us	sēn-i dēn-i	sedeciēs
17	septemdecim	septim-us decim-us	septēn-i dēn-i	septiēs deciēs
18	duodēviginti	duodēvicēsīsim-us	duodēvicēn-i	duodēviciēs
19	undēviginti	undēvicēsīsim-us	undēvicēn-i	undēviciēs
20	vīginti	vicēsīsim-us	vicēn-i	viciēs
21	ŭn-us et vīginti or vīginti ŭn-us	ŭn-us et vicēsīsim-us or vicēsīsim-us prim-us	vicēn-i singul-i	semel et viciēs
22	du-o et vīginti or vīginti du-o	alt-er et vicēsīsim-us or vicēsīsim-us alt-er	vicēn-i bin-i	bis et viciēs
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīsim-us	duodētricēn-i	duodētriciēs
29	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīsim-us	undētricēn-i	undētriciēs
30	trīgintā	triciēsīsim-us	triciēn-i	triciēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīsim-us	quadrāgēn-i	quadrāgiēs
50	quinqūāgintā	quinqūāgēsīsim-us	quinqūāgēn-i	quinqūāgiēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīsim-us	sexāgēn-i	sexāgiēs
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīsim-us	septuāgēn-i	septuāgiēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsīsim-us	octōgēn-i	octōgiēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīsim-us	nōnāgēn-i	nōnāgiēs
100	centum	centēsīsim-us	centēn-i	centiēs
200	ducent-i	ducentēsīsim-us	ducentēn-i	ducentiēs
300	trecent-i	trecentēsīsim-us	trecentēn-i	trecentiēs
400	quadringent-i	quadringentēsīsim-us	quadringentēn-i	quadringentiēs
500	quingent-i	quingentēsīsim-us	quingentēn-i	quingentiēs
600	sescent-i	sescentēsīsim-us	sescentēn-i	sescentiēs
700	septingent-i	septingentēsīsim-us	septingentēn-i	septingentiēs
800	octingent-i	octingentēsīsim-us	octingentēn-i	octingentiēs
900	nongent-i	nongentēsīsim-us	nongentēn-i	nongentiēs
1000	mille	millēsīsim-us	singul-a mil-ia	milliēs
2000	du-o mil-ia	bis millēsīsim-us	bin-a mil-ia	bis milliēs

* *Trini* (not *terni*) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; e.g. *trinae aedēs*, *three houses*.

192. (1) There is one numeral substantive: *mīlia* (*n.*), *thousands*.

(2) There are three series of numeral adjectives:—

(a) **Cardinal**, corresponding to the English series *one, two, three*, etc. ;

(b) **Ordinal**, corresponding to the English series *first, second, third*, etc. ;

(c) **Distributive**, denoting *one apiece, two apiece, three apiece*, etc.

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.

193. CARDINALS.—*Unus* is declined like *nullus* (§ 157). The declension of *duo* and *trēs* is given below.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs</i> or <i>duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i> or <i>tris</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i> or <i>duum</i>	<i>duārum</i> or <i>duum</i>	<i>duōrum</i> or <i>duum</i>	<i>trium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	

Like *duo* decline *ambō*, *both*.

194. The cardinals denoting **hundreds** from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of *bonus*, except that they usually have genitive plural in *-um*, not in *-ōrum* or *-ārum*; e.g. *ducentum*.

195. The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* 4 to 20, the **tens** up to 100, and *mille*, 1000, are indeclinable.

196. The substantive *mīlia* (*n.*) is declined in the plural only:—

<i>N. V. A.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

Obs. 1.—A declinable numeral qualifying *mīlia* must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on *mīlia* is put in the genitive; e.g. *tria mīlia equitum*, 3000 horsemen.

Obs. 2.—**Mille** is an indeclinable adjective ; therefore *a thousand horsemen* (nominative) is **mille equitēs**.

197. ORDINALS.—These are declined like **bonus** with the exception of **alter**, *second* (of two), for which see § 155.

198. ON COMPOUNDING NUMERALS.

21 to 99.—The smaller number follows the larger without **et** or precedes it with **et**; *e.g.* **vīgintī quinque** or **quinque et vīgintī**, just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty*.

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing **duodē**-, **undē**- respectively to it; see 28 and 29 in the table. (**Dē** is a preposition denoting *from*.) Such expressions as **vīgintī octo** and **octo et vīgintī** occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and **et** may be inserted (except in distributives); *e.g.* **duo milia** (et) **quingentī** (et) **quadrāgintā equitēs** or **equitum duo milia** (et) **quingentī** (et) **quadrāgintā**, 2540 *horsemen*.

Obs.—The substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from **milia** by numerals which do not qualify :

VOCABULARY 31.

ēgred-ior , 3 (cpd. of gradior),	adven-a , -ae, <i>m.</i> , <i>stranger</i>
<i>I disembark, land</i> (intrans.)	prin-ceps , -cipis, <i>m.</i> , <i>chieftain</i>

EXERCISE 31.

A. Translate into English :—

Aeneas Evandri regis auxilium petit.

Aeneas et Troiani, navibus Evandri regnum advenientes, Pallantem regis filium in fluminis ripa stantem vident; qui vero, “Iuvenes,” inquit, “quae causa vos cogit ignotas temptare vias? Utrum pacem huc fertis, an arma?” Tum Aeneas sic ab alta nave

fatur, "Nos quos Latini sine causa oderunt vides, quos illi bello crudeli lacesunt; patris tui auxilium petimus. Haec mea verba fer ad patrem, et dio Troianorum lectos duces venisse ut auxilium rogent." Cui respondit Pallas, "Quicumque es, e nave egredere," ait, "et parentem ipsum alloquere." Sic fatus, manum advenae tetendit, et viam ad urbem monstrare coepit; cui sic roganti sine mora pater Evander, Troianis benigne exceptis, auxilium promisit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quae causa fuit cur Aeneas regis auxilium rogaret?

Quomodo advenas in nave venientes regis filius excepit?

Quid Aeneas a rege petebat?

Cur Pallas rem ipse decernere noluit?

Pallasne advenam ad patrem duxit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Remember that to brave and good fathers brave and good sons are born. 2. I begin to be troublesome to my friends. 3. All men fear those whom they hate. 4. Two thousand horsemen were placed on the right wing of the Germans. 5. He spent forty years in the island of Britain. 6. Caesar gave the highest praise to the soldiers of the tenth legion. 7. Having waited a long while, after the third watch, he ordered the soldiers to advance. 8. He has given me twenty-two books, which he received from his father. 9. The holy man says that he was punished with thirty-nine stripes. 10. I hear that the consuls are distributing bread to three thousand citizens. 11. There were fourscore thousand foot-soldiers. 12. The boys ate twenty-five apples each. 13. Four men at a time ran 220 paces (*passus*): each carried a torch (§ 291). 14. Two thousand robbers were captured by a thousand soldiers. 15. How often ought we to pardon our enemies? Seventy-seven times.

LESSON 32.

Revision of pronouns ; correlative pronouns and adverbs.

Revise the pronouns in Lessons 23-5, 30, in connection with the following tables.

199.

CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

DEMON- STRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERRO- GATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
<i>hic, this</i> <i>iste, that</i> <i>(of yours)</i> <i>ille, that</i> <i>(yonder)</i> <i>is, that</i>	<i>quī, who</i> <i>quicumque,</i> <i>whoever</i> <i>quisquis,</i> <i>whoever</i>	<i>(quis, who?)</i> <i>quisnam,</i> <i>who,</i> <i>pray?</i>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> <i>(quisque,</i> <i>each</i> <i>quilibet, any</i> <i>you please</i> <i>quivis, any</i> <i>you will)</i> </div> <div> <i>quidam, a certain</i> <i>one</i> <i>aliquis (subst.) some</i> <i>one</i> <i>aliqui (adj.), some</i> <i>quisquam,</i> <i>any one</i> <i>ullus (adj.),</i> <i>any</i> <i>quis (adj. quī), any</i> </div> <div style="margin-left: 10px; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <i>with</i> <i>negative</i> </div> </div>
Referring to two objects only :—	<i>uter, which- ever of two</i>	<i>uter, which of two?</i>	<i>uterque, each</i> <i>uterlibet,</i> <i>which you</i> <i>please</i> <i>alteruter, the one or the other</i>
<i>tālis, such</i>	<i>quālis, as</i>	<i>quālis, of what kind?</i>	
<i>tantus, so great</i>	<i>quantus, (as great) as</i>	<i>quantus, how great?</i>	<i>quantusvis, as great as you will</i>
<i>tot, so many</i>	<i>quot, (as many) as</i>	<i>quot, how many?</i>	<i>aliquot, several</i>

200.

CORRELATIVE ADVERBS.

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
<i>Place where.</i> hic , <i>here</i> illic , <i>ibi</i> , <i>there</i>	ubi , <i>where</i> ubicumque , <i>wherever</i>	ubi , <i>where ?</i> ubinam , <i>where,</i> <i>pray ?</i>	ubique , <i>everywhere</i> alicubi , <i>somewhere</i>
<i>Place whither.</i> huc , <i>hither</i> illuc , <i>eo</i> , <i>thither</i>	quod , <i>whither</i> quocumque , quod- quod , <i>whitherso-</i> <i>ever</i>	quod , <i>whither ?</i> quonam , <i>whither,</i> <i>pray ?</i>	utroque , <i>to both places</i> quolibet , <i>whither you</i> <i>please</i> aliquod , <i>to some place</i>
<i>Place whence.</i> hinc , <i>hence</i> illinc , <i>inde</i> , <i>thence</i>	unde , <i>whence</i>	unde , <i>whence ?</i>	undique , <i>from all</i> <i>sides</i> utrimque , <i>from both</i> <i>sides</i>
<i>Way.</i> hac , <i>this way</i> illa , <i>ea</i> , <i>that way</i>	qua , <i>which way</i> quacumque , <i>whichever way</i>	qua , <i>which way ?</i>	aliqua , <i>some way</i>
<i>Time.</i> tum , <i>tunc</i> , <i>then</i>	quandoque , <i>whenever</i>	quando , <i>when ?</i>	aliquando , <i>at some</i> <i>time</i>
<i>Degree, etc.</i> tam , <i>so</i> toties , <i>so often</i>	quam , <i>as, than</i> quoties , <i>as often</i> <i>as</i>	quam , <i>how !</i> quoties , <i>how</i> <i>often ?</i>	quamvis , <i>however</i>

201. After *num* in both direct and indirect questions, the adverbs used for *to some (any) place, some (any) way (or somewhere), at some (any) time*, are not *aliquō, aliquā, aliquandō*, but *quō, quā, quandō*.

num quādo equum vidisti? *have you ever seen a horse?*

VOCABULARY 32.

dēfer-or, I drift down, am carried down **expōn-δ**, 3, I disembark, land (trans.) (See Voc. 31)

EXERCISE 32.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar in Britanniam navigat.

Caesar, his rebus gestis, legatum suum in Gallia cum tribus legionibus et duobus milibus equitum reliquit ; voluit enim scire quae Galli, se absente, facturi essent. Tum ipse aestu ita delatus est ut cursum non teneret ; sed tandem ad Britanniam cum omnibus navibus pervenit et ibi milites exposuit. Inde omnes Britanni, conspectu tot navium perterriti—nam omnino erant octingentae—in agros discesserunt. Tum Caesar, decem cohortibus ad mare relictis, in hostes contendit. Hi in silvas se abdiderant neque usquam conspici poterant : sed milites legionis septimae, silvas inire iussi, ubicumque Britannos invenerant, illinc in agros apertos egerunt.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Caesar legatum suum cum exercitu reliquit ?

Quare naves Caesaris cursum non tenebant ?

Cur Britanni Caesaris adventu in silvas sese abdiderunt ?

Quot milites Caesar in litore reliquit ?

Quid milites legionis septimae facere iussi sunt ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The first and second legions were posted on the bank of the river Rhine. 2. Whence have you come ? Whither are you going ? Do not fear to tell me everything. 3. As often as I saw him, I used to think him the most fortunate of men. 4. I prefer to bear my own burdens, however heavy. 5. How can I make him the leader of so many thousands ? 6. On both sides the contest was very keenly waged ; neither army left the field before night. 7. Nowhere are the fields so well cultivated as in Gaul. 8. It is acknowledged everywhere that he has gathered troops from all quarters. 9. You will at some time understand how great your mistake has been. 10. Where in the world do you hope to find such a friend ? 11. When shall I receive a letter ? Who will bring it to me ? 12. Why are you not angry with (use *dat.*) one who has written such things against you ? 13. Then all the bravest (§ 189) of the senators drew their swords and surrounded the consuls. 14. I do not read my books to anyone ; nor do I speak about them everywhere, or in presence of (*coram* and *abl.*) everybody.

LESSON 33.

Distributive and adverbial numerals ; expressions of space and time.

Learn the distributive and adverbial numerals in thick type (§ 191), and the principal parts of verbs from **dō** to **secō** (§ 354). From this lesson onwards the verbs both in thick and in thin type are to be learned.

EXPRESSIONS OF SPACE AND TIME.

202. The accusative case is used to express—

(1) **Extent of space.**

haec mensa trēs pedēs lāta *this table is three feet wide*
est

(2) The time throughout which an action or state extends.

Tiberius trēs et vīgintī annōs *Tiberius was Emperor for*
princeps erat *twenty-three years*

203. The ablative case is used to express—

(1) The time when an action is performed.

vēre herbae virescunt *in spring the grass becomes*
green

(2) The time within which an action is performed.

Agamemnōn vix decem annis *in ten years Agamemnon*
urbem ūnam cōpit *barely took one city*

VOCABULARY 33.

abscid-ō, 3 (cpd. of caedō), I cut off	foss-a, -ae, f., ditch
ēmin-eō, 2, I stand out	mūniti-ō, -ōnis, f., siege-work
prohib-eō, 2, I stop, hinder	perfug-a, -ae, m., deserter
digit-us, -ī, m., finger	stīp-es, -itis, m., post
	turr-is, -is, f., tower
	vall-um, -ī, n., rampart

EXERCISE 33.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesaris munitiones.

Caesar hoc genus munitionis instituit. Fossa pedes viginti lata ducta, omnes reliquas munitiones ab ea pedes quadringentos reduxit. Hoc spatio intermisso, duas fossas quindecim pedes latas perduxit, quarum interiorum aqua complevit. Post eas, aggerem et vallum duodecim pedes altum extruxit, et turribus quae pedes octoginta inter se distabant totum opus circumdedit. Voluit autem Gallos ex urbe erumpentes, a munitionibus prohibere: quare ramos arborum abscisos in fossas quinos pedes altas demisit: ante hos stipites acuti in scrobes demissi sunt, ita ut quattuor digitos ex terra emerent.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quot pedes distabat fossa prima a reliquis munitionibus?

Quam fossam aqua Caesar complevit?

Quomodo Galli erumpentes prohibiti sunt?

Quantum e terra eminebant stipites?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. O thrice and four times happy those who have died nobly for their country! 2. The boys carried eight denarii apiece to the master. 3. I have lived so many years, that I have become very feeble. 4. How many times have I told you, that my work was harder than yours? 5. The soldiers of the fifteenth legion pitched their camp four miles from the river Rhône. 6. "Let us set out," said he, "from Italy to Britain." 7. Is life pleasanter in the spring or in the summer? 8. Caesar ordered the soldiers to build a bridge two hundred feet long across the river. 9. How many miles do you think this city is distant from the sea? 10. Do not surround the town with walls so low that they can stop no enemy.

LESSON 34.

The gerundive.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from *sonō* to *lūgeo* (§§ 354, E-355, c).

204. THE GERUNDIVE.

ACTIVE VERBS.		DEPONENT VERBS.	
CONJU- GATION.	<i>fit to be—</i>		<i>fit to be—</i>
I.	am-and-us, -a, -um <i>loved</i>	hort-and-us, -a, -um <i>urged</i>	
II.	mon-end-us, -a, -um <i>advised</i>	ver-end-us, -a, -um <i>feared</i>	
III a.	reg-end-us, -a, -um <i>ruled</i>	loqu-end-us, -a, -um <i>spoken</i>	
III b.	capi-end-us, -a, -um <i>taken</i>		
IV.	aud-iend-us, -a, -um <i>heard</i>	part-iend-us, -a, -um <i>divided</i>	

205. The gerundive is an adjective (declined like *bonus*) formed from transitive verbs, including deponents, and denotes that the person or thing is *fit* to be, or must be, the object of the verbal action; e.g. *amandus*, *lovable*, *partiendus*, *fit to be divided*, *arandus*, *arable*.

rex est honōrandus	<i>the king must be honoured</i>
vōta vix numeranda facit	<i>he makes vows that are hardly to be numbered</i>

Obs.—In the case of intransitive verbs, i.e. verbs which do not govern an accusative case, and consequently have no gerundive, the gerund (§ 86) may be used. Note the different constructions to be employed in translating into Latin the following:—

parentēs sunt honōrandi (transitive)	<i>parents should be honoured</i>
parentibus est obtemperandum (intransitive)	<i>parents must be obeyed</i> (lit. <i>there is a duty of giving way to parents</i>)

206. As neither the accusative nor the dative gerund ever governs a direct object, its place is supplied by a noun qualified by the gerundive.

The substantive which would be the object of the gerund is put into the case in which the gerund would be, and the gerundive is made to agree with that substantive; thus instead of translating

I devote myself to writing books
 by **studeō scribendō librōs,**
 we have **studeō librīs scribendis**
 (literally, *I devote myself to books to-be-written.*)

Other examples are:—

equitēs ad urbem oppugnan- dam parātī erant	<i>the cavalry were ready for</i> <i>assaulting the city</i>
sunt nonnulli acuendis puer- ōrum ingeniis nōn inūtilēs lūsūs	<i>there are some games not un-</i> <i>serviceable for sharpening</i> <i>boys' wits</i>

207. This gerundive construction is usually substituted for an ablative gerund with a direct object and often for a genitive gerund with a direct object.

tōtum diem in fābulis nar- randis consūmēs	<i>you will spend the whole day</i> <i>in telling tales</i>
hic vēni filiae expectandae causā (or grātiā) or filiam expectandīcausā (or grātiā)	<i>I came hither for the sake of</i> <i>awaiting (to await) my</i> <i>daughter</i>

NOTE.—The gerundive is not much used in the genitive plural with a substantive of the first or second declension; e.g. **causā librōs legendī** (rather than **causā librōrum legendōrum**), *for the sake of reading books.*

208. From the above examples it will be seen that the gerundive construction may be used to express purpose either (a) in the genitive with **causā** or **grātiā**, or (b) in the accusative preceded by the preposition **ad**.

VOCABULARY 34.

ēduc-ō, 1, I bring up, rear	lūdibri-um, -i, n., mockery
expōn-ō, 3, I expose, cast forth	moeni-a, -um, n.pl., walls, fortifications
interfic-ō, 3, I kill	multitūd-ō, -inis, f., crowd
av-is, -is, f., bird	past-or, -ōris, m., shepherd
cupid-ō, -inis, f., desire	volunt-ās, -ātis, f., will, desire

EXERCISE 34.

A. Translate into English :—

Roma conditur.

Olim Romulum et Remum cupido cepit urbis in eis locis condendae ubi expositi atque educati erant. Multitudinem igitur Albanorum et Latinorum ad urbem novam condendam duxerunt ; deinde ortum est certamen, uter urbi novae nomen daturus esset ; neuter enim cedere voluit. Itaque causa deorum voluntatem quaerendi, alter in Aventinum, alter in Palatinum montem, discessit ; sciebat enim uterque deorum voluntati parendum esse. Tum Remo caelum observanti sex, Romulo duodecim, aves apparuerunt ; huic numerus maior, illi tempus prius erat. Tum Romulus, “Ego,” inquit, “qui aves plures vidi, rex sum salutandus ; a te, Reme, mihi cedendum est.” Postea curavit Romulus muros exstruendos : quos Remus per ludibrium transiluit atque ab irato Romulo interfectus est.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Unde ad urbem Romulus et Remus multitudinem duxerunt ?

Quomodo voluntatem deorum fratres quaesiverunt ?

Quot aves ad voluntatem deorum monstrandam ad fratres missae sunt ?

Quare inter fratres ortum est certamen ?

Quomodo Remus fratris muros spernit ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Fifteen men were chosen by the people to assign lands to the poorer citizens. 2. He has been made dictator for the purpose of reforming the morals of the citizens. 3. We must work diligently. 4. There will never be any despairing, under the leadership of Teucer (lit. Teucer being leader). 5. In the winter we must rest, but in the spring time the fields must be ploughed. 6. Cato was wont to say to the senators that Carthage must be destroyed. 7. An embassy was sent by the Rhodians to seek for peace. 8. When the hope of capturing the town had been taken away, he led his forces back to Rome. 9. We must do everything for the sake of bringing up our children well. 10. He was a man (use *talis*) rather to be feared than loved.

LESSON 35.

Final clauses.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from *ardeō* to *strīdeō* (§ 355, C-F).

FINAL CLAUSES.

209. A final clause is one that expresses the purpose (*finis, end*) of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive. Final clauses are usually introduced by *ut, in order that, nē, lest (in order that . . . not)*. The tense of the subjunctive is the present in primary sequence, and the imperfect in historic sequence.

<i>equitēs misit ut hostēs sequerentur</i>	<i>he sent horsemen (in order) that they might follow the enemy</i>
<i>abibō, nē eum videam</i>	<i>I shall go away, that I may not see him</i>

NOTE.—*Ut nōn* is used in *consecutive* (§§ 159-162), but *nē* in *final* clauses, which are negative.

210. *Ut* with a final subjunctive is very frequently rendered by the English infinitive with *to*; thus the first example may be translated, *he sent horsemen to pursue the enemy*.

211. It will be noted that the final cause denoting purpose is the equivalent of some adverbial phrases, namely, *ad* with the accusative gerund (§ 87) or gerundive (§ 208), and *causā* with the genitive of gerund (§ 88) or gerundive (§ 208).

Caesar Rōmam contendit ad
auxilia comparanda

*Caesar hastened to Rome to
collect reinforcements*

Caesar Rōmam contendit ut
auxilia comparāret

hūc vēnī { ut filiam expectārem
filiae expectandae causā (gratiā) } *I came here to
wait for my
daughter*
{ filiam expectandī causā (gratiā) }

VOCABULARY 35.

dēcip-iō (cpd. of capiō), 3, *I*
deceive

discrim-en, -inis, *n.*, *danger*
fūnest-us, -a, -um, *ill-omened*

referō, irr. (cpd. of ferō),
I make mention of

terg-um, -ī, *n.*, *back*

simul-ō, 1, *I feign, pretend*

frustrā, *adv.*, *in vain*

clād-ēs, -is, *f.*, *disaster*

plērumque, *adv.*, *generally*

praecipuū, *adv.*, *especially*

EXERCISE 35.

A. Translate into English :—

Crassus a Parthis vincitur.

Pugnant Parthi aut procurrentibus equis, aut terga dantibus : saepe etiam fugam simulant ut incautos insequentes inveniant. Plerumque in ipso ardore certaminis proelia deserunt, ut hostem decipiant, et post fugam pugnam iterum repetant, nec quisquam soit unde rursus impetum facturi sint.

Crassum vero ad bellum Parthicum gerendum proficiscentem multi admonebant, ne hostem barbarum contemneret. Sed frustra ; nolebat enim cognoscere quomodo pugnare hostes solerent. Itaque ille dies quo Romani, imperatore ipso interfecto, cladem gravissimam omnium de quibus legimus acceperunt, semper fuit funestus. Ne memoria tantae cladis e mentibus civium excideret, multa de Crasso et Parthis poetarum carmina referebant.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo Parthi pugnare solebant ?

Quo tempore maxime sunt Parthi metuendi ?

Cur Crassus se Parthos facile superaturum putabat ?

Cur cladem tantam Romani acceperunt ?

Num clades Romana umquam e civium memoria excidit ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. I told him this in order that he might stay with the army. 2. He asks where his father has left the money ; he says that he will not return without it. 3. He is so foolish that he will not be able to find anything. 4. The citizens will order him to leave the city lest they be compelled to restore the money. 5. He hopes to find a friendly citizen. 6. All who knew his father speak to him in order that he may search diligently. 7. He will do this to return home quickly. 8. We must always join battle, that the enemy may not turn their backs. 9. I did not trouble whether many Parthians had been captured, for I knew that the leader had been killed. 10. Whatever a wise man advises, that is to be desired. 11. Caesar seems to have praised Crassus' son in order to please Crassus. 12. It is said that Crassus was the richest man of those times. 13. They embark on ships for the sake of visiting other lands and learning new manners. 14. The Romans ought to have feared the arrows of the swiftly-fleeing Parthians. 15. He left 500 men to guard the bridge.

LESSON 36.

Final clauses (continued).

Learn the principal parts of verbs from **canō** to **refello** (§ 356, A).

FINAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

212. The difference between the **final** and the **consecutive** clause is made very clear when a negative is used. Negative consequence is expressed by **ut nōn** and subjunctive; negative purpose by **nē** and subjunctive. The following rule is therefore most important:—

<i>that nobody</i>	in a final clause must be translated by	nē quis
<i>that nothing</i>	„ „ „ „	nē quid
<i>that no</i>	„ „ „ „	nē ullus
<i>that never</i>	„ „ „ „	nē umquam

but in a consecutive clause must be translated by **ut nēmō**, **ut nihil**, **ut nullus**, **ut numquam**, respectively.

Contrast the following:—

mūri tam alti sunt ut nēmō	<i>the walls are so high that no</i>
scandere possit	<i>one can climb over them</i>
mūri in tantam altitudinem	<i>the walls have been built so</i>
sunt exstructi ne quis scan-	<i>high that none may climb</i>
dere possit	<i>over them</i>

VERBS OF FEARING.

213. Verbs of **fearing** are followed by a **final** clause introduced by **nē** (*that* or *lest*) and **ut** or **nē nōn** (*that . . . not*). The construction after verbs of **fearing** thus differs entirely from that after verbs of **hoping**.

vereor nē veniās

I fear that you will come

spērō tē ventūrum esse

I hope that you will come

Obs.—Originally the verbs of the *nē* and *ut* clauses were independent **jussive** subjunctives (§ 125). Vereor nē veniās = *I am afraid—don't come.* Vereor ut (utinam) veniās = *I am afraid—O that you would come!*

VOCABULARY 36.

arbitr-or, 1, *I consider*laetiti-a, -ae, *f.*, *joy*poenās sūmō, 3, *I punish* (lit.
take penalties)longinqu-us, -a, -um, *distant*sal-ūs, -ūtis, *f.*, *safety*vān-us, -a, -um, *empty*

EXERCISE 36.

A. Translate into English :—

Epistula post Caesaris mortem scripta.

(Adapted from a letter of Cicero.)

Vereor ne Caesaris mors nobis nihil dederit praeter vanam laetitiam. Tam potens ubique Antonius est ut bonis civibus nulla salus usquam esse possit. Hoc tibi scribo ne forte putes me Antonio favere; rem publicam enim omnem in manus suas sumpsit,¹ ne quis ab eo poenas debitas sumat. Quare arbitror amicis rei publicae ex Italia cedendum esse. Rhodum vel ad aliam insulam longinquam migrandum est: metuo tamen vehementer ne nusquam odium eius hominis nefarii vitare possimus. Octavius¹ vero mihi multa beneficia dedit, sed vereor ne ipse Antonio similis sit; nunc tamen spero eum auctoritati senatus parere velle.

Nihil amplius habeo in hac epistola scribendum, sed haec scripsi ne queraris me te neglexisse: utinam tu quoque diligentiam eandem scribendi quam ego, semper adhibeas!

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid putabat Cicero de Antonio?

Cur in exilium ire Cicero vult?

Num Cicero timebat ne senatus auctoritas numquam restitueretur?

Quare Cicero epistolam ad amicum mittere vult?

Quare epistolas ad amicos absentes mittimus?

¹ Afterwards the Emperor Augustus.

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. I will take care that no one shall say that I am not industrious.
2. I was not afraid of his seeing me ; I hoped that he would see me.
3. The work was done so well that nothing had to be altered.
4. I will do the work carefully, that nothing may have to be altered
5. He is afraid that you will not endure the cold of winter.
6. Are you afraid to trust the words of your friend?
7. This one thing we feared, lest we should do anything disgraceful, or bring dishonour on our parents.
8. Do not fear that I am not going to spare the life of a brave enemy.
9. I fear that you are acting unjustly towards the weak and wretched.
10. There was a great danger lest Antony should take into his hands all the power of the magistrates.
11. They beg him to pardon them, lest they should be punished for their treachery
12. He orders Volusenus to visit as many states as possible.
13. The general was weakened (*say* worn out) with many severe wounds, so that he could not keep his feet (*say* hold himself up).
14. Do not tell me that this war will be quickly finished.
15. They were afraid lest the tenth cohort would fall into the ambush.

LESSON 37.

Dependent command ; semi-dependence.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from **pellō** to **fundō** (§ 356, A-B).

DEPENDENT COMMAND.

214. A command mentioned or reported forms a final clause in Latin. Such commands are those dependent on all verbs of *commanding, advising, etc.*, except **iubeō** (*I command*) and **vetō** (*I forbid*), which take the infinitive (§ 81).

**Hannibal equitibus imperāvit
ut Rōmānōrum agmen ador-
irentur (or equitēs . . .
adoriri iussit)**

*Hannibal ordered his cavalry
to attack the Roman column*

**moneō vōs nē tantum scelus
committātis**

*I warn you not to commit so
great a crime*

Obs.—When verbs of *commanding, advising, persuading, etc.*, are used to introduce **statements**, not commands, they take the accusative and infinitive construction. Compare

mē monēbant finem adesse

*they warned me that the end
was near*

and

mē monēbant nē hōc facerem

they warned me not to do this

SEMI-DEPENDENCE.

215. Sometimes the connecting **ut** or **nē** is omitted, but the subjunctive may still be regarded as final.

cavē abeās (i.e. cavē nē abeās)

beware of going away

**Caesar rogat finem ōrandi
faciat**

*Caesar asks him to make an
end of speaking*

cūrā sis diligens

be sure you are diligent

PRONOUNS IN SIMPLE DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

216. *Sē* or *suus* in a dependent question or final clause (whether dependent command or not) usually refers to the subject of the principal sentence.

<i>rogāvit Caesarem cūr sibi nōn parceret</i>	<i>he asked Caesar why he did not spare him (i.e. the speaker)</i>
---	--

<i>orāvit Caesarem ut sibi parceret</i>	<i>he asked Caesar to spare him</i>
---	-------------------------------------

VOCABULARY 37.

<i>abduc-ō, 3, I lead away</i>	<i>trād-ō, 3, I hand over</i>
<i>constitu-ō, 3, I settle, appoint</i>	
<i>festin-ō, 1, I hasten</i>	<i>sēditi-ō, -ōnis, f., riot, sedition</i>

EXERCISE 37.

A. Translate into English :—

Verginius.

Verginius, civis Romanus, unam filiam habuit, quam maxime amavit. Tum rei publicae praeerant decem viri, quorum unus, Appius Claudius, hanc virginem a patre abducere cupiit; sed Verginius, ne filiae hoc malum accideret, maluit sua manu eam interficere quam in manus Appii, hominis pessimi, tradere. Tum filia interfecta, ad castra, ubi tum erant Romani, festinavit, gladium adhuc strictum in manibus tenens atque cruore respersus, ita ut oculos et mentes omnium ad se converteret. Iubent eum rem omnem narrare; flens diu vocem non misit, sed tandem omnia, quae gesserat, exponere potuit. Manus tendens, milites orabat, ne sibi scelus Appii Claudii attribuerent neu sese filiae parricidam putarent. Appius, veritus ne damnaretur, se ante diem constitutam interfecit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Verginius filiam interfecerat?

Nonne milites conspectu Verginii ad iram moti sunt?

Qualis erat aspectus Verginii in castra venientis?

Quid Verginius milites orabat?

Quid fecit Verginius ne quis postea Appium imitaretur?

Quomodo Appius effecit ne poenas sceleris daret?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar ordered his soldiers not to hurl back missiles at the enemy. 2. They begged that he would spare their wives and children. 3. They warned us that the road was very difficult. 4. He persuaded us that the time was fit for besieging the city. 5. The senate decreed that the highest honours should be given to the general. 6. Do not forbid the tribunes to help the wretched citizens. 7. He urged the allies to renew the war against the Romans. 8. Always be on your guard (*cave*) against thinking that you know everything. 9. Be sure to write how many books you have found there. 10. The goddess answered that they must defend themselves with ships, rather than with walls. 11. The Athenians begged and besought Themistocles to be their leader. 12. Trebonius had been ordered not to besiege the town. 13. The general forbade anyone to sell bread, or any other food, in the camp. 14. So fierce was the crowd that his slaves could not help Claudius. 15. Claudius ordered his slaves to seize and bring to him the maiden, Verginia.

LESSON 38.

Relative clauses expressing consequence and purpose.

Learn principal parts of verbs from **carpō** to **plangō** (§ 356, c).

Quī WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

217. Quī, with the subjunctive, may express a consequence (*so that . . .*); it will then be often rendered in English by *so as to*, *of such a kind as to . . .*, with the infinitive, or by the simple infinitive.

erant quī putārent hōc esse vērū	there were some who believed this to be true
dignus est quī amētur	he is worthy of being loved (lit. that he should be loved)
nōn is sum quī hōc faciam	I am not the man to do this

218. Quī, with the subjunctive, may also express purpose (*in order that . . .*). This final clause is always rendered by an infinitive in English.

lēgātōs misit quī pācem petērent	he sent ambassadors to seek for peace (lit. who should seek for peace)
-------------------------------------	--

Contrast

lēgātōs misit qui pācem peti- ērunt	he sent ambassadors, and they sought peace
--	---

219. The relative adverbs **ubi**, *where*, **unde**, *whence*, **cūr** (= **quā rē**), *why*, may similarly be used with the subjunctive to denote consequence or purpose.

nulla causa est cūr irascāris (consequence)	there is no reason for you to be angry (lit. such that you should be angry)
in Graeciam ivit ubi viveret (purpose)	he went to Greece to live there
pecūniam misit unde (= ē quā) librōs emerem (pur- pose)	he sent me money to buy books with (whence I might buy books)

VOCABULARY 38.

erip-iō (cpd. of rapiō), 3, <i>I snatch away</i>	odi-um, -i, n., hatred societ-ās, -ātis, f., companion- ship
minimē, very little, by no means	volupt-ās, -ātis, f., pleasure

EXERCISE 38.

A. Translate into English :—

Omnes amicos habere volunt.

Timon Atheniensis talis erat qui hominum societatem odisset atque fugeret. Sed etiam illi aliquis erat quaerendus, apud quem odium omne effunderet. Nonne talis vita minime iucunda erit? quis enim tam durus est cui solitudo non omnem voluptatem auferat? Semper eos nobiscum habere cupiemus, quibus nonnumquam loquamur. Pauci vero sunt qui soli vivere velint: nec hi sunt digni qui beate vivant. Cetera vero, quae quibusdam admirabilia videntur, multi sunt qui contemnant: nemo contra est, me iudice, qui omnino amicos spernat. Itaque ut naturae parere possimus, verba sapientis amici diligenter audiamus.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid de Timone scis?

Qualis vita minime iucunda esse dicitur?

Nonne omnes de amicitia consentiunt?

Quare verba sapientis amici audire debemus?

Qualis est vita quam homines agere natura iubet?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Do not take away (something) from one to give it to another.
2. The king of the Persians gave a city to the Greek, to supply him with bread.
3. There will be no one to close my eyes with gentle hands.
4. He that has nothing to eat is very wretched.
5. In this great abundance of food I don't know what to eat.
6. There have been many who, seeking for peace and quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public affairs.
7. Many are they who do not believe us.
8. You are not the man to undertake this work.
9. I have nothing to write to you, so do not expect a letter.
10. The old man plants trees that his children may sit under their shade.

LESSON 39.

Quō and quōminus in final clauses.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from **compungō** to **ēvādō** (§ 356, c).

Quō AND Quōminus.

220. **Quō** (properly ablative singular neuter of **quī**, *who*) is used with the subjunctive as a final conjunction, chiefly when the clause introduced by it contains a comparative adjective or adverb.

Pompeius, quō facilius impetum Caesaris tardet (tardāret), portās claudit (clausit)	<i>the more easily to impede</i> <i>Caesar's attack, Pompeius</i> <i>bars (barred) the gates</i>
--	--

Obs.—**Quō** is equivalent to **ut eō**, *that so, that to this extent*.

221. After affirmative verbs of *hindering* or *preventing* the final dependent clause (generally translated by the English verbal noun in *-ing* preceded by the preposition *from*) is introduced by **quōminus**.

nāvēs ventō tenentur (ten- ēbantur) quōminus in por- tum venire possint (pos- sent)	<i>the ships are (were) being hin-</i> <i>dered by the wind from being</i> <i>able to reach the harbour</i>
--	---

Obs. 1.—**Quōminus** is equivalent to **ut eō minus**, just as above (§ 220) **quō facilius** is equivalent to **ut eō facilius**.

Obs. 2.—In all these dependent sentences the rule of the sequence of tenses is to be observed.

222. **Nōn recūsō** (*I do not refuse*) is constructed sometimes with the infinitive (like **nōlō**), sometimes with **quōminus** and the subjunctive. Compare the following:—

nōn recūsō quōminus hōc patiar nōn recūsō hōc pati	<i>I do not protest against suffering</i> <i>this</i> <i>I do not object (i.e. I am willing)</i> <i>to suffer this</i>
---	---

VOCABULARY 39.

dol-eō, 2, <i>I grieve</i>	ferr-um, -ī, <i>n., sword (lit. iron)</i>
imped-iō, 4, <i>I hinder (with acc.)</i>	immortāl-is, -e, <i>immortal</i>
memor-ō, 1, <i>I relate, mention</i>	invit-us, -a, -um, <i>unwilling</i>
obst-ō, 1 (cpd. of stō), <i>I prevent (with dat.)</i>	interdum, <i>sometimes</i>

EXERCISE 39.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar Helvetiis responsum dat.

Caesar Helvetiis hoc responsum dat : “Solent dei immortales, quo gravius doleant homines, eis quos ob scelera punire velint, res prosperas interdum dare. Quare cavete ne iter per Galliam me invito facere conemini : prohibebo enim quominus agros amicorum populi Romani ferro et igni vastetis. Unum hoc vobis prodest, ut in vestros fines statim revertamini. Utrum pacem an bellum vobis cum populo Romano melius esse existimatis? Non sum is qui ab opere incepto deterrear : spero igitur vos mihi obsides daturos esse.” Hoc responso dato, Helvetii, quo longius sibi deliberandi tempus esset, se post tres dies eodem redituros esse promiserunt.

B Oral Exercise :—

Quid malis dei dant, quo gravius doleant?

Quid Caesar Helvetios facere vetat?

Quid fecit ne Helvetii per Galliam iter facerent?

Cur Helvetii responderunt se post tres dies redituros esse?

Utrum pacem an bellum Helvetii habere maluerunt?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. These wicked speeches frightened the multitude from bringing in the corn which was due. 2. Age does not hinder the farmer from ploughing his fields. 3. It was your fault that I did not finish my work. 4. Death will prevent the wise man from benefiting the State. 5. A law ought to be short, that it may the more easily be understood by the foolish. 6. This stands in the way of your being happy. 7. Regulus, when asked in the senate, said that he was prevented from giving his opinion. 8. I shall oppose always and everywhere this thing's being done. 9. The more he talked, the less willing were we to obey. 10. I doubt whether I ought to accept this reward.

LESSON 40.

The uses of quīn.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from **figō** to **suescō** (§ 365, c, d).

Quīn IN FINAL CLAUSES.

223. After **negative** or **interrogative** verbs of *hindering* or *preventing*, the final dependent clause is introduced by **quīn** (= **quī nōn**, **quī** being an old ablative form), and the sentence is really an indirect question.

retinēre mē nōn potest (po- tuit) quīn abeam (abirem)	<i>he can (could) not prevent me from going away</i>
num recūsābō quīn hōc patiar? or num recūsābō hōc patī?	<i>shall I refuse to suffer this?</i>

Quīn IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

224. After **negative** or **interrogative** verbs of *doubting* and *denying* **quīn** (= *how not*, § 223) is used with the subjunctive.

negārīnōn potest quīn Caesar dux clārissimus fuerit	<i>it cannot be denied that Caesar was a very celebrated general</i>
quis dubitāvit quīn Cicerō cīvēs servāret?	<i>who doubted that Cicero saved the citizens? (i.e. no one doubt- ed . . .)</i>

225. **Quīn** is used with the subjunctive in consecutive clauses after a **negative** or **interrogative verb** to mean *who . . . not*. In this case **quīn** is simply the nominative relative pronoun **quī** + **nōn** (cp. § 217).

nēmō est quīn putet tē esse dēmentem	<i>everybody thinks you mad (lit. there is nobody of such a sort that he does not think you mad)</i>
---	--

IDIOMATIC PHRASES WITH QUIN.

nōn est dubium quin hōc ita sit	there is no doubt that this is so
minimum (or haud multum) abest quin rēs publica sit perdita	the State is not far from ruin

N.B.—*Abest* is always *impersonal* in this construction.

VOCABULARY 40.

abic-iō (cpd. of iaciō), 3, I throw away	ignāvi-a, -ae, f., cowardice
consul-ō, 3 (with dative), I consult the interests of	monument-um, -ī, n., memorial
	perenn-is, -e, lasting
	intus, adv., within

EXERCISE 40.

A. Translate into English :—

Horatii poetae fuga.

Maiores nostri nihil praetermittebant quin patriae consulerent. Quid igitur de Horatio poeta putemus ; qui scutum abiecit quo celerius a proelio fugeret, neque retineri potuit quin se in salutem conferret ? “Haud multum abest,” fortasse inquit, “quin interficiar : omnino hostes impediunt quominus vitam servem : nec recuso quin mortem patiar, sed aliquid intus sentio quod me ad vivendum impellit.” Scripsit postea se a deo Mercurio per hostes sublatum esse. Nemo est quin intelligat poetam ignaviam suam tum risisse, nec vero talis erat qui pro patria mori nollet. Poetae famam potius quam viri fortis sibi adeptus est ; quis enim dubitat quin sibi monumentum aere perennius carminibus exstruxerit ?

B. Oral Exercise :—

- Cur a civibus patriae consulendum est ?
- Quid fecit Horatius poeta in media pugna ?
- Quare Horatius vitam servare cupiit ?
- Num putemus poetam re vera ignavum fuisse ?
- Utrum milites an poetae magis civibus prosunt ?
- Quomodo Horatius famam sibi adeptus est ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. What reason is there why you should not defend the freedom of the citizens? 2. To arrive there the sooner, you must not hesitate to ride on horseback. 3. Do not hinder us from asking him what has happened. 4. I see that this must be so, but I cannot refrain from shedding tears. 5. Can we help sending messengers to inform the general of our victory? 6. I was very near making a mistake, but I will leave nothing undone to help you. 7. Everybody believed that the end of the world was at hand. 8. Was the poet hindered from casting away his shield in the battle? 9. Consult the interests of the fatherland; do not refuse to die for the citizens. 10. Who is there that does not wish to write poems? 11. There is no doubt that I made a mistake, and ought to have remained. 12. Why do you not punish yourself in the same way as you punish others? 13. Whom should I have left to rule the province? 14. In the camp there was not one of the soldiers who was not wounded. 15. Who is so foolish as to be moved by such a speech?

LESSON 41.

Conditional sentences.

Learn the principal parts of verbs from **alō** to **constituō** (§ 356, E, F).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

226. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence. The subordinate or dependent clause, generally introduced by **sī**, *if* (or **nisi**, *unless*, **sī . . . nōn**, *if . . . not*), is called the **protasis** and states the conditions laid down or **proposed**; the principal clause is called the **apodosis** and states the conclusion to be **drawn from** these conditions. The apodosis may be either a statement, a question, or a command.

Protasis.	Apodosis.
<i>if it rains</i>	<i>{ we shall not play</i> <i>{ will you play ?</i> <i>{ do not play</i>
si pluet	<i>{ nōn lūdēmus</i> <i>{ lūdētisne ?</i> <i>{ nōlite lūdere</i>

NOTE 1.—For the indefinite pronouns and adverbs used in conditional sentences see § 179, *Obs.* 2, § 201.

NOTE 2.—**Sī** cannot be used as the equivalent of **utrum**, **num**, although the English *if* is often the equivalent of the interrogative *whether*. *Whether . . . or* in alternative conditional sentences is translated by Latin **sive . . . sive**, **seu . . . seu**.

227. Conditional sentences are of **three main types**.

(A) Those which relate to conditions in **present** and **past** time but **do not imply** the **fulfilment** or **non-fulfilment** of those conditions. The verb in both **protasis** and **apodosis** is in the **indicative mood**.

sī Daedalus in æere volāvit,
primus æeriam mächinam
fēcīt

if Daedalus flew in the air, he
was the first man to make a
flying machine

sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn
tē movent, nihil umquam
movēbit

if so many illustrations of
bravery do not move you (and
I do not know whether they
do or no), nothing ever will

nisi mē frustrantur oculi,
māter tua coniuxque et
liberi adsunt

unless my eyes deceive me (and
I do not hint whether they
do or no), your mother and
wife and children are here.

Obs.—Whether Daedalus flew or not is left quite uncertain by the writer. The enunciations of geometrical propositions are often stated in this form: e.g. *if two sides of a triangle are equal, two angles are also equal*. The sides may not be actually equal, but if we suppose they are, the conclusion follows.

228. (B) Those which relate to conditions in future time but do not imply either the fulfilment or non-fulfilment of those conditions. The conclusion is mentioned as being either (a) probable or (b) possible.

(a) Probable. The verb of the apodosis is in the future indicative; that of the protasis is either in the future or in the future-perfect indicative. The future indicative is used in the protasis if the two actions are represented as going on at the same time, the future-perfect if the one ends before the other begins. In English the present is usually found in the protasis.

sī Daedalus æeriam mächinam
fēcērit, Icarus volābit

if Daedalus makes a flying
machine, Icarus will fly

sī iste unus tollētur, metū et
curā relevābimur

if that one man is got rid of, we
shall be freed from fear and
anxiety

seu mē seu Gaium appellā-
veris, ego veniam

whether you call me or Gaius, I
will come

(b) Possible. The verb in both protasis and apodosis is in the present subjunctive.

sī Daedalus æeriam mächinam
faciat, Icarus volāre velit

if Daedalus were to make a fly-
ing machine, Icarus would
want to fly

sī plūra velim, mihi plūra
dēs

if I were to want more, you
would give it me

VOCABULARY 41.

impetr-ō , 1, <i>I obtain my request</i>	iussū (<i>abl. only</i>), <i>by order</i>
	pernici-ēs , - ēi , <i>f., destruction</i>
commod-um , - i , <i>n., advantage</i>	stipendi-um , - i , <i>n., tribute</i>

EXERCISE 41.

A. Translate into English :—

Iussu Caesaris legati ad Ariovistum ierunt, qui dicerent Caesarem cum eo de re publica agere velle. His respondit Ariovistus: "Si quid ego a Caesare impetrare voluero, ad eum ipse veniam; si quid ille a me vult, ad me veniat. Si adventu vestro Aedui stipendium mihi pendere noluerint, mihi iniuria maxima fiet; nisi hoc fecerint, nihil eis proderit vestra amicitia."

Tum legati, "Imperator noster," inquit, "utrum bellum an pacem pares, non flocci facit: Aeduos ceterosque populi Romani amicos defendet. Si proelium cum nobis committas, intellegas, quanta sit virtus Romana, neque quemquam contra Romanos sine sua pernicie contendere; cave igitur ne tantam cladem vos Germani patiamini."

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid Caesar legatos Ariovisto dicere iubet?

Quae est causa cur Ariovistus cum Caesare loqui nolit?

Quam iniuriam Ariovistus timet ne Romani sibi faciāt?

Utrum Caesar Aeduis magis proderit an Ariovistus magis eos laedet?

Num legati verba Ariovisti timent?

Quid Ariovisto contra Romanos pugnanti erat timendum?

C. Translate into Latin :—

Caesar's address to his soldiers.

Summoning the soldiers, Caesar spoke as follows: "Why do you think that Ariovistus will wage war against us? I believe that he will seek at length the friendship of the Roman people; if, however, he does join battle, what have we to fear? If the flight of the Gauls disturbs the mind of any man, let him remember that they were wearied with a long war. Do not enquire whither you are being led; this is my care. I shall not be hindered from winning a victory by the cowardice of a few cohorts." By this speech the soldiers were so cheered that they desired to be led at once against the enemy.

LESSON 42.

Conditional sentences (continued).

Learn principal parts of verbs from **suō** to **pariō** (§§ 356, F-357, A).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*continued*).

229. (C) Those which relate to conditions in **present** or **past** time, and imply the non-fulfilment of those conditions, are called **unreal** conditional sentences, and imply an **impossible** conclusion.

(a) **Present time.** The verb, in both protasis and apodosis, is in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

sī Daedalus viveret volāret

if Daedalus were alive (which he is not), he would be flying

sī privātus essem, ego tacērem

if I were a private citizen (which I am not, being an official), I should hold my tongue

(b) **Past time.** The verb, in both protasis and apodosis, is in the **pluperfect subjunctive**.

sī Icarus prope sōlem nōn volāvisset, in mare nōn cecidisset

if Icarus had not flown near the sun, he would not have fallen into the sea

NOTE.—Sometimes, for a pluperfect in the apodosis, an imperfect is substituted referring to present time, e.g. **sī tacuissem, nōn adessēs**, *if I had held my peace you would not now be here.*

230. The **protasis** of a conditional sentence is often understood and not expressed: the mood of the principal verb is **subjunctive**. This is called the **potential subjunctive**, and expresses **possibility** rather than **certainty**. The present tense refers to what may be realised; the imperfect to what may not be realised. Hence, as a rule, the present refers to future time, the imperfect to past.

quidquid veniat in mentem
scribās velim

*I should like you to write me
whatever occurs to you (lit.
comes into (your) mind)*

crēderēs hostēs prope mūrōs
esse

*you might have supposed the
enemy were close to the walls*

Obs.—In the first example **velim** is potential, **scribas** final subjunctive (§ 215) in semi-dependence on it.

VOCABULARY 42.

concid-ō (cpd. of cadō), 3, *I fall*
oppugn-ō, 1, *I besiege*

complex-us, -ūs, *m., embrace*
servit-ūs, -ūtis, *f., slavery*

EXERCISE 42.

A. Translate into English :—

Coriolano a matre persuadetur ut exercitum abducat.

Gaius Marcius Coriolanus, a Romanis expulsus, cum magno exercitu urbem oppugnabat. Tum amicorum quidam circumstantium, "Nisi me," inquit, "fallunt oculi, mater tua cum liberis huc advenit." Coriolanus matri advenienti complexum dare voluit, sed illa, "Prius," inquit, "velim scire num ad hostem, an ad filium venerim; num longa vita me ad hoc traxit, ut te exsulem, et hostem patriae videam? Nisi ego peperissem, Roma non oppugnaretur: nisi filium haberem, libera in libera patria mortua essem; hos liberos, si in urbem ire pergis, aut mors indigna, aut longa servitus manet." Verbis matris motus, legiones ab agris Romanis abduxit; sed nisi mater ipsa, ut eum oraret, ita advenisset, concidisset urbs Roma.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur mater ad castra filii ivit?

Quid tum faciebat Coriolanus, civis Romanus?

Cur matrem paenitebat se filium peperisse?

Quid liberis Coriolani, urbe capta, erat expectandum?

Quare Coriolanus legiones ex agris Romanis abduxit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. If I had been the wife of Hercules, I would have performed his labours. 2. If my son were in Arabia, and were waging war against thee, he would kill thee with his own sword. 3. You used to say, mother, that the minds of men were tested by adversity. 4. I shall be loved, when I am absent from you. 5. My son, whither wilt thou go? said the father of Coriolanus. 6. If we cannot do that, we can die for our country. 7. If you conquer, you will destroy Rome, where you were born; if you are beaten, everyone will say, that you have brought very great sorrow to your friends and countrymen. 8. If the Volscians had not, with the help of Coriolanus, nearly taken Rome, they would never have condemned him to death. 9. If you were to read Roman history (*rēs Rōmānae*), you would know more about Coriolanus.

LESSON 43.

Temporal clauses (with cum).

Learn principal parts of verbs from *capiō* to *coepiō* (§ 357, B-F).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: PRESENT OR FUTURE TIME.

231. In such sentences as—

when I do wrong, I get punished
when I see you, I will tell you all about it
as soon as I arrived, I went upstairs

the clauses introduced by *when*, *as soon as*, or the like are called **temporal**, *i.e.* they define the time (**tempus**) at which the action of the principal sentence takes place, relatively to another action, *viz.* that of the temporal clause.

232. In Latin temporal clauses in which the time is present or future the mood used is **indicative**, and the tense is that which the meaning requires.

233. The English idiom, by which the present is used in the second sentence given above, must not be reproduced in Latin, but the future or future-perfect must be used if the time is future. Cp. § 228.

234. The commonest temporal conjunction in Latin is **cum**.

*cum permagna praeemia sunt,
est causa peccandi*

*when the rewards are very
great, it is a reason for
wrong-doing*

*cum epistolam lēgerō, re-
spondēbō*

*when I have read the letter,
I will reply*

*cum adventābunt equitēs,
fugite*

*when the horsemen are on the
point of arriving, flee*

Obs.—Commands naturally refer to future time.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: PAST TIME.

235. In such sentences as—

when I was at school, I used to learn Latin
when he had said this, he went away
when the envoys arrived, Caesar demanded hostages

in which the action of the temporal clause and that of the principal sentence belong to the **same series of events**, the Latin conjunction **cum** is followed by the **subjunctive mood**, the **imperfect** or **pluperfect** being used according to the requirements of the sense.

cum Athēnīs essem, Zēnōnem frequenter audiēbam	<i>when I was at Athens, I often heard Zeno's lectures</i>
haec cum dixisset, suōs in hostēs duxit	<i>when he had said this, he led his men against the enemy</i>
cum nostrōs fugere vidisset, domum discessit	<i>when he saw that our men were fleeing, he went off home</i>

Obs.—In the last example the *pluperfect* subjunctive is used because the action of seeing had preceded that of departing.

VOCABULARY 43.

animadvert-ō, 3, I notice	obs-es, -idis, m., hostage
mē reclīn-ō, 1, I lean back	pond-us, -eris, n., weight
	qui-ēs, -ētis, f., rest
cubīl-e, -is, n., bed	speci-ēs, -ēi, f., appearance
fer-a, -ae, f., wild beast	vēnāt-iō, -ōnis, f., hunting
hibern-a (castra), -ōrum, n.pl., winter quarters	quotannis, yearly

EXERCISE 43.

A. Translate into English :—

Germanorum venatio.

Multum et in omnibus rebus et praecipue in venatione ars proficere potest. Venantur Germani feras, quibus pro cubilibus sunt arbores, ad quas reclinatae quietem capiunt: itaque cum

venatores quo hae ferae se recipere soleant animadverterunt, arbores tam paene circumdunt ut species standi solum relinquatur. Cum ad has arbores se reclinaverunt ferae, arboribus pondere afflictis, una ipsae concidunt nec surgere possunt. Hoc modo ferae facile capiuntur.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quomodo ferae quietem capiunt ?

Quid facere venatores solebant ut feras caperent ?

Quomodo tandem ferae capiuntur ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. When Caesar had occupied Italy, Pompey and the senators departed to Epirus. 2. The day was dawning when the consul gave the signal for beginning battle. 3. When I think how great a danger threatened the State, I give thanks to the gods. 4. When you see your brother, tell him that I hope to write to him soon. 5. When the enemy came into sight, Caesar ordered the cohorts to leave their ambush. 6. Having received the hostages from the tribes, Labienus informed the general what he had done. 7. At the time when I was trying to finish the work, my brother asked me to help him. 8. Do you remember that time when you were so ill ? 9. There was a time when all men tilled the fields. 10. When I am reading your book, I shall forget all my sorrows.

LESSON 44.

Temporal clauses continued ; ut, dum, ubi, postquam, etc.

Learn principal parts of verbs from **veniō** to **reperiō** (§ 358).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

236. The temporal conjunctions **ut** or **utī**, *when, as soon as, ubi* or **ubī**, *when*, are followed by the **indicative**.

**Pompēsius, ut equitātum suum
fugātum vidit, ac iē excessit**

*when (or as soon as) Pompey
saw his cavalry put to flight,
he left the line of battle*

**ubi ea diēs quam constitu-
erat vēnit et lēgāti ad eum
revertērunt, concilium con-
vocāvit**

*when the day which he had
appointed had come and the
ambassadors had returned to
him, he summoned a meeting*

237. **Postquam**, *after*, introduces a temporal clause in which the verb is in the **indicative**.

**postquam haec audivi, pro-
fectus sum**

*after I had heard } this, I set out
on hearing*

Obs.—The Latin perfect is usually found after **ut**, **ubi** and **postquam**, whereas in English the natural tense is the past-perfect.

238. **Dum**, meaning *while (during the time which)*, is usually found constructed with the **present indicative**. This tense is used for the sake of vividness, and is called the **historic present**.

**dum Rōmāni in nāvibus aedi-
ficandis tempus terunt,
urbs obsidēbātur**

*while the Romans were wasting
time in building ships, the city
was being besieged*

239. *Dum*, meaning *while* (*as long as*), may be used with any tense of the indicative, as the sense requires.

<i>dum pugnābunt</i> (cp. § 228)	<i>so long as they fight, we also</i>
<i>illi, nōs quoque pugnā-</i>	<i>will fight</i>
<i>bimus</i>	

Obs.—In English *while* is often used without any idea of time: *dum* is not so used in Latin; e.g. *while you hate him, we love him* is to be rendered *tū eum odisti, nōs amāmus*; i.e. the sentences stand side by side, not one dependent on the other.

240. *Dum, dōnec*, meaning *until*, are used with past tenses of the indicative, unless there is any idea of *purpose* (§ 209).

<i>nec finis fiēbat, dum populus</i>	<i>nor was an end made, till the</i>
<i>senātum cōēgit</i>	<i>people compelled the senate</i>

VOCABULARY 44.

<i>compar-ō</i> , 1, <i>I get together</i>	<i>rebelliō</i> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , <i>renewal of</i>
<i>custōdi-ō</i> , 4, <i>I keep under</i>	<i>war</i>
<i>guard</i>	
<i>excūs-ō</i> , 1, <i>I excuse</i>	<i>impūn-e</i> , adv., <i>unpunished</i>
<i>renov-ō</i> , 1, <i>I renew</i>	<i>postridiē</i> , <i>on the next day</i>

EXERCISE 44.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar Morinorum legatos excipit.

Dum Caesar navium comparandarum causa moratur, Morinorum legati ad eum venerunt. Quos ubi Caesar audivit, magnum numerum obsidum imperavit; quibus adductis eos in fidem accepit. Morini enim, postquam e Britannia ille rediit, rebellionem paraverant, sed simul ac viderunt consilium suum Caesari esse cognitum, legatos ad eum statim sui excusandi causa mittere statuerant. Neque hi ab eo discesserunt, donec nox finem colloquendi fecerat. Cum postridie preces renovavissent, tandem Caesar, "Nisi," inquit, "mihi obsides dederitis, poenas gravissimas a vobis sumam." Dum haec loquuntur, legati magno metu commoti sunt, ne a Caesare custodirentur; sed orando tandem effecerunt ut domum impune dimitterentur.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quare Morini legatos ad Caesarem miserunt?

Quid Morinis, ut pax esset, faciendum erat?

Quare legati verbis Caesaris territi sunt?

Utrum sibi an genti suae magis legati timebant?

Quare Caesari tandem ut legatos dimitteret persuasum est?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Whenever good Homer (*Homerus*) nods, I am moved with anger. 2. He kept the sword in the wound till it was announced to him that the enemy were fleeing. 3. His memory will live as long as the State exists. 4. While the battle was being waged, very heavy rain fell on those fighting. 5. As soon as he saw that the wall was broken, he ordered the infantry to attack the gate. 6. As soon as the summer is over, I will sail across the sea to visit my friends. 7. I remained in the senate until the last speech had been made. 8. Do not depart until I have shown you all my books. 9. Having come into the city, he persuaded his friends to give him money. 10. While I try to speak briefly, I speak obscurely.

LESSON 45.

Temporal clauses (continued).

Learn principal parts of verbs from *reor* to *dēfetiscor* (§§ 360, 361).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

241. *Dum*, *until*, is followed by the subjunctive if purpose is implied, *i.e.* wherever the subjunctive is found the clause is **final** as well as **temporal**.

obsidiō per paucōs diēs magis quam oppugnātiō fuit, dum vulnus ducis cūrārētur	<i>there was a blockade for a few days rather than an assault, . that the general's wound might meanwhile be attended to</i>
---	--

242. *Dummodo*, *so long as, provided that*, is constructed with the subjunctive; the corresponding negative form is **dummodo nē** or **dum nē** (*so long as . . . not, provided that . . . not*).

hic ager cultōrēs suōs, dum- modo labōrāre velint, alet	<i>this land will support its culti- vators, so long as they are willing to work</i>
--	--

243. The verb in a clause introduced by the conjunction **antequam**, *before*, or its equivalent **priusquam**, is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted; but it is subjunctive if the action expressed by the clause is represented as purposely anticipated or (when the principal sentence is negative) purposely awaited.

nec prius ille relictus locus quam finis est pugnandi factus	<i>nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting</i>
nōn prius respondēbō quam tacueris	<i>I will not answer before you are silent</i>
Rōmānus priusquam forēs obicerentur irrūpit	<i>the Roman rushed in before the gates could be shut against him</i>

Obs. 1.—**Antequam** and **priusquam** are really phrases of two words; the **ante** and **prius** belong to the principal clause, and the **quam** to the subordinate clause; they are often so placed, especially in negative sentences; cp. the first and second examples above.

Obs. 2.—*Not until* is often expressed by **tum dēmum**, lit. *then at length*; e.g. the second example above might run **tum dēmum respondēbō cum tacueris**.

VOCABULARY 45.

damn-ō , 1, <i>I condemn</i> (with genitive of charge)	prōditi-ō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , <i>treachery</i> , <i>treason</i>
	tempest-ās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , <i>storm</i>

EXERCISE 45.

A. Translate into English :—

Themistocles in exilium it.

Legatis Athenas missis qui Themistoclem absentem accusarent, prodicionis damnatus est: haud tamen expectabat dum poena mortis afficeretur, sed ad regem Admetum se contulit. Athenienses poposcerunt ut sibi traderetur; sed antequam ad eum capiendum pervenerunt, a rege in Asiam dimissus est. Cum navis tempestate ad insulam ferretur, ubi tum erat Atheniensium exercitus, Themistocles se in maximum periculum venire sensit. "Omnia," inquit, "perferre volo, dummodo ne in manus inimicorum cadam. Navis magistrum, igitur, quis sim, docebo. Huic, si vitam meam servaverit, multam pecuniam dabo." Magister igitur misericordia motus, nautas quominus e nave exirent prohibuit, atque Themistoclem tutum ad Asiam perduxit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Themistocles fugit ?

Cur sese ad regem contulit ?

Num Athenienses Themistoclem capere potuerunt ?

Cur Themistocles insulam adire noluit ?

Quomodo magister navis magnum praemium ab Atheniensibus
accipere poterat ?

Quomodo Themistocles servatus est ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The countryman waits until the river shall flow away. 2. Let them hate me, if only they fear me too. 3. I will not depart till I have seen my brother. 4. Aeneas endured many dangers before Rome could be founded. 5. These things are said to have happened in the hundredth year before the city was founded. 6. The envoys did not set out until they had seen the soldiers put on board ship. 7. Hannibal tried everything before abandoning the battle. 8. Verginius delayed until he could consult his colleague. 9. There was silence until Marcellus returned from the senate. 10. Let them marry whom they choose, so long as no dowry is demanded.

LESSON 46.

Concessive clauses.

Learn principal parts of verbs from **morior** to **vēneō** (§§ 362-5).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

244. Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning *although* are called **concessive** clauses. They are so called because they concede something, in spite of which the statement made in the main clause is true.

245. **Etsi** (*although, even if*) is used with the **indicative** when that which is conceded is regarded as a fact.

etsi stultus es, sapientior es
quam frāter tuus

*although you are foolish, you
are wiser than your brother*

Caesar, etsi erant mūnitiōnēs
magnae, tamen celeriter
hostēs ex vallō dēturbāvit

*although the fortifications were
of great size, Caesar never-
theless quickly drove the
enemy from the ramparts*

246. **Quamquam** (*although*) is always followed by the **indicative**.

quamquam festinās, nōn est
mora longa

*though you are in a hurry,
the delay is not great*

247. **Cum** (*although*), **quamvis** (*although*), **licet** (*although*) require the **subjunctive**. So too do **etsi** and **etiāmsi** (*even if*), if they introduce concessions made merely for the sake of argument.

cum primī hostium concidis-
sent, tamen ācrius reliquī
resistēbant

*although the first ranks of the
enemy had fallen, neverthe-
less the rest resisted vigorously*

quamvis sis molestus, num-
quam dicam tē esse malum

*although you may be trouble-
some, I will never say that
you are wicked*

etiāsi peccāvisset, nōn pūn-
itus esset

*even if he had done wrong, he
would not have been punished*

Obs.—**Quamvis** is really an adverb and is used with adjectives in the sense of “however.”

248. The subjunctive often has a concessive force when used with the relative **quī** (= **quamvis** is).

Caesar, quī haec cognōvisset,
redire statuit

*Caesar, though he knew this,
resolved to return*

Obs.—**Tamen** is often found with the principal verb when a concessive subjunctive is used with **quī**; but otherwise the sense alone will show whether the subjunctive is **concessive**, **consecutive** (§ 217), or **final** (§ 218).

VOCABULARY 46.

castig-5, 1, *I punish*

sempitern-us, -a, -um, *eternal*

studiōs-us, -a, -um (with
gen.), *eager after*

censor, -ōris, *m., censor*
(Roman magistrate)

incognit-us, -a, -um, *unknown*

necnōn, *moreover*

litter-ae, -ārum, *f., literature*

EXERCISE 46.

A. Translate into English :—

Catonis censoris iustitia et diligentia.

Etsi multorum Romanorum nomina memoriae sunt tradita, nemo tamen, quod sciam, dignior est quam Cato, qui in honore sempiterno habeatur. Censor enim factus, civium quamvis nobilium vitia castigavit: nec umquam dubitavit quin pro re publica privatorum inimicitias susceperet: necnon in omnibus rebus erat diligentissimus: etsi enim de agri cultura bene sciebat atque optime scripsit, nihilominus exercitum ducere et causam orare poterat. Litterarum autem Graecarum maxime studiosus erat; ad quas cum sero se conferret, tantum tamen progressum fecit ut nihil Graecarum rerum ei incognitum esset.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quare debet Cato semper in honore a nobis haberi?

Quare Catonem censorem factum cives boni laudabant?

Cur Cato senex litteras Graecas didicit?

Num multos cives, qualis erat Cato, Roma genuit?

Cur Cato privatorum inimicitias suscepit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Although it is always difficult to speak about the future, I will try to answer you. 2. Faults, although they may be small, become greater unless we check them. 3. Though I am sent to the end of the world, I will not abandon hope. 4. Granted that strength be lacking, you must still praise my good will. 5. Though he preferred to live quietly, yet he made no objection to being sent into Gaul. 6. The generals, though they did not expect that there would be an attack, resolved to guard the gates. 7. Even if you cannot return a favour, you can at any rate feel it. 8. When I come back from the city, however tired I am, I tell the children what I have seen. 9. No burden, however heavy, is such that a brave spirit cannot bear it. 10. Even if I had known what to do, I could not have done anything.

LESSON 47.

Causal clauses

Revise principal parts of verbs from *abnuō* to *canō* (§ 366).

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

249. Causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *quod*, *quia* (*because*), *quoniam* (*seeing that*) ; the indicative is used if the cause is stated as a fact.

Hannibal, quia (or quoniam)	<i>because Hannibal could not</i>
oppidum expugnāre nōn	<i>storm the town, he went</i>
potuit, abiit	<i>away</i>
vēni quod mē appellāvisti	<i>I came because you called me</i>

VOCABULARY 47.

fortitūd-ō, -inis, f., <i>bravery</i>	mōs, mōris, m., <i>custom, way</i>
māiōr-ēs, -um, m., <i>ancestors</i>	(pl. mōr-ēs, <i>manners)</i>

EXERCISE 47.

A. Translate into English :—

Cato de periculis a Catilina illatis in senatu loquitur.

Multa verba, patres, apud vos feci dum de civium vitiis queror : iamdiu enim nomina vera rerum amittimus, quia mala audacia, fortitudo ; largitio stulta, liberalitas vocatur. Quid hanc rem publicam tam magnam fecit ? Vigilando, agendo, consulendo omnia ei feliciter evenerunt. Nonne Torquatus filium suum, quoniam contra imperium in hostes pugnaverat, necari iussit ? et vos quid debeatis de hominibus crudelissimis qui contra cives pugnaverunt statuere, nunc dubitatis ? Undique ab hostibus circumventi sumus : credite me haec dicere non ut vos frustra terream, sed quod vos et liberi vestri, res publica denique ipsa, in periculum gravissimum venerunt. Censeo igitur ut more maiorum poenae a Catilina sumantur.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid Cato queritur de moribus Romanorum?

Quomodo, Catone iudice, Roma tam magna erat facta?

Cur Cato senatum de Torquato admonet?

Nonne Catilina dignus fuit qui poenas gravissimas daret?

Cur Cato mores maiorum laudat?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Let us put away pleasures, since we are born for greater things. 2. Seeing that nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting. 3. Since I cannot be yours, I will live alone. 4. I was wretched because so many had deserved well of me that I could not satisfy them all. 5. I rejoice because your studies are flourishing. 6. Will you not thank me for having freed you from all anxiety? 7. You have done well in helping me. 8. Men excel beasts because they can speak. 9. As there is no third course (*say* nothing third) possible, these men, as it seems to me, are the liberators of the State. 10. My life has been very happy, for I have so lived as to benefit my fellow-citizens.

LESSON 48.

Causal clauses (continued).

Revise principal parts of verbs from **capessō** to **exuō** (§ 366).

CAUSAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

250. In a causal clause introduced by **quod** (or by **quia** or **quoniam**) the **subjunctive** is used if the speaker does not wish to vouch for the truth of the cause assigned. The conjunction thus followed by the subjunctive may often be translated *on the ground that . . . , because (as he said) . . . because (so he thought) . . .*

dolēbat quod peccāvisset	<i>he was grieving because (he thought) he had done wrong</i>
indignābantur Rōmāni quod victōribus victi inferrent arma	<i>the Romans were indignani at the conquered making war on their conquerors</i>

251. A causal clause introduced by **cum** (*since*) is always in the **subjunctive**. The rule for the sequence of tenses must be observed.

quae cum ita sint, domum discēdam	<i>and since these things are so, I shall go home</i>
Aedui, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt	<i>as they were unable to defend themselves, the Aedui sent ambassadors to Caesar</i>

252. The **subjunctive** often has a causal force when used with the relative **quī** (= **quoniam** is).

ego semper eum prō amīcō habuī & quō scīrem mē amārī	<i>I always considered him a friend, because I know that he loved me</i>
---	--

253. Summary of the uses of the subjunctive in a relative clause.

Consecutive. *nōn is sum quī hōc faciam* (Lesson 38).

Final. *lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem peterent* (Lesson 38).

Concessive. *Caesar quī hāc cōgnōvisset, redīre tamen statuit* (Lesson 46).

Causal. *ego semper eum prō amīcō habuī, ā quō scīrem mē amārī* (Lesson 48).

VOCABULARY 48.

mult-ō, 1, I *fine*

infectus, -a-, -um, *undone*

offens-iō, -ōnis, f., *offence, dis-*

ae-ger, -gra, -grum, *sick*

pleasure

carc-er, -eris, m., *prison*

vincul-um, -i, n., *fetter*

EXERCISE 48.

A. Translate into English :—

Miltiadis ignominia.

Athenienses post pugnam ad Marathonem factam Miltiadi victori, quia Athenas totamque Graeciam liberavisset, multos honores tribuerunt. Sed postea ille frustra Parios expugnare conatus, magna cum offensione civium rediit. Proditionis ergo accusatus est quod, cum insulam expugnare posset, a Persarum rege corruptus, rebus infectis discessisset. Miltiades eo tempore vulneribus aeger erat; itaque, quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba pro eo fecit frater. Causa cognita quinquaginta talentis multatus est: sed quia hanc pecuniam solvere non poterat, in vincula coniectus est. Nec carcere exiit, sed ibi mortuus est.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Athenienses multis honoribus Miltiadem ornaverunt?

Cur Miltiades in offensionem civium venit?

Quare causam suam orare non poterat?

Utrum absolutus an damnatus est Miltiades?

Quam poenam Miltiades dare debuit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. O fortunate youth, that hast found a poet for thy praises !
2. Scipio's glory was more recent, seeing that he had triumphed in that year.
3. Was not Aristides banished because men said he was too just ?
4. The soldier rejoices at the thought that he has conquered the enemy.
5. Socrates was accused of corrupting the Athenian youths.
6. He had to fight by stratagem, seeing that he was not equal in arms.
7. They all gave thanks to Caesar for having spared them.
8. He complained on the ground that his land had been laid waste by the enemy's cavalry.
9. Seeing that the danger was imminent, he asked the consul to come to his assistance.
10. Is he not wretched, to have lived so long ?

LESSON 49.

Comparative clauses.

Revise principal parts of verbs from *facessō* to *indulgeō* (§ 366).

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

254. Comparative clauses introduced by relative adverbs such as *ut* (*as, just as*), *quam* (*than, or, after tam, as*), have their verb in the **indicative**. A corresponding demonstrative adverb is often found in the principal clause according to the following table:—

tam (before adjectives or adverbs) . . . **quam**, *so . . . as*.

ita, sīc . . . **ut, velut**, *so . . . as*.

totiēs . . . quotiēs, *so often . . . as* (cp. § 149).

[comparative adjective or adverb] . . . **quam**, *more . . . than*.

eō (with comparative adjective or adverb) . . . **quō** (with the same), *the more . . . the more . . .*

The indicative also follows **nōn secus āc** (*not otherwise, than*): **atque** is used for **āc** before a vowel.

Marcus, (sīc) ut solet, ēbrius est	<i>Marcus is drunk, as usual</i>
celerius scribō quam tū loqueris	<i>I write more quickly than you speak</i>
senātui haud secus āc tibi pārēbō	<i>I will obey the senate no less than yourself</i>
quō quisque est melior, eō difficilius improbōs suspicātur	<i>the more honest a man is, the more difficult he finds it to suspect the dishonest</i>

Obs. 1.—*As* in a comparative clause must be distinguished from *as* (= *since*) in a causal or temporal clause, *e.g.* *tum cum hōc dicēbās, exiit, as you were saying this, he went out.*

Obs. 2.—The verb is often left to be understood in the comparative clause, as in the last example.

255. The verb of the clause introduced by *quam sī*, *quasi, tamquam sī* (*as if*) is *subjunctive*, as expressing an imaginary case. The tense is determined according to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

Caesarem tamquam sī (or they saluted Caesar as if he
quasi, or tamquam) rex were a king
esset salūtābant

Obs.—*Tamquam* is often found in the same construction without *sī*.

VOCABULARY 49.

inān-is, -e, *empty*

lev-is, -e, *light*

pec-us, -udis, *f., beast*

plēr-ique, -aeque, -aque, *m., most*

praedit-us, -a, -um, *endowed*

perinde āc, *just as*

EXERCISE 49.

A. Translate into English:—

Amicitia.

Efficere debemus ut amicos e bonis deligamus, amicitia enim hominibus utilior est quam honores et divitiae, quae multi ita contemnunt ut nihil inanium, nihil levius existiment: sed de amicitia omnes idem sentiunt. Quare amicos non tamquam pecudes sed perinde ac si fratres deligamus, deligere debemus: diligentissime quaeramus eos qui virtutibus omnibus sint praediti. Quo enim diligentius amicos quaesiverimus, eo facilius ipsi bene vivere poterimus, neque, ut saepe inter malos fieri solet, amicitia in inimicitiam mutabitur.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur in amicis quaerendis diligentia est adhibenda ?

Quid sentiunt homines de amicitia ?

Utrum bonus an malus amicus homini magis prodest ?

Cur honores et divitiae a nonnullis contemnuntur ?

Cur homines sine amicis vivere nolunt ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Cimon fell into unpopularity as his father had done. 2. As each deserves, so let his fortune be. 3. When you speak otherwise than as you think, then you speak falsely. 4. He was more cruel than was necessary for the conquest of the rebels. 5. I have done just as I ought to have done, and feel as you do about this matter. 6. He behaves as if he were consul. 7. He led the army into the territory of the Aedui as quickly as he could (*quam celerrime*). 8. The storm was so great, that I was compelled to return home. 9. The danger was such as I had never before experienced. 10. He spoke as if he had heard nothing about the battle.

LESSON 50.

Impersonal verbs.

256. A verb is said to be used impersonally when the subject is left indefinite. In English such subject is usually "it"; in Latin the verb is in the third person singular.

We have seen in § 167 that **intransitive verbs used in the passive voice** are only found in the third person singular: e.g. **parcō tibi**, *I spare you*; **tibi a mē parcitur**, *you are spared by me* (literally *it is spared to you by me*).

Verbs denoting **states of the weather** are also used in the third person singular, as in English, e.g. **tonat**, *it thunders*.

The above may be regarded as true impersonal verbs.

257. Several other verbs are used in what appears to be an impersonal use. In fact they are the predicates of subjects which are either **simple infinitives**, **accusative with infinitive phrases**, **ut clauses with the subjunctive**, or **quod clauses with the indicative**.

These verbs are of two classes.

(i) Verbs which have full conjugation but are also used impersonally.

Such are—

accēdit	<i>it is added</i>	from	accēdō , 3	<i>I approach</i>
accidit	<i>it happens</i>	„	accidō , 3	<i>I light upon</i>
constat	<i>it is well known</i>	„	constō , 1	<i>I stand firm</i>
contingit	<i>it befalls</i>	„	contingō , 3	<i>I touch</i>
ēvenit	<i>it turns out</i>	„	ēveniō , 4	<i>I come out</i>
fit	<i>it happens</i>	„	fiō , 3	<i>I become</i>
iuvat (<i>tr.</i>)	<i>it delights</i>	„	iuvō , 1	<i>I help</i>
placet	<i>it pleases</i>	„	placeō , 2	<i>I please</i>

(ii) Verbs (all of the second conjugation) denoting the state or condition of the mind, which are only used in the third person singular.

deceat (tr.)	<i>it befits, is fitting</i>	piget (tr.)	<i>it worries</i>
libet	<i>it pleases</i>	poenitet (tr.)	<i>it repents</i>
licet	<i>it is allowed</i>	pudet (tr.)	<i>it shames</i>
miseret (tr.)	<i>it moves to pity</i>	taedet (tr.)	<i>it wearies</i>
oportet (tr.)	<i>it is necessary</i>		

These verbs, if transitive, have a direct object in the accusative case; if intransitive, they have an indirect object in the dative case, e.g.

mē pudet	<i>it shames me</i>	i.e.	<i>I am ashamed</i>
mihi licet	<i>it is allowed me</i>	i.e.	<i>I am allowed</i>

They are usually constructed also with an infinitive or subjunctive clause.

mīlitem non deceat fugere	<i>it is unseemly for a soldier to run away or flight does not become a soldier</i>
puerōs oportet diligentēs esse	<i>boys ought to be industrious</i>
nōn cuivis hominī contingit adire Corinthum	<i>it is not everyone's luck to go to Corinth</i>
Caesarem interfectum esse omnibus constat	<i>it is well known to all that Caesar was murdered</i>
accidit ut esset plēna lūna	<i>the moon happened to be full</i>
hīc pugnēs licet	<i>you may fight here</i>
hūc accēdēbat ut militēs fessi essent or quod militēs fessi erant	<i>to this was to be added (the fact) that the soldiers were tired</i>

258. The above usages may be thus summarised:—

- (a) Accusative of person, and infinitive.
deceat, iuvat, miseret, oportet, piget, poenitet, pudet, taedet.
- (b) Dative of person, and infinitive.
contingit, libet, licet, placet.
- (c) Accusative with infinitive phrase.
constat.
- (d) *ut*-clause, with subjunctive.
accēdit, accidit, ēvenit, fit.

- (e) Subjunctive clause with or without *ut*.
licet, oportet.
- (f) *quod*-clause with indicative.
accēdit, iuvat.

VOCABULARY 50.

<i>dēpōn-ō</i> , 3, <i>I lay aside</i>	<i>bland-us, -a, -um, sweet</i>
<i>noc-eō</i> , 2 (with dat.), <i>I hurt</i>	<i>nep-ōs, -ōtis, m., grandson</i>
<i>porrig-ō</i> (cpd. of <i>regō</i>), 3, <i>I stretch out</i>	<i>sapi-ens, gen. -entis, wise</i>

EXERCISE 50.

A. Translate into English :—

The Romans and the Sabine women.

Oves pascere Romanos olim tædedit, et agros paucos et incultos tenere civibus nocebat. Tum ludos facere Romanorum regi placuit; Sabinos puellasque Sabinas ad ludos vocaverunt. In Romanorum animo est Sabinas rapere: et virginibus manus cupidas iniiciunt Romani. Cum puellarum patribus, Romani, bellum ob iniuriam gerere debebitis.

In generos soceri arma portabant, sed filias contra viros pugnare miserebat; in manibus natos teneros tenebant et inter patres virosque incesserunt. Iram deponere patribus et viris placuit; nepotes parvi blando clamore ad avos manus porrexisse dicuntur. Ad urbem nepotes in scutis portare avis libuit: hastas mittere avi docebunt. Per nepotes accidit ut patres et avi pacem haberent.

Sapientium hominum est bellis finem celeriter facere; nam saepe contingit hominibus multa mala ex bello pati. Nonne Romanos olim meminisse iuvabit non modo pacem sed etiam civitatem unam ex duabus factam esse?

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Romani ludos fecerunt?

Quid in Romanorum animo erat facere?

Cur Sabini bellum contra Romanos gesserunt?

Quid Sabinæ puellæ propter bellum fecerunt?

Quomodo pax inter generos et soceros facta est?

Quomodo e bello populus Romanus beneficium cepit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. The Roman leader ought not to have made the games for the soldiers. 2. He was allowed to carry off the maidens from their fathers. 3. The Romans were weary of tilling their fields. 4. They are ashamed to have left the booty to the wolves and the foxes. 5. The grandfather was not permitted to teach his grandson. 6. It has delighted the whole army to see the marriage of the general's daughter. 7. He ought to make a way through the woods against the enemy. 8. It is sometimes a good thing to obey parents. 9. Will the poor farmer ever have the luck to see Rome? 10. Is it becoming to the poor to imitate the ways of the rich? 11. Will you not be ashamed and sorry to have feared the threats of Catiline? 12. You ought to have driven him out of Rome. 13. It sometimes happens in battle that brave men suddenly become cowards. 14. Is it not possible that you have made a mistake? 15. I am very glad that you are ashamed of your former folly. 16. We ought to be willing to die for our country. 17. It happened that there was a full moon. 18. It has been decreed that a dictator shall be appointed (use *dico*). 19. It is well known that the sun rises every day. 20. The people were very sorry that Caesar had been murdered.

LESSON 51.

Irregularities of the first declension; the uses of the accusative.

IRREGULARITIES OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

259. Dative and ablative plural.—Two feminine substantives corresponding to masculines in **-us** of the second declension have dative and ablative plural in **-ābus**. These are **dea** (*goddess*) and **filia** (*daughter*), of which the dative and ablative plural are **deābus**, **filiābus**, whereas **deīs**, **filiīs** are the dative and ablative plural of **deus** (*god*) and **filius** (*son*).

THE ACCUSATIVE.

260. The **accusative**, like the English objective, is used as the **direct object** of a **transitive verb** or of certain **prepositions**. It may denote (1) the person or thing to which something is done, (2) what is done to that person or thing.

We have dealt with the accusative of the **direct object** (§ 14). Further uses may be classified as follows.

261. Accusative of the complement; verbs of *making and calling* require a second accusative to complete their meaning.

tū facimus deam	<i>we make thee a goddess</i>
Catōnem sapientem appellat	<i>they call Cato wise</i>

Obs.—When the above sentences are changed into the passive form, the complements agree with the subjects, e.g. **tū fis dea**; **Catō appellātur sapiens**.

262. Accusative of goal of motion, with or without a preposition.

It is used without a preposition when the goal is expressed by—

- (a) the name of a town ;
- (b) the name of a small island—*i.e.* one small enough to be regarded as a place, not a country ;
- (c) the words *domus*, *home* (but not in the meaning *house*) ; *rūs*, *country*.

<i>Brundusium</i>	<i>pervēnimus</i> ,	<i>we came to Brundisium and</i>
<i>inde Leucadem</i>		<i>thence to Leucas</i>
<i>vōs ite domum</i> ,	<i>ego rūs ibō</i>	<i>you go home, I will go into the</i>
		<i>country</i>

263. With the exceptions mentioned in § 262 (c), the goal of motion is in prose expressed by the **accusative with a preposition** (*ad*, *in*, etc.).

<i>Caesar in Galliam contendit</i>	<i>Caesar hastens into Gaul</i>
<i>lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt</i>	<i>they send ambassadors to Caesar</i>

NOTE.—If a substantive (*e.g.* *urbs*, *city* ; *oppidum*, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town which is the goal of motion, a preposition is generally used with that substantive.

<i>consul pervēnit in oppidum</i>	<i>the consul arrived at the town</i>
<i>Cirtam</i>	<i>of Cirta</i>

Obs.—The Latin for *he sent a letter to me at Rome* is *misit epistolam mihi Rōmam* (lit. *to Rome*).

264. The **accusative supine** represents an action as the “goal,” and accordingly is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

<i>lūsum it Maecēnās</i>	<i>Maecenas goes to play</i>
--------------------------	------------------------------

VOCABULARY 51.

<i>compōn-ō</i> , 3, <i>I settle</i> (<i>wars</i> , etc.)	<i>condici-ō</i> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , (in <i>pl.</i>) <i>terms</i>
<i>congru-ō</i> , 3, <i>I agree</i>	<i>grāti-ae</i> , -ārum, <i>f.pl.</i> , <i>thanks</i>
	<i>invict-us</i> , -a, -um, <i>unconquered</i>

EXERCISE 51.

A. Translate into English :—

Hannibal pro patria proelium ultimum facit.

Hannibal, adhuc invictus, cum patriam defensum revocatus esset, bellum adversus Publium Scipionem gessit. Cum hoc bellum componere cupiit, quo validior postea congrediretur: sed etsi in colloquium convenit, de pacis condicionibus tamen congruere non poterat. Quare post paucos dies cum eodem apud Zamam conflixit: pulsus tertio die Hadrumetum pervenit, quod oppidum a Zama circiter milia passuum triginta abest. Tum Carthaginienses, bello cum Romanis composito, legatos Romam miserunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias ob pacem datam agerent.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur in patriam Hannibal revocatus est?

Cur bellum componere Hannibal cupiit?

Quo loco Hannibal cum Scipione conflixit?

Quid fecit Hannibal proelio pulsus?

Quot milia passuum Hadrumetum a Zama abest?

Quid Carthaginienses post bellum compositum fecerunt?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. On that day Caesar was invited to the house of his son. 2. He resolved that ambassadors should be sent to Hannibal. 3. The soldiers had gone home and the king had gone to Syracuse. 4. I will go to the country and there I will stay. 5. When these things had been announced at Rome (*say* to Rome) they wished to make terms with the king. 6. He is hastening to Brundisium to sail to Greece. 7. Am I able to make Caesar rich or Crassus poor? 8. I killed those whom you had sent to my house to punish me. 9. The girl was called good by the daughters of Cato. 10. The ambassador obtained his request and was admitted to a seat (*say* to sit). 11. Caesar will disembark and will lead his soldiers to the town of Brundisium to winter quarters. 12. Caesar will march to Italy and will be elected consul. 13. A certain poet has said that women used to go to the circus to see the games. 14. Do you not think that some women went to be seen? 15. The Romans called that part of Gaul which they first conquered, the Province.

LESSON 52.

Irregular substantives of the second and third declensions.

Revise principal parts of verbs from **induō** to **opperior** (§ 366).

Read Appendix II. on scansion.

265. IRREGULARITIES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Singular.		Singular.	
N.	filius, a son	N.	deus, a god
V.	fili	V.	deus
Acc.	filium	Acc.	deum
Gen.	filiī or fili	Gen.	dei
Dat.	filiō	Dat.	deō
Abl.	filiō	Abl.	deō
Plural.		Plural.	
N. V.	fili	N. V.	dei
Acc.	filiōs	Acc.	deōs
Gen.	filiōrum	Gen.	deōrum (deum)
D. Abl.	filiis	D. Abl.	deis, diis, dis

Obs.—Like **filius** are declined all proper names ending in **-ius**. Neuters of this declension ending in **-ium** may contract the genitive singular like **filius**.

Virus, poison, vulgus, populace, being neuter, have accusative the same as the nominative. They have no plurals.

Dexter, on the right hand, is declined like **tener** or **niger**.

IRREGULARITIES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

266. The following irregular nouns are in common use:—

Bōs (c.), *ox or cow.* **Sūs** (c.), *boar or sow.*

	Singular.		Singular.
<i>N. V.</i>	bōs	<i>N. V.</i>	sūs
<i>Acc.</i>	bovem	<i>Acc.</i>	suem
<i>Gen.</i>	bovis	<i>Gen.</i>	suīs
<i>Dat.</i>	bovī	<i>Dat.</i>	sui
<i>Abl.</i>	bove	<i>Abl.</i>	sue
	Plural.		Plural.
<i>N. V.</i>	bovēs	<i>N. V.</i>	suēs
<i>Acc.</i>	bovēs	<i>Acc.</i>	suēs
<i>Gen.</i>	bovm	<i>Gen.</i>	suvm
<i>Dat.</i>	būbus or bōbus	<i>Dat.</i>	suibus or subus
<i>Abl.</i>	būbus or bōbus	<i>Abl.</i>	suibus or subus

Iuppiter (m.), *Jupiter* (a Roman god). **Iūs iūrandum** [frequently written as one word: **iusiūrandum**] (n.), *oath.* (No plural.)

	Singular.		Singular.
<i>N. V.</i>	Iuppiter	<i>N. V.</i>	iūs iūrandum
<i>Acc.</i>	Iovem	<i>Acc.</i>	iūs iūrandum
<i>Gen.</i>	Iovis	<i>Gen.</i>	iūris iūrandi
<i>Dat.</i>	Iovī	<i>Dat.</i>	iūri iūrandō
<i>Abl.</i>	Iove	<i>Abl.</i>	iūre iūrandō

VOCABULARY 52.

abrupm-ō, 3, *I rend*
annu-ō, 3, *I nod assent*
dē-cidō (cpd. of **cadō**), 3, *I fall down*
effund-ō, 3, *I pour out*
intercid-ō, 3, *I perish, am lost*
rest-ō, 1, *I remain*
tremefac-iō, 3, *I make tremble*

aether, -eris, m., *sky*
astrum, -ī, n., *star*
nūbil-ā, -ōrum, n. pl., *the clouds*
nūt-us, -ūs, m., *nod*
ratus, -a, -um (reor), *fulfilled*

EXERCISE 52.

A. Translate into English :—

Mars Iovem rogat ut Romulus deus fiat

Redde patri natum ; quamvis intercidit alter,

Pro se, proque Remo, qui mihi restat, erit.

Unus erit, quem tu tolles in caerula caeli :

Tu mihi dixisti ; sint rata dicta Iovis.

Iuppiter annuerat ; nutu tremefactus uterque

Est polus, et caeli pondera movit Atlas.

Est locus ; antiqui Capreae dixere paludem.

Forte tuis illic, Romule, iura dabas.

Sol fugit, et removent subeuntia nubila caelum

Et gravis effusis decidit imber aquis.

Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus aether.

Fit fuga ; rex patriis astra petebat equis.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quis erat pater Romuli ?

Quis Remum occiderat ?

Cur aether tremefactus est ?

Ubi Romulus stabat ?

Quo ivit ? Quomodo ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. I hate the populace. 2. Hercules drove his oxen to the bank of the river. 3. We will bind the citizens by an oath not to betray the citadel. 4. To Jupiter, the father of gods and men, we pray daily in the temple. 5. Stretching out his right hand, he promised to give back the hostages. 6. I think the character of your son is to be praised.

(ii) When Romulus had reigned for forty years, and had conquered all the neighbouring peoples, so that Rome was everywhere feared, the gods received him among themselves. This was the manner of his leaving the earth. He had summoned the army to a marsh outside the city, and was finding out how many soldiers he had, when suddenly a storm arose, and so dense a cloud surrounded Romulus that he was hidden from the sight of the Romans ; nor was he afterwards seen on earth.

LESSON 53.

The accusative (continued).

Revise principal parts of verbs from **ordior** to **rōdō** (§ 366).

THE ACCUSATIVE (*continued*).

267. The **cognate accusative** is used after **intransitive** verbs; it is generally the accusative of a substantive like in form or meaning to the verb (**cognātus** = *akin*).

pater eius servitūtem servivit	<i>his father was a slave (lit. served a service)</i>
---------------------------------------	---

vitam vixit	<i>he lived his life</i>
--------------------	--------------------------

268. Double accusative.

Rogō, *I ask*; **doceō**, *I teach*; **cēlō**, *I conceal*, take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

docēbō puerum sapientiam	<i>I will teach the boy wisdom</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------------

rogō magistrum sententiam	<i>I ask the master (for) his opinion</i>
----------------------------------	---

hōc tē cēlō	<i>I conceal this from you</i>
--------------------	--------------------------------

NOTE.—The accusative of the person becomes the subject of the verb when the sentences are turned into the passive voice.

puer sapientiam docēbitur	<i>the boy will be taught wisdom</i>
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

magister sententiam rogātur	<i>the master is being asked his opinion</i>
------------------------------------	--

269. Verbs compounded with **trans**, *across*, may have an accusative dependent on **trans**-, in addition to the accusative of the object.

Caesar Germānōs flūmen trāiecit	<i>Caesar puts the Germani across the river</i>
--	---

NOTE.—The accusative dependent on **trans**- is also found when the verb is passive; e.g. **exercitus flūmen trāductus est**, *the army was conveyed across the river*.

VOCABULARY 53.

concur-s-us, -ŭs, <i>m.</i> , <i>rush</i>	obvi-us, -a, -um, <i>meeting</i>
ŏri-a, -ae, <i>f.</i> , <i>senate-house</i>	occās-us, -ŭs, <i>m.</i> , <i>setting</i>
for-um, -i, <i>n.</i> , <i>market-place</i>	vag-us, -a, -um, <i>wandering</i>

EXERCISE 53.

A. Translate into English :—

Clades Romanis nuntiata.

Primum cladis eius nuntio audito concursus in forum populi est factus : matronae vagae per vias, quae clades allata et quae fortuna exercitus esset, obvios rogaverunt : et cum civium turba in curiam versa magistratus vocaret, tandem haud multo ante solis occasum M. Pomponius praetor : “ Pugna,” inquit, “ magna victi sumus ” : et quamquam nihil certius ex eo auditum est, tamen alius ab alio impleti rumoribus domos referunt, consulem cum magna parte copiarum caesum, et paucos superesse.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur in forum concursus populi est factus ?

Quid matronae obvios rogabant ?

Quid turbae a praetore dictum est ?

Quid de consule cives domos referebant ?

Utrum plures ei qui caesi erant, an ei qui proelio supererant ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. I have lived so hard a life that I gladly depart. 2. I was not asked what I thought, therefore I said nothing. 3. Caesar, having led his army across the river, pitched his camp two miles from the bridge. 4. For seventy years the priests dwelt in Gaul. 5. At the age of eight he was able to read all the books which his father gave him. 6. When you teach your son letters, you must be patient. 7. We are taught by misfortune to help others.

(ii) The son of King Croesus, although he was twelve years old, was unable to make sounds with his tongue ; but when his father had been conquered in a great battle, and had lost his kingdom, one of the enemy, not knowing who he was, came to slay him. Then the son strove so violently to cry out that, with the effort, he burst the bond of the tongue. “ Man ! ” said he, “ do not kill King Croesus ! ”

LESSON 54.

The uses of the genitive case.

Revise the principal parts of verbs from **rumpō** to **sum** (§ 366).

THE GENITIVE.

270. The ordinary **genitive of the possessor** has already been mentioned (§ 17).

The genitive of **quality** or **description** always has an adjective in agreement, and may be attributive or predicative.

vir erat priscae severitātis	<i>he was a man of old-fashioned sternness</i>
magnī ponderis saxa in mūrō collocāverunt	<i>they placed on the wall stones of great weight</i>
mūrō duodecim pedum castra mūnivit	<i>he fortified his camp with a wall twelve feet high (lit. of twelve feet)</i>

271. The **partitive genitive** expresses the whole of which the other substantive forms a **part** (cp. § 121).

minus habeo virium quam vestrum quisquam	<i>I have less strength than any of you</i>
quantum voluptātis tū mihi dedisti!	<i>how much pleasure you did give me!</i>

272. The **genitive of value**. The following genitives are used to express **value** :—

plūris (genitive singular of **plūs**, neuter substantive, *more*),
minōris, genitive singular neuter of **minor**, *smaller*).

mea mihi conscientia plūris est quam omnium sermō	<i>my conscience is of more value to me than everyone's talk</i>
--	--

Plūris, minōris, tantī, quantī are used to denote the price at which a thing is bought or sold.

plūrisne emptum est ?

was it bought at a greater price ?

VOCABULARY 54.

expedit (**expediō**), 4, *it is profitable*

labōr-ō, 1, *I am distressed*

reput-ō, 1, *I reflect*

sil-eō, 2, *I am silent*

aliēn-us, -a, -um, *belonging to another (alius)*

oēter-i, -ae, -a, *the others*

inopi-a, -ae, f., *want, need*

mercāt-or, -ōris, m., *merchant*

onust-us, -a, -um, *laden*

EXERCISE 54.

A. Translate into English :—

Utrum bonum nostrum an alienum petere debemus ?

Si mercator qui Rhodum in tempore summae inopiae magnam frumenti copiam advexit, scivit multos mercatores cum navibus frumento onustis Rhodum petere, utrum hoc Rhodiis dicere debuit, an de mercatorum adventu silere licuit, quo frumentum suum pluris venderet ? Si mercator malus ac cupidus fuisset, hoc certe secum reputavisset : “Quamvis hoc turpe sit, tamen quoniam expedit, faciam : vendo frumentum meum non pluris quam ceteri, fortasse etiam minoris, cum maior sit copia. Sapientis esse puto, bonum suum rebus alienis neglectis quaerere.” Sed mercator hoc non fecit, sed cum monstravisset Rhodiis frumentum plurimum advehi, etsi pretium sui frumenti minus factum erat, sensit se urbi fame laboranti subvenisse.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur mercator Rhodum frumentum advehit ?

Cur debet mercator minoris quam potest civibus frumentum suum vendere ?

Quid boni mercator tandem accepit ?

Cur pluris unus quam viginti mercatores vendere potest ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. By the arrival of Caesar the enemy were hindered from attacking our camp. 2. Who of us will be willing to finish the work? 3. He was a man of the greatest wisdom. 4. He has sold his corn at a lower price. 5. Do you not value more highly the virtues of the good citizen? 6. In the hundred years' war (*say* war waged for a hundred years) the English (*Angli*) lost a great part of France (*say* Gaul). 7. We will take care that the citizens receive no harm. 8. All of you have made a mistake, if you trust this man.

(ii) There were many kings of the Greek race who did great deeds, but two kings of the Macedonians much surpassed the rest in the glory of their exploits (*say* things done): Philip and Alexander. The former of these was a man of such skill and good fortune that he subdued all the other Greeks in war; but his son, the most celebrated of conquerors, won for himself even greater fame; for whatever there was anywhere of land to be subdued, he conquered before his thirtieth year.

LESSON 55.

The genitive (continued).

Revise principal parts of verbs from **sūmō** to **voveō** (§ 366).

273. The objective genitive. This genitive is used with certain verbs which are given in the following rhyme, and also with substantives and adjectives of like meaning:—

miseror, such verbs as mean *remind*,
Forget, and some impersonals* we find
 With genitives constructed: class with them
Fill, *lack*, *abound*, *accuse*, *acquit*, *condemn*.

* **mē hūius taedet**, **miseret**,
vel piget, **pudet**, **paenitet**.

(a) With verbs.

filii et patris miserēre	<i>take pity on father and on son</i>
mē civitātis mōrum piget taedetque	<i>I am disgusted and wearied with</i> <i>the morals of the State</i>
veteris contumēliae oblivisci volō	<i>I am willing to forget an old</i> <i>insult</i>
multis imminet damnātiō ambitus	<i>conviction for bribery hangs over</i> <i>the head of many</i>
capitis damnātus est	<i>he was condemned on a capital</i> <i>charge or to death</i>
 eget aeris Cappadocum rex	<i>the king of the Cappadocians is</i> <i>in want of money</i>
hic error formidinis Sam- nites implēvit	<i>this mistake filled the Samnites</i> <i>with alarm</i>

(b) With adjectives, *e.g.* **avidus**, *greedy*; **cupidus**, *eager for*; **patiens**, *enduring*; **peritus**, *skilled in*; **memor**, *mindful*; **studiōsus**, *keen*.

Rōmāni semper appetentēs sunt glōriæ et avidī laudis *the Romans are always ambitious for fame and greedy of praise*

Gallia est plēna civium Rōmānōrum *Gaul is full of Roman citizens*

Catilina memor fuit priscae dignitātis suae *Catiline was mindful of his former rank*

(c) With nouns, *e.g.* **amor**, *love*; **cūra**, *care*; **odium**, *hatred*.

vincet amor patriæ laudum-que immensa cupidō *love of country and boundless desire for praise will prevail*

NOTE.—**Amor patriæ** means here *love for one's country*—the country is the object loved. It might mean *the love one's country has for an individual*, in which case the country is the subject loving. **Patriæ** would then be subjective genitive.

Obs.—**Nostri, vestri** are used as genitive plural of **ego**, **tū** in dependence upon such words (cp. § 70).

274. Similis (like), dissimilis (unlike) usually take the genitive, especially when the comparison is with a person. They may also take the dative.

nulla rēs similis suī manet *nothing remains like itself*
Atticōrum similēs esse volumus *we wish to be like the Attic writers*
verī simile est *it is like the truth, it is probable*

VOCABULARY 55.

affic-iō, 3 (cpd. of **faciō**), *inflict* (lit. *affect with*), as in the phrase **aliquem poenā afficiō**, *I inflict punishment on somebody*
constat, 1, *impers.*, it is acknowledged

iūdic-i-um, -i, *n.*, *judgment*
lict-or, -ōris, *m.*, *lictor* (*magistrate's attendant*)
scel-us, -eria, *n.*, *crime*
soci-us, -i, *m.*, *ally* (subject of *Rome*), *companion*

EXERCISE 55.

A. Translate into English :—

Cicero Verrem accusat.

Verres accusatur quod innocentes condemnati sint. Neminem vestrum ignorare arbitror, iudices, Philodamum et eius filium caedis a Cornelio Nerone esse damnatos et eundem Neronem fuisse lictorem Verris. Vos oportet nunc audire qualis fuerit illa damnatio, et sociorum misereri. Verri quidem dissimillimus erat Nero qui causam cognovit: sed verebatur ne, hominibus absolutis, Verri displiceret; quare illi capitis sunt damnati. Tanti vero tibi, Nero, fuit favor huius tam improbi hominis ut sanguinem innocentium effundere velles? Iste vero, iudices, peritus est dicendi, sed reliqua in oratione curabo ut vos verborum istius obliti, scelerum tantum memores sitis.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Philodamus et filius eius accusati sunt?

Cur Nero accusatos homines non absolvit?

Cur orator causam sociorum suscepit?

Qualis homo fuit Verres, si oratori credimus?

Qua poena Verrem damnatum afficiendum fuisse putas?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. He says that he pities the poor and wretched. 2. Ought we not to condemn him to death if we wish to act justly? 3. I am not unmindful of the kindnesses which I formerly received from you. 4. He is very like Caesar, though he does not think so. 5. The rivers are full of fish, which no one is allowed to take. 6. When will you be ashamed of such ignorance? 7. The love of our country is the noblest of virtues. 8. He was enduring of toil and of cold; but he could not endure poverty.

(ii) Catiline was a man of noble birth, but of so bad a character that from the beginning of his manhood murder and wickedness of every kind delighted him. He had a body capable of enduring hunger, cold, toil: a sufficient ability of speech, but too little wisdom and no virtue.

LESSON 56.

Irregular substantives of fourth and fifth declensions ; the dative.

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES OF THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

Fourth Declension.

275. Dative and ablative plural. The following generally have dative and ablative plurals ending in -ubus instead of -ibus : **acus**, needle ; **arcus**, bow ; **artus**, limbs (pl. only) ; **lacus**, lake ; **partus**, birth ; **tribus**, tribe.

Six have -ubus : **arcus**, **acus**,
artus, **partus**, **tribus**, **lacus**.

Domus (*f.*), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but has some second declension forms.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>N. V.</i>	domus	domūs	
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domūs	domōs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs	domuum	domōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domui	domibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	domō	domibus	

Fifth Declension.

In **respublica** (*f.*), *commonwealth*, each part of the word is declined, viz. **rēs**, *thing*, and **publica**, feminine of the adjective

publicus, -a, -um, public. The plural is rarely used; the singular (sometimes written as two words) is thus declined :—

<i>N. V.</i>	respublica
<i>Acc.</i>	rempublicam
<i>Gen.</i>	reipublicae
<i>Dat.</i>	reipublicae
<i>Abl.</i>	rēpublicā

THE DATIVE.

276. Besides its ordinary use as the indirect object (§ 16) the **dative** expresses the person for whose **advantage** or **disadvantage** the action is done.

adēmit mihi libertātem	<i>he took away my liberty (to my disadvantage)</i>
dūcit avō turmās	<i>he leads the troops for his grandfather</i>
nīl mortālibus arduū est	<i>there is nothing difficult to mortals</i>

Note the difference between the English and the Latin idiom in the following :—

iungō mē Cicerōnis partibus	<i>I join Cicero's party (lit. myself to Cicero's party)</i>
mortem mihi minātus est	<i>he threatened me with death (lit. death to me)</i>
pecūniam nobis imperāvit	<i>he exacted money from us (lit. ordered money to us)</i>
frūmentum eis suppeditāvit	<i>he supplied them with corn</i>
erant Pompēiō duo filii	<i>Pompey had two sons (lit. there were two sons to Pompey)</i>

277. The dative is used with adjectives implying likeness (or unlikeness) or nearness :—

haec rēs mihi erat grāta	<i>this circumstance was pleasing to me</i>
Belgae proximī sunt Germānis	<i>the Belgae are nearest to the Germans</i>
nihil est mortī tam simile quam somnus	<i>nothing is so like death as sleep</i>

VOCABULARY 56.

adhib-eō, 2, *summon* (persons), *apply* (things)
admitt-ō, 3, *commit*
dēcern-ō, 3, *decide*
interdic-ō, 3, *forbid* (with ablative of thing forbidden)
prōcūr-ō, 1, *carry out, attend to*
stud-eō, 2, *pay heed*

contāgi-ō, -ōnis, *f.*, *contact*
dēcrēt-um, -i, *n.*, *decree*
dētriment-um, -i, *n.*, *injury*
disciplina, -ae, *f.*, *doctrine*
eques, -itis, *m.*, *horseman*
facin-us, -oris, *n.*, *offence*
fas, *n.*, *indecl.*, *right*
hērēditās, -ātis, *f.*, *inheritance*
plebs, **plēbis**, *f.*, *common folk*
sacrifici-um, -i, *n.*, *sacrifice*

EXERCISE 56.

A. Translate into English :—

Druides in honore magno apud Gallos habentur.

In Gallia eorum hominum, quibus honos datur, sunt duo genera. De his alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divipiis intersunt, sacrificia publica et privata procurant. Si quod facinus est admissum, idem rem decernunt. Eos autem, qui decreto non parent, ita sacrificiis interdicunt, ut horum sermonem omnes fugiant ne quid detrimenti ipsi ex contagione accipiant; his omnia iura adimunt, quo graviore poena afficiant. Disciplinam litteris mandare non fas est: verentur enim ne homines scribendi arti confidentes minus memoriae studeant.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quot genera hominum magni honoris in Gallia sunt?
 Quae res Druidibus cura sunt?
 Quam poenam dant ei qui Druidum decreto non parent?
 Quomodo posteris traditur disciplina Druidum?
 Cur Druides nolunt quicquam scribere?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Do not wage war upon the enemy until they have laid waste our lands. 2. He promised to deprive no one of his goods. 3. I

have two books, which I bought for a greater price than yours. 4. We were persuaded to go away into the country. 5. This tribe is nearer to the sea than the rest of the Germans. 6. He says that he never threatened any of the soldiers with death. 7. If you forgive me this fault, I will not sin again. 8. Why did you not join your friends when you had the chance? 9. Having levied hostages, he ordered the Aedui to supply the army with corn. 10. It is very pleasant to a father to hear the praises of his son.

LESSON 57.

The dative (continued).

278. Dative of the agent. The dative is used with the gerund, gerundive and sometimes with the perfect participle passive to denote the agent, *i.e.* the doer of the action, the doer being primarily the person in whose interest the action is done.

<i>cui nōn sunt auditae Dēmos-</i> <i>thenis vigiliae ?</i>	<i>who has not heard of the long</i> <i>watchings of Demosthenes ?</i>
<i>diligentia colenda est nobis</i>	<i>we must cultivate industry</i>

Obs.—If the verb already takes a dative of the indirect object (§ 16), the ordinary ablative of the agent with *ā* (ab) must be used to avoid ambiguity.

<i>consulibus ā nobis pārendum</i> <i>est</i>	<i>we must obey the consuls</i>
--	---------------------------------

279. Dative of purpose. The dative may express the purpose to which a thing is put; this dative is generally used after *sum*, *dō*, *mittō* and passive verbs of *calling* and *making*.

<i>diēs colloquiō dictus est</i>	<i>a day was appointed for a</i> <i>conference</i>
<i>trēs viri agris dividendis cre-</i> <i>āti sunt</i>	<i>three men were appointed for</i> <i>dividing the lands</i>

280. Many abstract substantives, denoting actions, results or feelings, are used predicatively in the **dative singular**, almost as if they were indeclinable adjectives. This use is known as the **predicative dative**.

avidum mare exitiō nautis est	<i>the greedy sea is destructive to sailors (lit. for destruction to sailors)</i>
equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Aedui misērunt	<i>the Aedui sent cavalry as an aid to Caesar</i>
hunc librum tibi dōnō dabō	<i>I will give you this book as a gift</i>
odiō sum Rōmānis	<i>I am hated by the Romans (lit. I am for hatred to the Romans)</i>

NOTE.—The commonest of these predicative datives are **auxiliō**, **curae**, **dōnō**, **impedimentō**, **odiō**, **praesidiō**, **subsidiō**, **usuī** (see Vocabulary). They are chiefly used with **sum**, **dō**, **dūcō** and **habēō** (*I consider*), and with verbs of motion.

VOCABULARY 57.

dēport-ō , 1, <i>carry away</i>	ēgregi-us , -a, -um, <i>excellent</i>
diru-ō , 3, <i>pull down</i>	ornāment-um , -ī, n., <i>adornment</i>
spoli-ō , 1, <i>I plunder</i>	quaest-us , -ūs, m., <i>gain</i>
tract-ō , 1, <i>I take in hand</i>	rēligi-ō , -ōnis, f., <i>scruple</i>
diūturn-us , -a, -um, <i>long (of time)</i>	Syrāculs-ae , -ārūm, f., <i>Syracuse</i>
ebur , -oris, n., <i>ivory</i>	tabul-a , -ae, f., <i>picture</i>
	violē-s , gen. -tis, <i>violent</i>

EXERCISE 57.

A. Translate into English :—

Marcellus cum Verre confertur.

Marcellus cum urbem Syracusae vi cepisset non putavit pulchritudinem eius omnino esse delendam; quare omnibus aedificiis sic pepercit, quasi ad ea defendenda non diruenda cum exercitu venisset. Etsi multa Romam deportavit quae ornamento urbi esse poterant, Syracusis tamen permulta et egregia reliquit. Verres tamen cum post pacem diuturnam eo venisset, violentiorem se praebuit quam ille victor belli: nulla enim religio ei impedimento erat quominus templa deorum spoliaret, in suam domum tabulas, aurum, ebur transportaret.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Marcellus omnia ornamenta Syracusis adimere noluit?

Quid quod Marcellus non sibi concessit, Verres fecit?

Cur Verri Syracusae tanta spolia obtulerunt?

Quid debuit Verres in provincia facere, si reipublicae et sociis non quaestui suo consulere voluisset?

Putasne Verre damnato spolia eis, quibus erant adempta reddita esse?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. This ought ye to have done, nor to have neglected the other.
2. The general ordered the soldier to choose a place for a camp.
3. There is no doubt that this fact was our salvation.
4. What was the hindrance to the Gauls' conquering?
5. They threw themselves at the feet of Pompey.
6. Fifteen men were appointed for making the sacrifices.
7. I do not desire to be a burden to any of my friends while I can work.
8. The laws of Caesar were approved by the Senate, no one dissenting.
9. We will choose as our leader the man whom we think worthiest.
10. He could not be persuaded by his friends that danger was near: "If the enemy capture the city," said he, "I shall be spared by them. Therefore I will not depart: it will be of great use to me to have been a friend of the enemy's general."

LESSON 58.

Irregular substantives.

Revise the substantives and adjectives of the first and second declensions, regular and irregular, in the Summary of Accidence.

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

281. Substantives belonging to two declensions.

Singular.

iūger-um, -ī, -ō, *n.* (2)
poēma, -tis, -tī, -te, *n.* (3)
vās, vās-is, -ī, -e, *n.* (3)
fam-ēs, -is, *abl.* -ē, *f.*, *hunger*
plēb-ēs, -ēī (5), *or* pleb-s, plēb-is
(3), *f.*, *common people* (*no plural*)

Plural.

iūger-a, -um, -ibus (3), *acre*
poēma-ta, -tōrum, -tīs (2), *poem*
vās-a, -ōrum, -īs (2), *vessel*

282. Substantives with two bases.

femur, *gen.* femor-is *or* femin-is, *n.*, *thigh*
pecus, pecud-is, *f.*, *cattle, sheep*, pecor-is, *n.*, *herd* (*collection of animals*)
requiēs, requiēt-is, *f.*, *rest* : *acc. sing.* also requiem, *abl. sing.* requiē

283. Substantives of two genders.

frēn-um, -ī, *n.*, *bit*, *pl.* frēn-i, *m.*, *or* frēn-a, *n.*
ioc-us, -ī, *m.*, *jest*, *pl.* ioc-i, *m.*, *or* ioc-a, *n.*
loc-us, -ī, *m.*, *place*, *pl.* loc-i, *m.*, *places* (*in books*), *topics* (*of discussion*), loc-a, *n.*, *districts, regions*

284. Defective substantives.

(a) Substantives used only in nominative and accusative singular, fās, *n.*, *right* ; nefās, *n.*, *wrong*.

(b) Substantives used in one case only (usually ablative)—*iussū*, *m.*, *by order (of)*, *iniussū*, *against the orders (of)*, *nātū*, *m.*, *by birth (e.g. nātū minor, younger)*, *sponte* (*meā*, *tuā*, *suā*), *of . . . free will*.

(c) Substantives used in most cases.

vis, *vim*, no genitive, no dative, *vī*, *violence*, plural *vīr-ēs*, *-ium*. *-ibus*, *strength*.

(*frux*), *corn*, *frūg-em*, *-is*, *-ī*, *-e*, and full plural.

Nominative *daps* (*dap-*), *meat*, *ops* (*op-*) not found: but all the other cases are in use, *e.g. opem*, *opis*, *opī*, *ope*, etc.

285. Words of which the plurals are used in a special sense.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>aed-ēs</i> , <i>-is</i> , <i>temple</i>	<i>aedēs</i> , <i>house</i>
<i>auxilium</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>auxilia</i> , <i>auxiliary forces</i>
<i>bonum</i> , <i>benefit</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>bona</i> , <i>goods</i>
<i>castrum</i> , <i>fort</i>	<i>castra</i> , <i>camp</i>
<i>cōpia</i> , <i>abundance</i>	<i>cōpiae</i> , <i>forces (troops)</i>
<i>finis</i> , <i>end</i>	<i>finēs</i> , <i>territory (lit. boundaries of the territory)</i>
<i>impedimentum</i> , <i>hindrance</i>	<i>impedimenta</i> , <i>baggage (military term)</i>
<i>littera</i> , <i>letter of alphabet</i>	<i>litterae</i> , <i>epistle, literature</i>
(<i>ops</i> not used) <i>opem</i> , <i>power</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>opēs</i> , <i>wealth, resources</i>
<i>vis</i> , <i>violence</i>	<i>vīrēs</i> , <i>strength</i>

286. Words used in plural only.

arm-a, *-ōrum*, *n.*, *arms*; *diviti-ae*, *-ārum*, *f.*, *riches*; *aestiva*, *hiberna* (*castra*), *n.*, *summer camp*, *winter camp*; *liber-ī*, *-ōrum*, *m.*, *children*; *moeni-a*, *-um*, *n.*, *walls*; *prec-ēs*, *-um*, *f.*, *prayers*; *spoli-a*, *-ōrum*, *n.*, *spoils*; *tenebr-ae*, *-ārum*, *f.*, *darkness*.

Abstract substantives, such as *iustitia*, *justice*, or names of materials, such as *aurum*, *gold*, are naturally only used in the singular, as in English: the poets often use the plural, however, *e.g. mella*, *honey*, *nivēs*, *snows*.

VOCABULARY 58.

<i>ege-ō</i> , 2, <i>I lack (with gen.)</i>	<i>fulv-us</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>yellow</i>
<i>palesco-ō</i> , <i>pallui</i> , 3, <i>I grow pale</i>	<i>lāmin-a</i> , <i>-ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>sheet (of metal)</i>
	<i>novit-ās</i> , <i>-ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>strangeness</i>
	<i>sax-um</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>stone</i>

EXERCISE 58.

A. Translate into English :—

Midas rex precatur ut id quod tangat aurum fiat.

Ille, male usurus donis, ait, "Effice, quidquid
Corpore contigero, fulvum vertatur in aurum."
Ilice detraxit virgam : virga aurea facta est.
Tollit humo saxum : saxum quoque palluit auro.
Vix spes ipse suas animo capit, aurea fingens
Omnia. Gaudenti mensas posuere ministri,
Exstructas dapibus, nec tostae frugis egentes.
Tum vero, sive ille sua cerealia dextra
Munera contigerat, cerealia dona rigeabant ;
Sive dapes avido convellere dente parabat,
Lamina fulva dapes, admoto dente, premebat.
Attonitus novitate mali, divesque, miserque
Effugere optat opes, et quae modo voverat odit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Midas oravit ut omnia manu contacta in aurum vertere-
rentur ?
Quid cum edere, cum bibere voluit, tactum est ?
Quid ministri in mensis regis posuerunt ?
Cur aqua et panis, ministris quoque non aurum facti sunt ?
Cur Midas has opes effugere cupiebat ?
Quid ex hac fabula nos ipsi discere debemus ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. The enemy were so frightened that they turned their backs in flight. 2. Proteus drove his herd to see the high mountains. 3. The tribunes of the common people were appointed to defend the citizens from injury. 4. The temple of Jupiter was built on the top of the hill. 5. I will go into my house to prepare dinner. 6. The prayers of the citizens persuaded the consuls to lead out their forces. 7. Without the general's orders, I was not able to finish the war. 8. Of his own accord he promised to give me a holiday.

(ii) A certain Damocles, when in conversation with King Dionysius, was talking much about the wealth and resources of a

king, and said that no one could ever be happier. "Are you willing," answered the king, "to try how great my happiness is?" When Damocles said he would gladly try, he was set on a golden couch and a table was piled with the choicest meats for him, so that he thought himself the luckiest of men. In the midst of the banquet, raising his eyes, he saw hanging over his head a sword, which Dionysius had ordered to be fastened by a very thin rope. Now he was afraid of stretching out his hand to the meats, and could do nothing but look up at the sword. "Let me go," said he to the king, "if this is your happiness, I do not want it any longer."

LESSON 59.

The locative.

Revise regular verbs in Summary of Accidence.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

287. The locative denotes :—

- (A) The place where an action is performed.
- (B) The time when an action is performed.
- (C) The value at which a person or thing is held.

(A) LOCATIVE OF PLACE.

288. The place where something happens is expressed by the locative of—

(i) Names of towns and small islands, belonging to the first and second declensions, and singular in form (e.g. *Rōma*, *Corinthus*, *Lānuvium*). The locative of the first declension ends in *-ae*, that of the second in *-ī*.

(ii) A few names of towns of the third declension singular, in which case the locative ends in *-ī*, e.g. *Carthāgō*, *Carthage*, locative *Carthāginī*.

(iii) A few other words, of which the most common are *domus* (*home*), *humus* (*ground*), *rūs* (*country*), *bellum* (*war*), *militia* (*warfare*), which have locatives *domī*, *humī*, *rūrī*, *bellī*, *militiae* respectively.

Rōmae rūs optās

at Rome you wish for the country

Pollex mihi Lānuvii praestō fuit

Pollex was ready for me at Lanuvium

militiae quam domī respublica melius administrāta est

public affairs were carried on better at the wars than at home

(B) LOCATIVE OF TIME.

289. The locative of time is rare; *vesperī*, from *vesper*, *evening*, is however common.

(C) LOCATIVE OF VALUE AND PRICE.

290. *Tantī*, *quantī*, meaning *at such a price* (or *value*), *at how great a price* (or *value*), and *magnī*, *parvī*, meaning *at a great value*, *at a small value*, are probably locatives. They may also be regarded as genitives (§ 272).

<i>quantī quisque sē ipse facit,</i> <i>tantī fit ab amicis</i>	<i>at whatever price each values</i> <i>himself, at this price is he</i> <i>valued by his friends</i>
<i>parvī sunt foris arma, nisi</i> <i>est consilium domī</i>	<i>arms are of little value abroad,</i> <i>unless there is good counsel at</i> <i>home</i>
<i>Pythius tantī hortōs vendidit</i> <i>quantī (vendere) voluit</i>	<i>Pythius sold the gardens at the</i> <i>price he wanted</i>

VOCABULARY 59.

<i>immol-ō, 1, I sacrifice</i>	<i>Pūnic-us, -a, -um, Carthaginian</i>
<i>sūd-ō, 1, I sweat</i>	<i>Saturnāli-a, -um, n., the</i> <i>Saturnalia (a festival in</i> <i>honour of Saturn)</i>
<i>cruent-us, -a, -um, blood-</i> <i>stained</i>	<i>spīc-a, -ae, f., an ear of corn</i>
<i>festus, -a, -um, holiday</i>	<i>spicul-um, -ī, n., a spear-point</i>
<i>prōdigi-um, -ī, n., a prodigy,</i> <i>miracle</i>	<i>in perpetuum (tempus), forever</i>

EXERCISE 59.

A. Translate into English :—

Prodigia.

Secundo anno Punici belli, cum nuntiatum esset Hannibalem Alpes exercitum transduxisse, et urbi appropinquare, magnus timor civibus incidit. Quem timorem augebant prodigia multis

simul locis nuntiata: nam in Sicilia militum aliquot spicula arserunt: litora maris crebris ignibus fulsisse dicebantur: Praeneste ardentis lapides de coelo ceciderant, et Arpis visus est pugnans cum luna sol: et Capenae duae lunae eodem die ortae erant: et Antii a metentibus cruentae spicae caesae: et Faleriis de nubibus deciderat lamina auri in qua scripta erant haec verba "Mars telum suum concutit." Per idem tempus Romae signum Martis Appia via sudavit. Inde minoribus etiam dictu prodigiis fides est habita. Quare, decemvirorum iussu decretum est ut ad aedem Saturni immolaretur et per Romam Saturnalia diem et noctem clamarentur. Quem diem populus Romanus festum habere et servare in perpetuum est iussus.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Quando Alpes exercitum Hannibal transduxit?

Quae res timorem Romanorum auxit?

Quid de Marte Livius scribit?

Quis credit talia umquam accidisse?

Quomodo Romani deos placaverunt?

Num putas pueros Romanos festum diem habere noluisse?

Nonne sunt pueri Angli Romanis similes?

C. Translate into Latin:—

1. Hannibal, having left his winter quarters, marched to Arretium. 2. The Roman commander was defeated by Hannibal near a lake. 3. The battle was fought fiercely for three hours. 4. 15,000 Romans were slain; 10,000 were scattered in rout through all Etruria and made for (petō) Rome by different roads. 5. News was received that the Carthaginian fleet bringing provisions from Africa to Ostia had been wrecked in a storm. 6. The dictator pitched his camp at Allifae and sent cavalry forward to Rome to defend the walls. 7. While these events were taking place in Italy, the consul with 120 ships transported three legions into Africa. 8. In Carthage there was great fear, in Rome great joy. 9. At Cannae owing to the thoughtlessness and rashness of the general another great disaster befell the Roman army. 10. "Take this horse," he said, "while you have some strength left, and do not make this day more gloomy by the death of a consul."

LESSON 60.

Greek substantives ; the ablative.

Revise substantives of the third, fourth, fifth declensions, and adjectives of the third declension (§§ 48-51).

GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

291. Greek proper names and other Greek substantives, when used in Latin, are sometimes declined like Latin words, but often retain the Greek inflections, especially in the accusative case.

First declension.

Examples : **Aenēās** (*m.*), *Aeneas* ;
Tydidēs (*m.*), *son of Tydeus*.

	Singular.
<i>Nom.</i>	Aenē-ās
<i>Voc.</i>	Aenē-ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Aenē-ān
<i>Gen.</i>	Aenē-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Aenē-ae
<i>Abl.</i>	Aenē-ā

	Singular.
<i>Nom.</i>	Tydid-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Tydid-ē
<i>Acc.</i>	Tydid-ēn
<i>Gen.</i>	Tydid-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Tydid-ae
<i>Abl.</i>	Tydid-ē

Second declension.

Example : **Dēlos** (*f.*), *Delos*

	Singular.
<i>Nom.</i>	Dēl-os
<i>Voc.</i>	Dēl-e
<i>Acc.</i>	Dēl-on
<i>Gen.</i>	Dēl-i
<i>D. Abl.</i>	Dēl-o

Third declension.

Examples : **lampas** (*f.*), *a torch* ; **heros** (*m.*), *a hero*.

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i>	lampa-s	lampad-es	<i>N. V.</i>	hērō-s	hērō-es
<i>Acc.</i>	lampad-a	lampad-as	<i>Acc.</i>	hērō-a	hērō-as
<i>Gen.</i>	lampad-is	lampad-um	<i>Gen.</i>	hērō-is	hērō-um
<i>Dat.</i>	lampad-i	lampad-ibus	<i>Dat.</i>	hērō-i	hērō-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	lampad-e	lampad-ibus	<i>Abl.</i>	hērō-e	hērō-ibus

Substantives of the Greek third declension with some Latin second declension forms

	Singular.		Singular.
<i>Nom.</i>	Sōcrat-ēs	<i>Nom.</i>	Atr-ētis
<i>Voc.</i>	Sōcrat-ē	<i>Voc.</i>	Atr-ēū
<i>Acc.</i>	Sōcrat-ēn	<i>Acc.</i>	Atr-eum or -ea
<i>Gen.</i>	Sōcrat-i or -is	<i>Gen.</i>	Atr-eī or -eos
<i>Dat.</i>	Sōcrat-i	<i>Dat.</i>	Atr-eō or -eī
<i>Abl.</i>	Sōcrat-ē	<i>Abl.</i>	Atr-eō

THE ABLATIVE.

292. The ablative of place.—The ablative is used without a preposition to express the place where something takes place, in the case of (a) names of towns or small islands belonging to the third declension or (if plural in form) to the first or second declension; (b) substantives qualified by *medius* (*middle of*) and *tōtus* (*the whole of*); (c) the substantives *locus* (*place*), *pars* (*part*), *terra* (*land*), *mare* (*sea*).

(a) hic Tibure nātus est, ille Gabiis	<i>one was born at Tibur, the other at Gabii</i>
Athēnis Cratippum audiē- bam	<i>at Athens I used to hear Cratippus' lectures</i>
(b) carcer mediā urbe aedifi- cātur	<i>a prison is being built in the middle of the city</i>
tōtis castris undique ad consulēs currunt	<i>throughout the camp they rush from all quarters to the con- suls</i>
(c) ōrātiō stulta est multis locis	<i>the speech is in many passages foolish</i>
utrāque parte Tiberis populātōrēs oppressit	<i>on each side of the Tiber he sup- pressed plunderers</i>
terrā et mari bellum comparat	<i>he prepares war by land and sea</i>

Obs.—*Locis* and *parte* are always, *locō* generally, qualified by an adjective.

293. With the exceptions mentioned above (§ 292) the ablative denoting place where must be used with a preposition.

Caesar in Galliā hiberna constituit	Caesar fixed his winter quarters in Gaul
prō aede Castoris sedēbat	he was sitting in front of the temple of Castor
Albae constiterant, in urbe opportūnā	they had stopped at Alba, a convenient city

Obs.—The preposition *must* be used in the case of examples like the last ; *urbs* could not be made to agree with the locative *Albae*.

294. The ablative of respect is used to limit the application of a substantive, adjective, or verb.

nōn tōtā rē sed temporibus errasti	you have made a mistake, not as to the whole matter, but as to dates
hī omnēs linguā institūtis lēgibus inter sē differunt	these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws

VOCABULARY 60.

car-ō, carnis, <i>f.</i> , flesh	longē, far, far off
hosp-es, -itis, <i>c.</i> , guest	
vict-us, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , livelihood, food	

EXERCISE 60.

A. Translate into English :—

Germanorum mores.

Germanorum vita omnis in venatione ac re militari agitur ; agri culturam tam parvi faciunt ut maior pars victus in lacte et carne consistat. Nemini sunt agri proprii, sed principes quotannis cuique tantum agri quantum eis placet tribuunt, et proximo anno alii agros possident. Cur hoc fiat, haud satis constat.

Hospitem violare fas non putant : quicumque ad eos venit, eum ab iniuria prohibent et in domos accipiunt. Ita vivunt Germani ut Gallos longe virtute superent ; olim tamen Galli bello Germanos devicerunt ; sed nunc Galli minus animo vigent ; unde factum est ut in finibus Gallorum agros latos Germani nunc habeant.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Germani lacte et carne vescabantur ?

Quomodo agri cuique tribuuntur ?

Quomodo erga hospites se gerunt Germani ?

Quomodo vita Galli Germanis sunt dissimiles ?

Cur Germani agros Gallorum capere potuerunt ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. At home and in the field, on sea and on land, he was the same as he had ever been. 2. While Horatius the poet was learning philosophy at Athens, Brutus called him to the field of battle. 3. At the bottom of the hill the Romans fortified a camp for four legions. 4. What celebrated man was born at Gades? 5. In the spring men plough the field; in the autumn they reap the harvest. 6. At the fifth hour of the day, news was brought that the enemy had been conquered in a great battle. 7. The Gauls differ from the Germans in disposition and in manners. 8. In the little town of Arpinum, two of the most celebrated Romans were born. 9. Catiline gathered together many men like himself, a thing very easy to be done; for all those whose hopes were placed in the downfall of the republic made Catiline their leader. 10. The priests of Jupiter used to sacrifice cows, sheep, and swine in his temple at Rome. 11. Let him remember that the army is the Senate's, not his own. 12. The Belgae are nearest to the Germans, with whom they are always waging war. 13. The heroes are telling the Greeks to prepare war by land and sea. 14. He orders to be brought from Spain those things which are useful for building ships. 15. At Corinth a great river used to flow in the middle of the town.

LESSON 61.

The ablative (continued).

Revise pronouns and numerals.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

295. The ablative is used to express the definite price at which a thing is bought or sold (cp. genitive of value. § 272).

hortos vendidit Pŷthius quadragintā talentis

Pythius sold his gardens for forty talents

296. The verbs **utor**, *I use*; **potior**, *I get possession of*; **fungor**, *I perform*; **fruor**, *I enjoy*; **vescor**, *I eat*; the adjectives **dignus**, *worthy*; **indignus**, *unworthy*; **liber**, *free*; are constructed with an ablative. **Opus est**, *there is need*, is constructed with an ablative of the thing needed and a dative of the person needing.

impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt

our men gained possession of the baggage and camp

fungar ināni mūnere

I shall perform a fruitless task

recordātiōne nostrae amicitiae fruor

I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship

Hannibal, cum victoriā ūti posset, frui māluit

Hannibal, although he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it

dignum laude virum Mūsa vetat mori

the Muse forbids the man who is worthy of praise to die

nōbis magistrātibus opus est

we have need of magistrates (lit. there is work to be done with magistrates for us)

297. The ablative is often used to express the manner in which something is done; in this sense the substantive in the ablative must also be accompanied by (1) *cum*, *with*, or (2) *an adjective*, or (3) *both*, except in the case of certain words, of which the most important are:—

modō, dolō, silentiō, clamōre,
vī, ratiōne, fraude, arte, mōre,
iniuriā, consensū, cāsu, iūre,

their meanings being *in a way, by fraud, in silence, with a shout, by force, by reason, by fraud, by art, in the manner, wrongly, by consent, by chance, rightly.*

<i>nōs illud idem cum pāce</i> <i>agēmus</i>	<i>we will do that same thing</i> <i>peacefully</i>
<i>summā (cum) celeritāte ad</i> <i>exercitum rediit</i>	<i>he returned to the army with</i> <i>the greatest speed</i>
<i>incrēdibili celeritāte dē vic-</i> <i>tōriā Caesaris fāma per-</i> <i>fertur</i>	<i>with incredible swiftness the</i> <i>news is brought of Caesar's</i> <i>victory</i>
<i>aut vī aut fraude fit iniūria</i>	<i>wrong is done by force or</i> <i>fraud</i>

298. The ablative of description is always accompanied by an adjective, and usually expresses an external characteristic, less often a mental quality.

<i>Britanni capillō sunt prō-</i> <i>missō</i>	<i>the Britons are long-haired</i>
<i>Catilina fuit magnā vī et</i> <i>animi et corporis, sed in-</i> <i>geniō malō prāvōque</i>	<i>Catiline was a man of great</i> <i>mental and bodily power,</i> <i>but of an evil and corrupt</i> <i>disposition</i>

299. The ablative of measure indicates that by which one thing differs from another; such difference includes distance in space and interval in time. This ablative is specially common with comparatives, and must be distinguished from the ablative of comparison (§ 103).

<i>Caesar legiōnem passibus</i> <i>ducentis ab eō tumulō con-</i> <i>stituit</i>	<i>Caesar halted the legion 200</i> <i>paces from that mound</i>
--	---

proelium equestre paucis ante diēbus erat factum	<i>a cavalry engagement had taken place a few days before</i>
quō (quantō) magis cōnāris, eō (tantō) facilius fiet	<i>the more you try, the easier it will become</i>
lūna multō minor est sōle	<i>the moon is much smaller than the sun</i>
turris decem pedibus quam mūrus altior erat	<i>the tower was ten feet higher than the wall</i>

VOCABULARY 61.

concili-ō, 1, I win over	bacul-um, -ī, n., stick
dist-ō, 1, I am distant	callid-us, -a, -um, crafty
perspic-iō, -spexī, -spectum, 3, I consider, look into	dol-us, -ī, m., guile
	prin-ceps, -cipis, m., chief man
	superbi-a, -ae, f., arrogance

EXERCISE 61.

A Translate into English :—

Tarquinius rex, fraude ac dolo, bellum contra Gabinos illatum gessit. Filium natu minimum Gabios misit, qui simularet se odio patris ad hostes fugisse : hic paulatim favore civium sibi conciliato, dux lectus est et bellum tam feliciter gessit ut omnes eum sibi dono deorum esse missum crederent. Tum nuntio Romam ad patrem misso—Roma enim fere decem milibus passuum a Gabiis distabat—rogavit quid se facere vellet. Rex, cum nuntium in hortum duxisset, nihil respondit, baculo tantum summa florum capita decussit. Tum nuntius, cum rediisset, nuntiavit regem vel ira vel superbia nihil dixisse. Sed filius, re perspecta, principibus Gabinorum capita decussit et urbe potitus, patri tradidit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

- Quomodo se in bello contra Gabinos callidum rex praestitit ?
 Quomodo se gessit filius, cum Gabinis praefuisset ?
 Quid simulavit filius ut Gabinos deciperet ?
 Quomodo rex filio ostendit quid fieri vellet ?
 Num urbe potitus esset, nisi principes interfecisset ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. I hope that he will not return home with a fever. 2. The poet Ennius was very great in genius, but unskilled in art. 3. By the consent of the jurymen, he was acquitted of theft. 4. The citizens resolved that he should be punished after the fashion of their ancestors. 5. He told us that he had met an old man with a long beard. 6. The sun is many parts larger than the whole earth. 7. Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents. 8. The light which we enjoy was given us by the gods. 9. Moved by anger, he said that he had no need of my help.

(ii) The Helvetii were enclosed by very high mountains on one side, by the deep river Rhône on the second side, and on the third by the Rhine, which divides their territories from the Germans. Hence it happened that with all the greater difficulty they waged war upon their neighbours. Induced by the words of their chief and by the want of land, they resolved to seek wider territories.

LESSON 62.

The ablative (continued).

Revise the accusative, genitive, dative, locative, and ablative usages.

THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

300. The place whence (or from which) motion takes place is expressed by the **ablative without a preposition** in the case of a town or small island, or of **domō**, *from home*; **humō**, *from the ground*; **rūre**, *from the country*; or (sometimes) of verbs compounded with **ā** (or **ab**), **dē**, **ex**.

Pompēius Lūceriā proficiscitur Canusium

Pompey sets out from Luca¹ to Canusium

multi domō exire nōlēbant

many were unwilling to leave home

Caesar omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūcit

Caesar leads all his forces out of the camp

301. In other cases this ablative requires a preposition.

dūcite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, dūcite Daphnim

draw Daphnis, my songs, draw him home from the city

Helvētīi ē finibus suis exeunt

the Helvetii go forth from their territories

hic locus aequō spatiō ā castris Ariōvistī et Caesaris aberat

this spot was equally distant from the camp of Caesar and that of Ariovistus

plērique Belgae ā Germāniis sunt orti

most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans

Vercingetorix ex oppidō Gergoviā expellitur

Vercingetorix is driven out of the town of Gergovia

302. The ablative also expresses the source from which an act proceeds. A preposition is required in this instance also. The ablative of the agent is an extension of this use. The act is regarded as coming from the doer of it.

statua ex aurō facta est	<i>the statue was made of gold</i>
fiēs dē arātōre consul	<i>you shall be made consul after being a ploughman</i>
Xerxēs ā nuntiō certior factus est	<i>Xerxes was informed by a messenger</i>

303. The ablative is used to express origin in the case of a substantive denoting family, etc.

hic adulescens familiā amplissimā nātus est	<i>this youth was born of a very noble family</i>
--	---

VOCABULARY 62.

abdic-ō me, 1, I retire (lit. <i>I withdraw myself</i>)	consulāt-us, -ūs, m., consulship
collēg-a, -ae, m., colleague	imperi-um, -ī, n., supreme power

EXERCISE 62.

A. Translate into English :—

Rex Tarquinius Roma expellitur.

Populo convocato Brutus orationem fecit et caede regis boni Servii Tullii et sceleribus ceteris, quae a rege Tarquinio erant facta, memoratis, ad tantam iram cives movit ut regem ex urbe cum uxore et liberis exire iuberent. Hi Roma expulsi sese ad Etruscos contulerunt. A regibus Romae regnatum erat annos ducentos ab initio urbis. Tum creati sunt a populo duo consules, qui imperium regis unius haberent: eorum potestas quod unius anni erat, potestate regia erat minor. Brutus, qui cives a dominorum superbia liberaverat, primus consul factus est: et tanto odio civibus erat nomen Tarquiniolorum ut Collatinus, Bruti collega in consulatu, quod familia Tarquiniolorum erat natus, consulatu se abdicaret. Qui vero, veritus ne ab urbe pelleretur, cum rebus suis omnibus sua sponte urbe excessit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Romani contra Tarquinium ira moti sunt?

Quo ab urbe pulsī exsules se contulerunt?

Quamdiu Romae erat regnatum?

Quibus potestatem regiam populus mandavit?

Cur Brutus primus consul factus est?

Cur Collatinus ab urbe discessit?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth. 2. The temple stands five miles away from the town of Gabii. 3. When my son returns from the country, send him to me at Athens. 4. I desire to be freed from the fear of death. 5. Plautus writes that the shirt is nearer than the coat. 6. He complained that he had been hurt by a boy with a stone. 7. We must endure much worse things than these, if we wish to be thought brave. 8. Though we are made up of body and soul, yet the soul is worth more than the body.

(ii) While the city of Rome was being besieged by the Etruscans, a noble youth whose name was Mucius resolved of his own accord to go to the camp of the enemy, and to slay the leader of the enemy. When, however, he had entered the camp, fearing to ask which was the king, he drew his sword and slew the man whom first he met, and so instead of the king he killed the secretary. Being led to the king and being asked why he had done this, "I am a Roman citizen," he answered, "and there are many others of equal bravery: see of what little account I make the pain of the body." Having said this, he thrust his hand into the fire. Then the king, moved by admiration and fear, ordered him to be set free and led his army away from the walls of Rome to his own city.

LESSON 63.

Prepositions.

Revise the conjugations of **possum**, **volō**, etc. (§§ 151-73).

PREPOSITIONS.

304. Prepositions were originally adverbs; some of them never lost their adverbial use, but most of them became associated in course of time with nouns and pronouns in certain cases (chiefly the accusative and ablative), and as they were usually placed before (**praepositus**) the noun or pronoun obtained their name of preposition (**praepositiō**). They also were often prefixed to verbs and so helped to form compound verbs.

305. Most Latin prepositions, therefore (like all English ones), take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions, and a few take either case.

I. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ad, to
adversum or } opposite, towards
adversus }
ante, before
apud, with (a person), at the
house of
circā, } around
circum, }
circiter, about (of number)
cis, } this side of
citrā, }
contrā, against
ergā, towards (a person)
extrā, outside
infrā, below

inter, between, among
intrā, within
iuxtā, close by
ob, because of
penes, in the power of
per, through
pōne, behind
post, after
praeter, beyond
prope, near
propter, near, on account of
secundum, following on
suprā, above
trans, across
ultrā, the other side of

The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the accusative only :—

ante, post, cis, citrā, ultrā,
trans and per ; adversus, contrā ;
praeter, pōne ; infrā, suprā ;
circum, circiter and circā ;
propter, ob, secundum, ergā ;
ad and apud, prope, iuxtā ;
penes, inter, intrā, extrā.

Ante, circā, citrā, contrā, intrā, infrā, iuxtā, post, suprā, ultrā are often used as adverbs.

VOCABULARY 63.

consido, -sēdi, -sessum, 3,	vindic-ō, 1, <i>I avenge, punish</i>
<i>I encamp</i>	
pāc-ō, 1, <i>I pacify, subdue</i>	inexpugnābil-is, -e, <i>impreg-</i>
refer-ō (cpd. offerō), <i>I narrate,</i>	<i>nale, impassable</i>
<i>relate</i>	vad-um, -i, n., <i>ford</i>

EXERCISE 63.

A. Translate into English :—

Bellum Macedonicum.

Belli adversus Philippum, Macedoniae regem, hae causae referuntur : duo iuvenes peregrini Athenas venerant et in templum Cereris intraverant. Ob hoc tantum nefas occisi sunt. Legati igitur ab amicis ad Philippum ad vindicandos illos missi sunt, et breve post tempus Athenae obsessae sunt. Quod bellum post pacem Carthaginensibus datam paucis mensibus coeptum est, et P. Sulpicio consuli mandatum, qui exeroitu in Macedoniam ducto, equestribus proeliis Philippi copias fugavit. Rex igitur cum ad flumen quoddam venisset, vallo super ripam ducto, consedit, et obiectis per omnia vada operibus, viam natura difficilem, arte inexpugnabilem se fecisse existimavit. Sed Romani contra spem Philippi, testudine facta, copias eius deturbaverunt. Tandem consul, agros hostium populus, in loca iam pacata quae trans montes erant, ad Apolloniam copias reduxit.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Romani in Philippum bellum intulerunt ?

Quod nefas iuvenes commiserant ?

Quem Romani ducem creaverunt ?

Ubi Philippus castra posuit ?

Cur ea inexpugnabilia esse putavit ?

Ad quem urbem consul iter fecit ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Darius, king of the Persians, came into Europe with a huge army. 2. After the death of Aeneas, Ascanius, his son, received the kingdom. The latter transferred the seat of government to another place and there founded a city. 3. They say that Damon and Phintias were so friendly to one another, that when one was condemned to death, the other said he would die also. 4. After that battle he lived several years, envying no one, doing good to all whenever he could. 5. The Gauls stayed for three days near the camp and then departed. 6. The Romans were angry with Philip both on account of his treachery towards their allies and because of the reinforcements he had sent to Hannibal in Africa. 7. I ask you, citizens, whether you are willing to send over our legions into Macedonia or prefer to await the arrival of the enemy on this side of the Adriatic. 8. When they saw the enemy concealed behind the rampart, they came right up to the fortifications and hurled their spears into the camp. 9. Those who live beyond the Rhine and near the sea are crossing into Gaul. 10. If you walk along the bank, you will see, close by a huge stone, an oak tree which is about 200 years old.

LESSON 64.

306. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

ā (before a consonant)	} <i>from,</i> <i>by</i>	palam , <i>in the presence of</i>
ab (before a vowel or h)		prae , <i>in front of</i>
cōram , <i>in the presence of</i>		prō , <i>before, instead of</i>
cum , <i>with</i>		procul , <i>far from</i>
dē , <i>down from, concerning</i>		sine , <i>without</i>
ē or ex , <i>out of, in consequence of</i>		tenus , <i>as far as</i>

ā, ab, abs, cum, ex and **ē**,
cōram, palam, procul, dē,
sine, tenus, prō and **prae**.

NOTE 1.—**Ex** may be used before vowels or consonants : **e** before consonants only.

NOTE 2.—**Palam** and **procul** are used as adverbs.

NOTE 3.—**Tenus** is placed after its noun ; **cum** follows pronouns (personal and relative), and it becomes enclitic, *e.g.* **tēcum**.

307. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

in	{ <i>with accusative, into</i> <i>with ablative, in</i>
sub	{ <i>with accusative (denoting motion up to from beneath), up to</i> <i>with ablative (denoting rest under), below</i>
super	(with ablative rare and mostly poetic), <i>over</i>

If **in** and **sub** should *motion* show,
With them accusative must go ;
But when they mean *rest* at a place,
The ablative's the proper case.

303. Prepositions compounded with verbs

(1) Retain their simple meaning, *e.g.* **abeō**, *I go away*, **adeō**, *I approach*, **exeō**, *I go out*, **subeō**, *I come up to*;

(2) Have an intensive force, *e.g.* **collaudō** (*cum-laudō*), *I praise highly*, **compleō**, *I fill up*, **dēbellō**, *I finish off (a war)*.

It is essential to note the force of the preposition, but it is necessary to consult a dictionary to ascertain the particular shade of meaning expressed, especially as compound verbs are more frequently used by Latin writers than simple verbs. It will be found that most of the prepositions have many other than the merely local meanings given above, and that their meanings in compounds have been developed from these idiomatic usages.

VOCABULARY 64.

accend-ō , 3, <i>I set alight</i>	armātūra levis , <i>light-armed troops</i>
incid-ō , 3, <i>I fall in with</i>	fallax , -ācis, <i>cunning</i>
incurr-ō , 3, <i>I run into</i>	fasc-is , -is, <i>m., bundle of fag-gots</i>
praelig-ō , 1, <i>I fasten in front</i>	fa-x , -cis, <i>f., torch</i>
proru-ō , 3, <i>I rush forward</i>	iug-um , -i, <i>n., peak</i>
reflūc-ō , 2, <i>I flash, shine</i>	virg-a , -ae, <i>f., twig</i>
apparāt-us , -ūs, <i>m., preparation</i>	passim , <i>adv., in all directions</i>

EXERCISE 64.

A. Translate into English :—

De quodam Hannibalis consilio.

Fallacis consilii talis apparatus fuit: faces ex agris collectae fascisque virgarum praeligantur cornibus boum quos plurimos inter ceteram praedam Hannibal agebat. Ubi ad imos montes ventum est, signo dato boves praemissi sunt. Qui flammis a capite reluculentibus caloreque ad ima cornua adveniente territi huc et illuc proriebant, ita ut silvas undique accensas esse putavisses, atque homines passim discurrere. Romani igitur ubi in summis montibus

et super se ignes conspexere, circumventos se esse rati, terga vert-
erunt. Alii vero in quosdam boves e suis gregibus vagatos incidebant,
alii levi armaturae hostium incurrebant. Luce prima sub iugo
montis proelium acre fuit inter Hispanos ab Hannibale praemissos
et nostros a Fabio ex castris eductos. Post haec ambo duces castra
posuerunt, Poenus in campo circum Allifas iacente, Romanus in
locis superioribus quae contra Hannibalem erant.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Qualis fuit apparatus consilii Hannibalis ?

Unde aderant boves Hannibali ?

Quam ob rem boves proruebant ?

Quid Romani ignibus conspectis fecerunt ?

Quo loco Hannibal castra posuit ?

Quo loco Romani castra posuerunt ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. A great battle was fought (made) near Cannae, which filled the Romans with grief and terror. 2. The country on this side of the Alps was called by the Romans Cisalpine Gaul. 3. By means of spies Caesar found out how many soldiers the leader of the Germans had with him. 4. He tried to do many things, which were beyond his strength. 5. Having arrived at the camp, he set out as quickly as possible against the enemy. 6. If you oppose yourself to a stronger man, you will have to yield. 7. To die in defence of our altars and our hearths is worthy of Roman citizens. 8. Concerning those words which you have used against me, I will say that it is through me that you are alive to-day.

(ii) Publius Decius became consul in the Latin wars. When he saw that fortune was favouring the enemy, he resolved to die himself on behalf of the State, in order that through his death victory might be on the side of the Romans. So he urged his horse into the midst of the foe and met death of his own accord, while fighting for the safety of his country.

LESSON 65.

Conjunctions.

309. Conjunctions are of two kinds—**coordinating** and **subordinating**. A coordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

310. The following are in common use:—

et		sed	
-que (enclitic)	} <i>and</i>	autem (not placed first)	} <i>but</i>
ac (before a consonant only)		at	
atque (before any letter)		ceterum	
etiam	} <i>also</i>	quod (only with si)	
necnon		verum	
quoque		aut	} <i>or</i>
et . . . et	} <i>both . . .</i>	vel	
cum (or quum) . . . tum		-ve (enclitic), or	} <i>either . . . or</i>
nec or neque, nor, and . . . not	} <i>neither . . . nor</i>	aut . . . aut	
nec . . . nec		vel . . . vel	
neque . . . neque		nēve or neu (used when the	} <i>nor</i>
tamen (seldom placed first), yet,		first member is intro-	
however		duced by nē)	
		sive . . . sive	} <i>whether . . . or</i>
		seu . . . seu	
		enim (not placed first)	} <i>for</i>
		nam	
		namque	

Obs. 1.—The enclitics **-que**, *and*, **-ve**, *or*, are added to the second of the two words they join, or to the first word of the second sentence or clause.

arma virumque canō	<i>I sing of arms and a hero</i>
quid tū es tristis, quidve es alacris?	<i>why are you sad, or why are you cheerful?</i>

Obs. 2.—**Autem** is usually the second word in the sentence or clause it introduces.

nihil scribō, legō autem libentissimē	<i>I write nothing, but I read with great pleasure</i>
--	--

So also **enim**, *and* (unless emphatic) **tamen**.

Obs. 3.—**Quoque** follows the substantive or pronoun on which emphasis is placed, and must not be used as an ordinary conjunction connecting sentences.

quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeceḋunt	<i>for which reason the Helvetii, too, excel the rest of the Gauls in valour</i>
--	--

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

(*With indicative or subjunctive.*)

sī , <i>if</i>	
nisi or nī , <i>unless</i>	
etsī	
etiāmsī	<i>although</i>
cum	<i>with indic., when</i>
	<i>with subj., when, since,</i>
	<i>although</i>
antequam	<i>before that</i>
priusquam	<i>before that</i>
postquam	<i>after that</i>
dum	<i>with indic., whilst</i>
dōnec	<i>with subj., until</i>
quoad	
quod	<i>because</i>
quia	

(*With indicative only.*)

quamquam	<i>although</i>
quoniam	<i>since</i>
quandoquidem	<i>since</i>
simul&c	<i>as soon as</i>
simulatque	<i>as soon as</i>
ubi	<i>when</i>
ut (or utī)	<i>when</i>
	(<i>With subjunctive only.</i>)
ut (or utī)	<i>in order that, so that,</i>
	<i>although</i>
nē	<i>lest</i>
quō	<i>that (thereby)</i>
	(<i>With comparative.</i>)
quōminus	<i>that (thereby) . . . not</i>
quin	<i>that (thereby) . . . not, but</i>
	<i>that</i>
quamvis	<i>although</i>
licet	

311. All the relative pronouns and the adverbs given in the tables in §§ 199, 200, have a conjunctive force, since they join a dependent clause to a principal sentence ; so also have the interrogative pronouns and the interrogative adverbs given in the same table, when they introduce an indirect question, for they, too, then join a dependent to a principal clause. The same is true of *cūr*, *why* (= *quā rē*, *owing to what circumstance*), *num*, *whether*, *utrum . . . an*, *whether . . . or*, when these introduce an indirect question.

VOCABULARY 65

confici-ō, 3, *I make*
corripī-ō, 3, *I chide*
concid-ō, 3, *I fall*
resist-ō, 3, *I stop, draw back*
spond-eō, 2, *I betroth*
vād-ō, 3, *I go on, proceed*

aurig-a, -ae, *m.*, *charioteer*
carpent-um, -ī, *n.*, *carriage*
Esquili-a, -arum, *f. pl.*, *the*
Esquiline Hill (one of the
 seven hills of Rome)

invit-us, -a, -um, *unwilling*
penāt-es, -ium, *m. pl.*, *home*
 (lit. *gods of the home*)
prin-ceps, -cipis, *adj.*, *foremost*
rēgi-a, -ae, *f.*, *palace* (*domus*
understood)
rot-a, -ae, *f.*, *wheel*
sanguinolent-us, -a, -um, *blood-*
stained

EXERCISE 65.

A. Translate into English :—

(a) *Interfecto rege Servio, filia domum init.*

Ipsē sub Esquiliis, ubi erat sua regia, caesus

Concidit in dura sanguinolentus humo.

Filia carpento patrios initura penates,

Ibat per medias alta feroxque vias.

Corpus ut aspexit, lacrimis auriga profusis

Restitit. Hunc tali corripit illa sono :

“Vadis, an expectas pretium pietatis amarum ?

Duc, inquam, invitas ipsa per ora rotas !”

(b) *Horatius sororem interficit.*

Cum Curiatios interfecisset, princeps Horatius ibat spolia prae se gerens : cui soror virgo, quae sponsa uni ex Curiatiis fuerat, obvia ante portam urbis fuit : cognitoque super humeros fratris pallio sponsi, quod ipsa confecerat, solvit crines et maesta nomine mortuum appellat. Movet feroci iuveni animum lamentatio sororis in victoria sua tantoque gaudio publico : striato itaque gladio transfigit puellam.

B. Oral Exercise :—

(a) Ubi rex est caesus ?

Quid filia caesi regis aurigam facere coegit ?

Cur filia ita se erga patrem gessit ?

(b) Cur soror Horatii, fratre conspecto, lamentata est ?

Cur Horatius Curiatorum spolia prae se gerebat ?

Cur Horatius sororem interfecit ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) Neither you nor I shall ever see so great a man in this life. 2. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time. 3. Do not open the book till you reach your home, and do not show it to a ~~man~~ 3. 4. I, too, have business at the harbour. 5. Although I have seen the man I do not remember what he is like. 6. I should like to know whether you have done this, or your brother. 7. Because you are so industrious I will give you this reward. 8. Lest he might meet his enemy, he departed quickly from the city.

(ii) Regulus, a Roman general, having been captured by the Carthaginians, was sent back to Rome in order that he might ransom the Carthaginian captives ; but he advised the senate not to send them back. "I prefer," said he, "myself to return to certain death, for we who have been captured in war are not worthy of being ransomed." And so—although his friends begged him, although his wife and children with tears tried to keep him back—valuing honour more than life, he returned to Carthage to be put to death.

LESSON 66.

Sub-dependent Clauses.

312. The complex sentences with which we have dealt so far have consisted of one principal clause and one dependent or subordinate clause. The latter clause has been either an accusative with the infinitive, a substantive clause, an indirect question or command, a relative clause, or an adverbial clause. But just as in English a subordinate or dependent clause may itself be complex, *i.e.* may have a clause or clauses dependent upon it, so in Latin: *e.g.* *dicīt A[eum stultum esse] B[qui hoc faciat]*. Here clause *B*, which is adjectival, qualifying *eum*, is dependent upon clause *A*, which is a substantival clause, object of *dicīt*.

If the new clause depends on an accusative with the infinitive or an indirect question or indirect command, the verb of this new clause (known as a **sub-dependent clause**) is always in the subjunctive mood.

Contrast the following pairs of clauses:—

<i>cūr, priusquam hostem vidistis, pedem rettulistis?</i>	<i>why did you retreat before you set eyes on the enemy?</i>
<i>rogāvit cūr priusquam hostem vidissent pedem retulissent</i>	<i>he asked why they had retreated before they had set eyes on the enemy</i>
<i>quī adsunt, ei mē sequantur</i>	<i>let those who are present follow me</i>
<i>imperāvit ut ei quī adessent sē sequerentur</i>	<i>he ordered that those who were present should follow him</i>

313. If, however, the new clause is a relative clause thrown in by the writer or speaker for the information of his readers or hearers, and is therefore not dependent upon another clause, in such a case the verb will be in the indicative. Observe the difference between

iussit eum militēs, qui ā tergō erant, arcessere	he ordered him to send for the troops—these were actually in the rear
---	---

iussit eum militēs qui ā tergō essent arcessere	he ordered him to send for the troops which were in the rear
--	--

(His words were “send for the troops which are in the rear.”) So

timuit nō eis obviam īret qui patrem interfēcerant	he was afraid of meeting his father's murderers
---	--

timuit nō eis obviam īret qui patrem interfēcissent	he was afraid that he might meet those who had killed his father
--	--

thinking “I may meet those who killed my father.”

314. In place of the future infinitive active or passive in the accusative and infinitive construction, **fore** (or **futūrum esse**) **ut** with the **subjunctive** may be substituted.

This construction *must* be used when the verb has no future participle or supine, and *may* be used in other cases, especially as a substitute for the future infinitive passive.

spērō fore (or futūrum esse) ut multa discam	I hope that I shall learn much
---	--------------------------------

spērābam fore (or futūrum esse) ut multa discerem	I hoped that I should learn much
--	-------------------------------------

sciō fore (or futūrum esse) ut urbs capiātur	I know that the city will be taken
---	---------------------------------------

sciēbam fore (or futūrum esse) ut urbs caperētur	I knew that the city would be taken
---	--

Obs.—The whole phrase (e.g. **fore . . . discam** above) is really an accusative with the infinitive phrase, the **ut**-clause being equivalent to a neuter substantive in the accusative which is the subject of the infinitive **fore**.

The literal translation of the first example will be : *I hope that my learning much will be a fact.*

315. The tenses of the sub-dependent clause are determined by the rule for the **sequence of tenses** (§ 160), except that the perfect infinitive (if used as a simple past, and not as a true perfect) is usually followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, whatever the tense of the principal verb.

dixit sē ventūrum esse ut mē vidēret	<i>he said that he would come to see me</i>
dicīt sē vēnisse ut mē vidēret	<i>he says that he came to see me</i>
dicīt sē vēnisse ut mē videat	<i>he says that he has come to see me</i>

In the third example **vēnisse** is a true perfect and therefore primary.

VOCABULARY 66.

communīc-ō , 1, <i>I share</i>	salūtār-is , -e, <i>profitable</i>
repudi-ō , 1, <i>I reject</i>	nō . . . quidem , <i>not even</i>
auct-or , -ōris, <i>m., adviser</i>	
contī-ō , -ōnis, <i>f., assembly</i> (<i>public meeting</i>)	

EXERCISE 66.

A. Translate into English :—

Athenienses nolunt Lacedaemoniis post bellum Persicum nocere.

Athenienses, cum Persarum impetum nullo modo possent sustinere, et in animo haberent ut urbe relicta naves conscenderent, libertatemque Graeciae classe defenderent, civem quemdam qui eis suadebat ut in urbe manerent, lapidibus obruerunt. Themistocles post victoriam eius belli quod cum Persis fuit, dixit in contione se habere consilium rei publicae salutare, sed id sciri non opus esse; postulavit ut aliquem populus daret quocum communicaret. Datus est Aristides. Huic ille demonstravit classem

Lacedaemoniorum quae subducta esset ad Gythëum, clam incendi posse. Quod Aristides cum audisset, in contionem magna cum expectatione venit dixitque utilissimum esse consilium quod Themistocles afferret, sed minime honestum. Itaque Athenienses quod honestum non esset id ne utile quidem putaverunt, totamque eam rem, quam ne audierant quidem, auctore Aristide repudiaverunt.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quid facere Athenienses statuerunt cum Persas depellere non possent?

Cur civem lapidibus obruerunt?

Cur Themistocles consilium in contione proponere noluit?

Quid erat Themistoclis consilium?

Cur Aristides consilium Themistoclis non probavit?

Utrum Themistocli an Aristidi Athenienses paruerunt?

C. Translate into Latin :—

(i) 1. I see that the citizens have praised you because you saved the State. 2. Do you not think that he is sorry for many things that he has done? 3. Caesar ordered the soldiers to build a fleet of ships, with which he might carry his army across to Britain. 4. He advised the general to collect a new army, when he wished to renew the war. 5. He set a watch upon Dumnorix, that he might know what he did and with whom he talked. 6. The king of the Persians was informed by Themistocles that the Greeks wished to break down the bridge which he had made across the river. 7. I did this that I might give safety to those that follow me. 8. We do not think that the house will be sold for so great a price. 9. Did you not hope that your father would demand justice on your behalf?

(ii) When the Helvetii had left their own abodes, Caesar, fearing that they would lay waste the lands of those Gauls who were friendly to the Roman people, fought with them in a long and doubtful battle; for so bravely did the Helvetii fight that although the battle began at the seventh hour of the day and was not finished at night, no one saw a single enemy turn his back. When they had been defeated, Caesar hoped that they would be compelled to surrender themselves, but they fled with the remainder of their forces.

LESSON 67.

Reported speech.

316. The term "reported speech" (*ōrātiō oblīqua*) includes (a) **reported statements**, in the accusative and infinitive, (b) **reported questions**, in the subjunctive, (c) **reported commands**, in the subjunctive. All these have been dealt with separately, the accusative with the infinitive in Lesson 11, the dependent question in Lesson 28, and the dependent command in Lesson 37. A speech may contain all these, and in addition the sub-dependent clause of the last lesson.

317. If the actual words of the speech (*ōrātiō recta*) are given, the statement, command, or question will be expressed by a principal verb in the indicative, imperative, or subjunctive, but if the words are reported by a historian or speaker, these principal clauses all become dependent, and the indicative and imperative moods disappear.

318. As the speech reported must usually have been made in the past, the verb of saying will generally be in a past tense, and the tenses will be changed from present or future to imperfect, from perfect and future perfect to pluperfect. Also the adverbs of present time must be changed into adverbs of past time: *nunc*, *now*, *hīc*, *here*, *hodiē*, *to-day*, will give place (as in English) to *tunc*, *then*, *ibi*, *there*, *illō diē*, *on that day*.

The pronouns will be altered when the speech is reported: the first and second persons will disappear and give place to the third. Here the Latin has a great

advantage, in that it has two third personal pronouns, the reflexive *sē* and *ille*; i.e. *ego* in the direct speech will become *sē*, *tū* will become *ille*. In English both *I* and *he* become alike *he*, and there is often great confusion. For example, in the sentence "he said that he did not know what he meant when he talked like that," we do not know whether "he" (except the first) refers to the speaker or the person to whom he is speaking.

319. There are then three points to note in turning direct speech into reported speech, or in arriving at the actual words of a speech reported by a historian or speaker :—

(1) **The mood** ; (2) **the tense** ; (3) **the person**.

320. In turning from direct to reported speech

(a) *Principal indicatives in statements* become **infinitive**.

Principal indicatives in questions become **subjunctive**.

Principal subjunctives in commands or questions remain **subjunctive**.

Imperatives in commands become **subjunctive**.

(b) *Dependent indicatives* become **subjunctive**.

Dependent subjunctives remain **subjunctive**.

The Roman writer does not repeat his verb of saying or asking or ordering; he sets down reported statements, questions, commands, one after another without a break. We often insert a "said he," "he asked," as we translate the speech.

Often indeed the verb of *saying*, etc., has to be extracted from the previous sentence :—

lĕgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt :
sē parātōs esse portās
aperire

they send ambassadors to Caesar
(saying that) they were ready
to open the gates (or, "we are
ready," said they . . .)

colōnis triste responsum est
redditum : festinārent pro-
perē ex urbe

to the colonists a severe answer
was given (to the effect that)
they should hasten quickly
from the city (or, "hurry out
of the city at once")

EXAMPLES OF DIRECT AND REPORTED SPEECH.

(1) Statement.

- O.R. tum Caesar, ibō, inquit, si tū mē sequī vis *then, said Caesar, I will go if you are willing to follow me*
- O.O. tum Caesar sē itūrum esse respondit (dixit), si ille sē sequī vellet *then Caesar answered (said) that he would go if he were willing to follow him*
- O.R. agrum dabō in Italiā Africā Hispāniā ubi quisque volet; quī pecūniam quam agrum māluerit, ei argentō satisfaciam *I will give land in Italy, Africa, or Spain, wherever each shall wish; I will satisfy with money the man who shall prefer money to land*
- O.O. agrum sēsē datūrum esse in Italiā Africā Hispāniā ubi quisque vellet; quī pecūniam quam agrum māluisset ei sē argentō satisfactū- *he would (he said) give land in Italy, Africa, or Spain, wherever each should wish; he would satisfy with money the man who should prefer money to land*

(2) Question.

- O.R. cūr vulnerārī patiar optimē dē mē meritōs militēs? *why am I to allow troops that have deserved so well of me to be wounded?*
- O.O. cūr vulnerārī paterētur optimē dē sē meritōs militēs? *why was he to allow troops that had deserved so well of him to be wounded?*

(3) Command.

- O.R. nē commiseris ut hīc locus, ubi constitimus, ex calamitatē populi Rōmāni nōmen capiat *do not bring it about that this place where we have taken our stand should derive renown from a disaster to the Roman people*
- O.O. nē committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent, ex calamitatē populi Rōmāni nōmen caperet *let him not bring it about that the place where they had taken their stand should derive renown from a disaster to the Roman people*
- O.R. pellantur istae ineptiae! *away with those follies of yours!*
- O.O. pellerentur illae ineptiae *let them put away those follies*

O.R. expergiscimini aliquan- dō; maiōrum quibus orti estis reminiscimini: mē se- quimini	<i>awake at last: remember the</i> <i>ancestors from whom you are</i> <i>sprung and follow me</i>
O.O. expergiscerentur ali- quando: maiōrum quibus orti essent reminiscerentur, et sē sequerentur	<i>let them awake at length and</i> <i>remember the ancestors from</i> <i>whom they were sprung, and</i> <i>let them follow him</i>

Obs.—**Sē** and **suus** will usually refer to the **speaker**, but in a dependent clause may refer to the subject of the verb of that clause.

VOCABULARY 67.

praedic-ō, 1, I declare, speak out	sēd-ēs, -is, f., abode, seat, set-
iniqu-us, -a, -um, unfair	tlement
postulāt-um, -ī, n., demand	tribūt-um, -ī, n., tribute, (tri-
(postulō)	buō)

EXERCISE 67.

A. Translate into English:—

Ariovisti oratio.

Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit: sese Rhēnū transisse non sua sponte sed rogatum a Gallis: tributum se capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere solerent: si pace frui Galli vellent, ne recusarent tributum solvere, quod ad id tempus sua voluntate solvissent: se prius in Galliam venisse quam Romanos: quid Caesar sibi vellet? cur in fines suos veniret? Quare nisi decederet atque exercitum ex illis regionibus deduceret, se illum non pro amico sed pro hoste habiturum: quod si discessisset et Galliam sibi tradidisset quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo se confecturum.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Cur Ariovistus in fines Gallorum venit?

Cur noluit Gallia decedere?

Uter prius in Galliam venit?

Quae iura Ariovistus se in Gallia habere putavit?

Num Caesari amicitia Ariovisti erat optanda?

Quid Ariovistus pro Caesare si Galliam tradiderit se facturum esse promittit?

C. Turn passage A into *oratio recta*.

D. Translate into Latin (giving both the direct and reported form) :—

1. Reply was made that it was not yet time for fighting : let them keep themselves to the camp. 2. Then Liscus spoke : there were some, he said, who were more powerful than the magistrates themselves. 3. Do not punish my brother, said he, although I know that what you say is true. 4. What did they want? he asked. Why were they unwilling to do what he commanded? 5. What was he to do, whither was he to betake himself? thus he thought to himself. 6. Let them not hesitate, lest the enemy should reach the city before they could shut the gates. 7. Unless, said he, you give me the money which you owe me, I will see that you are thrown into prison. 8. I ask you why you have so forgotten all my kindnesses as to injure my friends. 9. He told the assembled citizens that he would defend their liberty : let them not fear that anyone should deprive them of their lives or their property. 10. Caesar replied that he would not destroy the town, provided that the citizens surrendered before the battering ram (*aries*) was brought up to the walls.

LESSON 68.

Reported speech (continued).

THE INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES AND IN REPORTED QUESTIONS.

321. The accusative and infinitive is used in reported statement to render a relative clause where in the direct speech *quī* = *and he, but he, for he*, etc.

O.R. instat Catilina, quī
brevis scelerum poenās
dabit

*Catiline is pressing on, but he
will soon pay the penalty of
his crimes*

O.O. dixit instāre Catilinam,
quem brevis scelerum poenās
datūrum esse

*he said that Catiline was press-
ing on, but he would soon pay
the penalty of his crimes*

322. When a question in the indicative is reported which expects no answer but is merely a strong way of making a statement, the accusative and infinitive is used. *All* questions in the first person, and many in the third, are of this sort, and are called **rhetorical questions**.

O.R. num haec tolerāre dēbē-
mus?

*ought we to stand this? (i.e.
we ought not to . . .)*

O.O. num illa sē tolerāre dē-
bēre?

ought they to stand this?

O.R. ubi tū nōbiscum aciē
confixistī?

*where did you fight in battle
with us? (i.e. you never
fought . . .)*

O.O. ubi eum sēcum aciē con-
fixisse?

O.R. num quis umquam tāle
monstrum vidit?

*did anyone ever see such a
monster? (i.e. no one ever
saw . . .)*

O.O. num quem umquam tāle
monstrum vidisse?

VOCABULARY 68.

commemor-ō , 1, <i>I relate, make mention of</i>	contumēli-a , -ae, <i>f., insult</i>
institu-ō , 3, <i>I teach</i>	dubitāti-ō , -ōnis, <i>f., hesitation</i>
satisfaci-ō , 3, <i>I satisfy, make amends (with dat.)</i>	recen-s , -tis, <i>fresh</i>
tempt-ō , 1, <i>I try, attempt</i>	secund-us , -a, -um, <i>favourable, prosperous</i>
vex-ō , 1, <i>I harass</i>	test-is , -is, <i>m.f., witness</i>
	interdum , <i>sometimes</i>

EXERCISE 68.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar Helvetiorum legatis orationem facit.

Nolite deorum immortalium esse immemores, qui eis hominibus quos punire volunt, interdum res secundas dare solent, quo gravior sit poena. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicemini vos facturos esse intellegam, et si Aeduis ob iniurias quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, satisfeceritis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam. Tum Divico pro legatis: "Ita Helvetii," inquit, "a maioribus suis instituti sunt, ut obsides accipere, non dare, soleant: huius rei populus Romanus est testis."

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur solent dei res secundas eis quos punire volunt interdum dare?

Quibus condicionibus Caesar se pacem facturum esse dicit?

Quid Divico Caesari respondet?

Num Helvetii Caesari parere volebant?

C. Turn passage A into *oratio obliqua*.

D. Translate into Latin :—

- 1.* "Who does not fear poverty?" asks the philosopher.
- 2.* What else was he to do, unless his brother returned? Thus he reflected to himself.
3. Your friend is angry with you because, as

* Translate the sentences marked with an asterisk as they stand. Turn them also into *oratio recta*.

he thinks, you have neglected him. 4. The king was hated by the citizens because they felt that he had broken the laws. 5. He desired to go away, because, as he said, it was night. 6.* When, he asked the soldiers, would they dare to demand what was owed to them? 7.* The consuls denied that they could any longer endure the insults of the tribune: whom, or what, had he not attacked? 8.* Are there not consuls, said he, who will take care that the state receives no harm? 9.* Has long life brought me to such evil that I see my son the leader of an army of the enemy? 10.* Have pity on your children whom, if you do not withdraw your army, long slavery awaits. 11.* I have been so long silent, said he, not because I did not know what I ought to do, but because I wished to hear what others thought.

* Translate the sentences marked with an asterisk as they stand. Turn them also into *oratio obliqua*.

LESSON 69.

Idiomatic usages of tenses.

THE HISTORIC PRESENT.

323. In place of a past tense of the indicative in the principal clause, a present was sometimes used: the speaker puts himself in thought back to the time when the action took place. Our "says he," used in reporting a conversation, is an example of the historic present. In Latin this tense is more commonly used than in English. It should generally be rendered by a past tense.

subitō edicunt consulēs ut ad
suum vestitum senātōrēs
redirent

*the consuls suddenly publish(ed)
an edict that the senators
should return to their usual
dress*

ad haec cognoscenda, prius-
quam periculum faceret,
Caesar Volusēnum cum nāvi
longā praemittit: huic im-
perat, quās possit, adeat
civitātēs

*to find out these things, before
he himself should make trial
of them, Caesar sent in
advance Volusenus with a
warship: he orders him to
go to all the states he can*

Obs. 1.—The sequence after a historic present is generally historic, as in the first two examples.

Obs. 2.—The present indicative of past time with **dum** (§ 238) is an example of a historic present used in a dependent clause.

324. With **iam**, *already*, **iamdiū**, **iamdūdum**, **iampridem**, *for a long while past*, Latin uses the present and imperfect where the perfect and pluperfect respectively are used in English. Compare the French idiom **depuis longtemps je parle**, *for a long while I have been talking*.

iampridem cupiō tē vidēre

*I desire and have long been
desiring to see you*

iamdūdum tibi adversābar

I had long been opposing you

THE EPISTOLARY IMPERFECT.

325. The writer of a letter (*epistola*, *letter*) often put himself in thought at the time when his messenger would have carried the letter to his friend, days or weeks afterwards, and used the tense that suited the time when the letter would be received, not when it was written. This imperfect is translated by the English present.

<i>nihil erat quod scriberem . . .</i>	<i>there is nothing to write . . .</i>
<i>litterās eram datūrus post-</i> <i>ridiē tuō servō</i>	<i>I will give the letter to-morrow</i> <i>to your slave</i>

NOTE.—Similarly, the epistolary pluperfect is translated by the English perfect.

<i>constitueram Rōmam redire</i>	<i>I have resolved to return to</i> <i>Rome</i>
----------------------------------	--

THE HISTORIC INFINITIVE.

326. The present infinitive is sometimes used by historians in place of an imperfect indicative to describe a series of actions or events that followed one another in quick succession. Only the present infinitive is so used, and the subject must be in the nominative case.

<i>multi sequi, fugere, occidi,</i> <i>capī</i>	<i>many were following, fleeing,</i> <i>being slain, or being taken</i> <i>prisoners</i>
<i>quotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frū-</i> <i>mentum flāgitāre</i>	<i>Caesar was daily demanding</i> <i>corn of the Aedui</i>

THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE WITH SUM.

327. A new set of future tenses may be made by coupling the future participle with some tense of the verb *sum*: the present infinitive is of course regularly used with the future participle to make the future infinitive active, *e.g.*

<i>amātūrus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum, } I \text{ am} \\ \text{erō, } I \text{ shall be} \\ \text{eram, } I \text{ was} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>about to love</i>
-----------------	---	----------------------

rex certāmini nāvāli nōn
interfutūrus erat

fascēs ipsī ad mē dēlātūrī
fuērunt

vereor nē domum numquam
sis reditūrus

dixērunt sē adeō territōs esse
ut numquam postea pugnā-
tūrī essent

*the king did not intend to be
present at the naval combat*

*they themselves were meaning
to offer the fasces (the symbols
of authority) to me*

*I fear lest you are never des-
tined to return home*

*they said that they had been so
frightened that they would
never fight again*

Obs.—This use of the future participle brings out the many meanings that can be given to the future participle, e.g. *reditūrus sum* means *I am about, meaning, destined, likely, ready, to return.*

VOCABULARY 69.

mātūr-ō, 1, *I hasten*

rescind-ō, 3, *I cut down*

malefici-um, -ī, *n., injury,
wrong-doing*

ulteri-or, -us, *comp. adj.,
further*

EXERCISE 69.

A. Translate into English :—

Caesar de Helvetiis impediendis consilium init.

Caesar cum id nuntiatum esset, Helvetiis per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe Roma proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem ire contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti ingentem militum numerum imperat, pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi Helvetii de eius adventu certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, qui dicerent, sibi in animo esse sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, quod nullum aliud iter haberent: se rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Cur Caesar Roma maturat proficisci ?

Quid postquam in provinciam pervenit fieri iubet ?

Quos Helvetii ad Caesarem mittunt ?

Cur Helvetii dicunt se iter per provinciam facere velle ?

Putasne Helvetiorum legatos vera dixisse ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. An orator ought to know the minds of those to whom he will speak or be likely to speak. 2. The slave found a book, which, as he said, he was going to give back to his master. 3. Cicero greets Brutus with these words : “ I hope you are well : I am writing this letter from Athens. I have resolved to stay here through the winter.” 4. The Athenians burnt their houses, sent their wives and children to a safe place, embarked on their ships, and sailed against the foe. 5. I had long been persuaded that you were mistaken. 6. When do you mean to write me the letter which you promised to write? 7. Caesar sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy were marching. 8. He summoned Dumnorix and warned him to avoid suspicion for the future. 9. It is eleven years since I saw your face. 10. I happened to be going along the Sacred Street ; a man ran up to me, seized my hand and said, Where are you going ?

LESSON 70.

Contracted forms of verbs ; the calendar.

CONTRACTED FORMS OF VERBS.—THE CONTRACTED PERFECT.

328. In the case of perfect indicatives in *-āvī, -ēvī, -īvī*, and all tenses derived from them, the *v* is dropped and contraction takes place before *s* or *r*. Perfects in *-īvī* drop the *v* and contract before *s* only.

1 sing.	amāvi		audivi	
2 sing.	amāvisti,	amasti	audivisti,	audisti
2 pl.	amāvistis,	amastis	audivistis,	audistis
3 pl.	amāverunt,	amārunt	audiverunt,	audiērunt

So **amassem, audierō, nōram (nōveram).**

Eō drops *v* all throughout the perfect tenses ; *iī, iistī, iit*, etc., are the contracted forms of *īvī, ivisti, ivit*, etc. ; so *ierō, ieram, iissem*. These contracted forms are almost always used in compounds of *eō*.

abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpit *he went, he departed, he escaped, he rushed away*

Obs. 1.—The 3 pl. in *-re* (e.g. **amāvēre, dēlēvēre**) is **not** contracted, because there would be confusion with the present infinitive (**amāre, dēlēre**).

Obs. 2.—**Petō, 3, I seek**, has a contracted perfect **petiī, petiisti**, etc.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

329. In each month there were three days named respectively **Kalendae** (*Kalends*), **Nōnae** (*Nones*), and **Idūs** (*Ides*).

The **Kalends** were always on the **1st**, the **Nones** were in most months on the **5th**, and the **Ides** on the **13th**.

But in July, October, March, and May,
Nones were the seventh, **Ides** the fifteenth day.

Obs.—The **Nones** were always (according to the inclusive method of reckoning in use with the Romans) nine days before the **Ides** (op. **nōnus**, *ninth*).

330. The Roman months were designated by adjectives, sometimes used substantivally in the masculine (the word **mensis**, *month*, being understood), but usually in agreement with one of the words **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, **Idūs**. These adjectives are **Iānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Martius**, **Aprīlis**, **Māius**, **Iūnius**, **Quintilis**, **Sextilis**, **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**. **Quintilis** (*July*) was after the death of Julius Caesar named **Iūlius** in his honour, and **Sextilis** was similarly changed to **Augustus** in honour of the Emperor. Therefore *July* and *August* should be rendered by **Quintilis** and **Sextilis** when the time referred to is before 44 B.C.

Of these adjectives, those ending in **-us** are declined like **bonus** (§ 26); those in **-is** like **tristis** (§ 50); and those in **-er** like **acer** (§ 50).

Martius caelebs quid agis
Kalendīs?

what are you, a bachelor,
doing on the first of March?

consulēs iī, quōs diximus,
Idibus Decembribus magis-
trātum iniērunt

the consuls, that I have men-
tioned, entered upon their
office on the 13th of Decem-
ber

331. Intervening days were reckoned as so many days before the next **Kalends**, **Nones**, or **Ides**, as the case might be, as follows:—

Dec. 30. **ante diem tertium Kalendās Iānuāriās** (a. d. iii. Kal. Ian.).

Dec. 31. **pridīē Kalendās Iānuāriās** (prid. Kal. Ian.).

Jan. 1. **Kalendae Iānuāriae** (Kal. Ian.).

Jan. 2. **ante diem quartum Nōnās Iānuāriās** (a. d. iv. Non. Ian.).

It is important to observe that the Roman method of reckoning was *inclusive*; e.g. Dec. 30 is the third day before Jan. 1, both days being included.

NOTE 1.—To express the day before the **Kalends**, **Nones**, or **Ides**, the word **pridīē** was used, not **ante diem secundum**: e.g. **pridīē Idūs Sextilēs**, *August 12*.

332. The above phrases expressing dates having come to be regarded as substantives, they may be used after prepositions.

ex ante diem tertium Nōnās
Iūniās usque ad pridīē
Kalendās Octōbrēs nuntius
vēnit nullus

from June 3 to September 30
no messenger came

333. The Romans named their years either according to the consuls of the year, *Ō nāte mēcum consule Manliō, O born with me in Manlius' consulship*, or according to their number since the founding of the city, *annō urbis conditae* (or in brief **A.U.C.**). This year was 753 B.C.

Given the year A.U.C.,

To find B.C. subtract from 754. : A.U.C. 710 = 44 B.C.

To find A.D. subtract 753. : A.U.C. 767 = 14 A.D.

Cicerō Arpinī annō sescentēsimō quadrāgēsīmō octāvō urbis conditae (or in brief **A.U.C. DCXLIII**) **nātus est**

Cicero was born at Arpinum in 106 B.C.

VOCABULARY 70.

nāvig-ō, l, I sail

naufra-gi-um, -ī, n., shipwreck

lēn-is, -e, gentle

serēn-us, -a, -um, calm

tempest-ās, -ātis, f., storm

EXERCISE 70.

A. Translate into English :—

Cicero a Graecia ad Italiam navigat.

Nos a te, ut scis, discessimus a.d. iv. Non. Novembr. Leucadem ante diem septimum Idus, et ante diem sextum Actium venimus. Ibi propter tempestatem tres dies morati sumus : inde Corcyram navigavimus ; Corcyrae fuimus usque ad a.d. xvi. Kal. Dec. Interea eorum qui cupide profecti sunt, multi naufragia fecerunt. Inde vento lenissimo, caelo sereno, illa nocte et die postero in Italiam pervenimus ita ut quarta hora Brundisii essemus : eodem tempore nobiscum in oppidum intravit uxor mea, ut mihi obviam iret, quae te magni facit. A.d. v. Kal. Dec. mihi tandem redditae sunt litterae quas iamdiu exspectabam, a te Nonis Novembribus scriptae.

B. Oral Exercise :—

Quot dies Corcyrae Cicero mansit ?

Cur Actii moratus erat ?

Qualis erat navigatio Corcyra usque ad litus Italiae ?

Cur uxor Ciceronis Brundisium venit ?

Quae litterae Ciceroni cum nave escendisset sunt redditae ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. Do you remember my speaking (*say* saying my opinion) in the senate on the 21st of October? 2. The Romans were defeated with great slaughter at Cannae in the year 216 B.C. 3. The consul appointed the elections for the 3rd of August. 4. Who does not know that Caesar was killed on the Ides of March by men whom he trusted? 5. We waited from the 4th of March to the 12th of April, but when you did not come we went away. 6. The consuls will enter on their office in the middle of July. 7. Between the 7th and 15th of May the Romans considered that there were nine days. 8. I asked him when the battle of Marathon was fought; he answered rightly in the year 490 B.C. 9. He said that he was born on the last day of the month of August. 10. From the 30th of March to the 30th of April the boys will go away.

LESSON 71.

Roman money and interest.

ROMAN MONEY.

334. The original unit of the Roman monetary system was the **as**, a copper coin; but after the end of the second century B.C. the **sestertius** (= $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses) took its place for this purpose.

The full name of the **sestertius** (for which the symbol was **HS**) was **sestertius nummus**; it was also known simply as **nummus**. In English it is called **sesterce**, and its value was about 2d.

Obs.—**Sestertius** is derived from **semis-tertius**, i.e. the third a half-as. So **HS** is equivalent to 11 s ($2\frac{1}{2}$ asses).

In expressing *thousands* of **sestertii** (up to one million) the word **milia** was omitted and **sestertium**, the genitive plural of **sestertius**, was converted into a neuter plural substantive; the number of thousands was denoted by a **distributive** numeral.

capit ille ex suis praediis	<i>he receives from his estates</i>
sexoēna sestertia, ego cen-	600,000 <i>sesterces, I receive</i>
tēna ex meis	100,000 <i>from mine</i>

In expressing *hundreds of thousands* of **sestertii**, if amounting to not less than one million, the words **centēna milia** were omitted, and **sertertium** was declinable as a neuter singular substantive; the number of hundreds of thousands was denoted by an **adverbial** numeral.

quadringentiēs sestertium	<i>you owed forty million</i> (400
dēbuisti	$\times 100 \times 1000$) <i>sesterces</i>

Obs.—The above rules may be tabulated thus :—

Up to 1000 sesterces cardinal with **sestertii** as **decem sestertii** (10)
 2000 to 900,000 ,, distributive, **sestertia** ,, **dēna sestertia**
 (10,000)

1,000,000 sesterces } adverbial ,, **sestertium** ,, { **sestertium deciēs**
 and upwards } (1,000,000)

HS.X : **HS.X̄** : **HS.X̄** are the abbreviations for the above sums.

INTEREST, ETC.

335. The *ās* continued to be used in reckoning interest, portions of inheritances, etc., after it had dropped out of use as the unit for reckoning sums of money. The following fractions of the *ās* were thus employed :—

unci-a (-ae)	:	quincun-x (-cis) =	dōdran-s (-tis) = $\frac{3}{4}$
sextan-s (-tis)	:	sēmis (sēmissis) =	dextan-s (-tis) = $\frac{5}{6}$
quadran-s (-tis)	:	septun-x (-cis) =	deun-x (-cis) = $1\frac{1}{2}$
trien-s (-tis)	:	bēs (bessis) =	

Caesar, opīnor, ex unciā; sed *Caesar, I think, (is heir) to one-*
 Lepta ex triente (hēres *twelfth, but Lepta to one-third*
 est) *of the property*

336. Interest (*ūsūrae*, nom. plural, or *fēnus*) was reckoned by the month at so many hundredth parts (*centēsimae*, i.e. *centēsimae partēs*) of the capital.

Accordingly *ūsūrae centēsimae* = 1 per cent. per mensem = 12 per cent. per annum.

ūsūrae binae centēsimae = 2 per cent. per mensem = 24 per cent. per annum.

337. Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the *ās* in apposition to *ūsūrae* or *fēnus*, the rate of 1 per cent. per mensem being taken as the standard; e.g.

fēnus triens = $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. per mensem = 4 per cent. per annum;
ūsūrae bessēs = $\frac{2}{3}$ per cent. per mensem = 8 per cent. per annum.

fēnus ex triente factum erat *interest had advanced from 4 to*
bessibus *8 per cent.*

Obs.—In the above example *bessibus* is ablative of price.

EXERCISE 71.

A. Translate into English :—

Testamentum Augusti Imperatoris.

C. Julius Caesar Octavianus obiit in cubiculo eodem quo pater Octavius, Sex. Pompeio et Sex Appuleio coss. a.d. xiv Kal. Septembr., hora diei nona, septuagesimo et sexto aetatis anno, diebus xxxv minus. Senatorum humeris delatus est in Campum Martium et crematus.

Testamentum L. Planco, C. Silio coss. A.D. iii Non. Apriles ante annum et quattuor menses quam decederet factum, virgines Vestales protulerunt. Quo in senatu aperto et recitato, compererunt Augustum hos instituisse heredes: Tiberium ex parte dimidia, Liviam ex sextante, Drusum Tiberi filium ex quadrante: ex parte reliqua Germanicum amicosque complures. Legavit populo Romano quadringenties, tribubus tricies quinquies sestertium: praetorianis militibus singula millia nummorum; cohortibus urbanis quingenos, legionariis trecentos nummos.

B. Oral Exercise:—

Cuius heres fuit Augustus?

Quo anno mortuus est?

Quis post eum creatus est Imperator?

Quot annos imperavit?

Quibus maiorem partem pecuniae legavit?

Qui heredes ex uncia erant?

Quantum exercitui Augustus dedit, si erant ducenta milia militum?

C. Translate into Latin:—

1. He called in (*redigō*) his money on the Ides and on the next Kalends he wanted to put it out (*ponō*) again. 2. Atticus received from his father 2,000,000 sesterces. 3. I hear that you are heir to three quarters of your brother's estate. 4. The noble Brutus lent (*say gave*) money to some wretched farmers in the island of Cyprus at 48 per cent interest. 5. A Roman knight had 400,000 sesterces, and a senator twice as much. 6. Augustus thought that a senator ought to have 1,200,000 sesterces. 7. To each poor senator, 500,000 sesterces was given annually as a gift by the Emperor. 8 To each of his sisters he left 2,000 sesterces, to his brother 8,000 sesterces. 9. He sold for 60,000 sesterces a book which he had bought for 60. 10. Antonius promised that he would give to every soldier 900 sesterces.

LESSON 72.

Miscellaneous.

THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *interest* AND *rēfert*.

338. These two verbs, meaning *it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest to*, have special constructions.

(1) Both verbs, in cases where the English has as object a personal pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person or a reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person, are used with the *ablative feminine singular* of the corresponding possessive adjective (*meā, nostrā; tuā, vestrā; suā*) to denote the person concerned. In the case of other words *interest* takes a *genitive* of the person concerned.

(2) The *amount* or *extent* of interest or concern is expressed by a *genitive* of value or an *accusative* of respect, *e.g. magnī, parvī, nihil, quid?*

(3) The *object* of interest or concern is expressed by (a) neuter singular pronoun *hōc, id, illud* with *rēfert*; (b) an infinitive or indirect question, with both verbs; (c) a final clause with *ut* or *nē*, with *interest*.

<i>quid</i> (acc.) <i>tuā id</i> (nom.) <i>rēfert?</i> <i>magnī</i>	<i>what does that matter to you?</i> <i>a great deal</i>
<i>omnium interest servārī</i>	<i>it is to everybody's interest</i> <i>that the laws should be kept</i>
<i>nihil</i> (acc.) <i>meā interest quid</i> <i>dē mē iudicent hominēs</i>	<i>it is of no importance to me</i> <i>what people think of me</i>
<i>meā maximē interest, tē ut</i> <i>videam</i>	<i>it is of supreme importance to</i> <i>me that I should see you</i>

SOME NEGATIVE PHRASES.

339. The words *nē . . . quidem*, *not even*, are always separated by the word they emphasise.

*id quod honestum nōn sit, nē
tūtile quidem esse arbitror* *I think that what is not honour-
able is not even expedient*

340. *Nōn solum (modo)*, *not only*, usually corresponds to *sed etiam*, *but also*, or *sed*, *but*.

*nōn modo falsum illud fuit
sed hōc vērissimum* *not only was that false but
this was perfectly true*

341. *Nōn modo . . . nōn*, *not only . . . not*, balance *sed nē . . . quidem*.

*dolor nōn modo nōn summum
malum sed nē malum qui-
dem est* *pain is not only not the chief
evil, it is not an evil at all*

Obs.—The second *nōn* is generally omitted, provided that the predicate or some other word in the second clause is common to both

*nōn modo manus tanti exer-
citūs, sed nē vestigium
quidem cuiquam nocuit* *not only the hand but even the
footstep of so great an army
has injured no one*

INTERJECTIONS.

342. *Ecce*, *behold!* *ēn*, *lo!* *ō*, *O!* are joined with the nominative and accusative cases, *e.g.* *ecce Homō*, *behold the Man!* *ēn trēs viās*, *lo, three paths!* *ō, fortunātōs puerōs*, *O lucky boys!* *ō, terque quaterque beātī*, *O thrice and four times happy!* The noun is the subject or object of some verb understood, *e.g.* *en tres vias (vides)*, *ō terque quaterque beati (estis)*.

Vae, *woe to*, is followed by the dative, *e.g.* *vae victīs*, *woe to the conquered!*

EXERCISE 72.

A. Translate into English :—

Cn. Magnus S. D. M. Ciceroni.

Scriptum Canusii A.D. X. Kal. Martias A.U.C. DCCV.

S. V. B. E.* Tuas litteras libenter legi : recordor enim tuam pristinam virtutem. Consules ad eum exercitum, quem in Apulia habui, venerunt. Magni mea refert cum te colloqui, quamobrem magnopere te hortor pro tuo singulari studio in rempublicam, ut te ad nos conferas : ignoras enim quanti nostra intersit, ut communi consilio reipublicae afflictae opem atque auxilium feramus. Cura via Appia iter facias et celeriter Brundisium venias. Non modo te sed etiam fratrem Quintum me visurum esse spero.

B Oral Exercise :—

Quot dies mensis Martius habet ?

Putasne Pompeium fuisse magnum imperatorem ?

Nonne Pompeius a Caesare victus est ?

Quo anno proelium factum est Pharsali ?

Ubi est Canusium, in Italia an in Graecia ?

C. Translate into Latin :—

1. It is important to the master that the boys should be industrious. 2. It is of very great importance not only to parents but also to the country that children should live in healthy homes. 3. It is a matter of concern to us all that the common people and the rich should have impartial laws. 4. It is of great importance to you, O soldiers, that you should obey your commander. 5. It is to the interest of the State that the general should move his camp beyond the river Rhône. 6. It is to my interest that you should not forget this. 7. It concerns nobody more than you, that your dogs should guard your house. 8. What interest had Brutus in Caesar's being murdered ? 9. Caesar used to say that it was of greater importance to the State than to himself that he should be dictator.

* *I.e.* si vales, bene est.

PARADIGMS OF VERBS.

VERBS.

343. TABLE OF BASES IN A LATIN VERB.

	Indicative.		Subjunctive.		Imperative.	Verbals.
Present Base	Present	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	—	Pres. Part.
	Imperfect	„ „	„ „	„ „	—	Gerundive
	Future	„ „	„ „	„ „	„ „	Pres. Inf. Act. & Pass. Gerund
Perfect Base	Perfect	Active	Active	Active	—	Perf. Inf. Act.
	Pluperfect	„	„	„	—	—
	Future Perf.	„	„	„	—	—
Supine Base	Perfect	Passive	Passive	Passive	—	Perf. Part. (& Inf.) Pass.
	Pluperfect	„	„	„	—	Fut. Part. (& Inf.) Act.
	Future Perf.	„	„	„	—	Supine (& Fut. Inf. Pass.)

THE VERB **Sum.**

§ 344. The conjugation of this verb, though irregular, is given before that of the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 45) : **sum, esse, fu-ī, (no supine).**

PARTICIPLES * { PRESENT : *none*
 { FUTURE : *futūrus, futūra, futūrum*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	<i>I am</i>	sumus,	<i>we are</i>
es,	<i>thou art</i>	estis,	<i>ye are</i>
est,	<i>he is</i>	sunt,	<i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	<i>I was</i>	erāmus,	<i>we were</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast</i>	erātis,	<i>ye were</i>
erat,	<i>he was</i>	erant,	<i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	<i>I shall be</i>	erimus,	<i>we shall be</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	eritis,	<i>ye will be</i>
erit,	<i>he will be</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-ī,	<i>I was or I have been</i>	fu-imus,	<i>we were or we have been</i>
fu-isti,	<i>thou wast or thou hast been</i>	fu-istis,	<i>ye were or ye have been</i>
fu-it,	<i>he was or he has been</i>	fu-ērunt or fu-ēre	<i>they were or they have been</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fu-eram,	<i>I had been</i>	fu-erāmus,	<i>we had been</i>
fu-erās,	<i>thou hadst been</i>	fu-erātis,	<i>ye had been</i>
fu-erat,	<i>he had been</i>	fu-erant,	<i>they had been</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

fu-erō,	<i>I shall have been</i>	fu-erimus,	<i>we shall have been</i>
fu-eris,	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	fu-eritis,	<i>ye will have been</i>
fu-erit,	<i>he will have been</i>	fu-erint,	<i>they will have been</i>

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

sim,	<i>I should be</i>	{	<i>(if) I were to be (in order that) I may be (so that) I am (although) I am</i>
sis,	<i>thou wouldst be</i>		
sit,	<i>he would be</i>		
simus,	<i>we should be</i>		
sitis,	<i>ye would be</i>		
sint,	<i>they would be</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

essem or forem,	<i>I should be</i>	{	<i>(if) I were (in order that) I might be (so that) I was (when, although, etc.) I was</i>
essēs or forēs,	<i>thou wouldst be</i>		
esset or foret,	<i>he would be</i>		
essēmus or forēmus	<i>we should be</i>		
essētis or forētis	<i>ye would be</i>		
essent or forent,	<i>they would be</i>		

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-erim	{	rare in principal sentences	{	<i>(if) I were to have been (so that) I was or have been (although) I have been</i>
fu-eris				
fu-erit				
fu-erimus				
fu-eritis				
fu-erint				

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fu-issem,	<i>I should have been</i>	{	<i>(if) I had been (when, although, etc.) I had been</i>
fu-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been</i>		
fu-isset,	<i>he would have been</i>		
fu-issēmus,	<i>we should have been</i>		
fu-issētis,	<i>ye would have been</i>		
fu-issent,	<i>they would have been</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

es,	<i>be (thou)</i>		este,	<i>be (ye)</i>
-----	------------------	--	-------	----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

estō,	<i>thou shalt or must be</i>		estōte,	<i>ye shall or must be</i>
estō,	<i>he shall or must be</i>		suntō,	<i>they shall or must be</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT:	esse, to be
PERFECT:	fu-isse, to have been
FUTURE:	fore or futūr-us esse, to be about to be

GERUND.

None.

SUPINE.

None.

For compounds of **sum** see §§ 151-3.

345. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.MODEL : **amō**, *I love, I like.*PRINCIPAL PARTS : **am-āre**, **amāv-ī**, **amāt-um**.BASES : **am-** (present) ; **amāv-** (perfect) ; **amāt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES	{	PRESENT : am-ans (gen. amant-is), <i>loving</i>
		FUTURE : amāt-ūrus , amāt-ūra , amāt-ūrum , <i>about to love</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō ,	<i>I love</i>		am-āmus ,	<i>we love</i>
am-ās ,	<i>thou lovest</i>		am-ātis ,	<i>ye love</i>
am-at ,	<i>he loves</i>		am-ant ,	<i>they love</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam ,	<i>I was loving</i>		am-ābāmus ,	<i>we were loving</i>
am-ābās ,	<i>thou wast loving</i>		am-ābātis ,	<i>ye were loving</i>
am-ābat ,	<i>he was loving</i>		am-ābant ,	<i>they were loving</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō ,	<i>I shall love</i>		am-ābimus ,	<i>we shall love</i>
am-ābis ,	<i>thou wilt love</i>		am-ābitis ,	<i>ye will love</i>
am-ābit ,	<i>he will love</i>		am-ābunt ,	<i>they will love</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī ,	<i>I loved or have loved</i>		amāv-imus ,	<i>we loved or have loved</i>
amāv-isti ,	<i>thou lovedst or hast loved</i>		amāv-istis ,	<i>ye loved or have loved</i>
amāv-it ,	<i>he loved or has loved</i>		amāv-ērunt } <i>they loved or have</i> or amāv-ēre } <i>loved</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eram ,	<i>I had loved</i>		amāv-erāmus ,	<i>we had loved</i>
amāv-erās ,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>		amāv-erātis ,	<i>ye had loved</i>
amāv-erat ,	<i>he had loved</i>		amāv-erant ,	<i>they had loved</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erō ,	<i>I shall have loved</i>		amāv-erimus ,	<i>we shall have loved</i>
amāv-eris ,	<i>thou wilt have loved</i>		amāv-eritis ,	<i>ye will have loved</i>
amāv-erit ,	<i>he will have loved</i>		amāv-erint ,	<i>they will have loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-em,	<i>I should love</i>	
am-ēs,	<i>thou wouldst love</i>	(if) <i>I were to love</i>
am-et,	<i>he would love</i>	(in order that) <i>I may love</i>
am-ēmus,	<i>we should love</i>	(so that) <i>I love</i>
am-ētis,	<i>ye would love</i>	(although) <i>I love</i>
am-ent,	<i>they would love</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ārem,	<i>I should be loving</i>	(if) <i>I were loving</i>
am-ārēs,	<i>thou wouldst be loving</i>	(in order that) <i>I might love</i>
am-āret,	<i>he would be loving</i>	(so that) <i>I loved</i>
am-ārēmus,	<i>we should be loving</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was loving</i>
am-ārētis,	<i>ye would be loving</i>	
am-ārent,	<i>they would be loving</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erim		
amāv-eris		
amāv-erit	rare in principal sentences	(if) <i>I were to have loved</i>
amāv-erimus		(so that) <i>I loved or have loved</i>
amāv-eritis		(although) <i>I have loved</i>
amāv-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE

amāv-issem,	<i>I should have loved</i>	
amāv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved</i>	
amāv-isset,	<i>he would have loved</i>	(if) <i>I had loved</i>
amāv-issēmus,	<i>we should have loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had loved</i>
amāv-issētis,	<i>ye would have loved</i>	
amāv-issent,	<i>they would have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	<i>love (thou)</i>		am-āte,	<i>love (ye)</i>
-------	--------------------	--	---------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātō,	<i>thou shalt or must love</i>	am-ātōte,	<i>ye shall or must love</i>
am-ātō,	<i>he shall or must love</i>	am-antō,	<i>they shall or must love</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT:	am-āre, <i>to love</i>
PERFECT:	amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i>
FUTURE:	amātūr-us esse, <i>to be about to love</i>

GERUND.

(Nom.	am-andum)
Acc.	am-andum, <i>loving</i>
Gen.	am-andi
Dat.	am-andō
Abl.	am-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. amāt-um, <i>to love</i>		Abl. amāt-ū, <i>in loving</i>
------------------------------	--	-------------------------------

346. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.MODEL: *moneō, I advise.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *mon-ēre, monu-ī, monit-um.*BASES: *mon-* (present); *monu-* (perfect); *monit-* (supine).
 PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *mon-ens* (gen. *monentis*), *advising*
 FUTURE: *monit-ūrus, monit-ūra, monit ūrum*, *about to advise*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>mon-eō,</i>	<i>I advise</i>	<i>mon-ēmus,</i>	<i>we advise</i>
<i>mon-ēs,</i>	<i>thou advisest</i>	<i>mon-ētis,</i>	<i>ye advise</i>
<i>mon-et,</i>	<i>he advises</i>	<i>mon-ent,</i>	<i>they advise</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

<i>mon-ēbam,</i>	<i>I was advising</i>	<i>mon-ēbāmus,</i>	<i>we were advising</i>
<i>mon-ēbas,</i>	<i>thou wast advising</i>	<i>mon-ēbātis,</i>	<i>ye were advising</i>
<i>mon-ēbat,</i>	<i>he was advising</i>	<i>mon-ēbant,</i>	<i>they were advising</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>mon-ēbō,</i>	<i>I shall advise</i>	<i>mon-ēbimus,</i>	<i>we shall advise</i>
<i>mon-ēbis,</i>	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	<i>mon-ēbitis,</i>	<i>ye will advise</i>
<i>mon-ēbit,</i>	<i>he will advise</i>	<i>mon-ēbunt,</i>	<i>they will advise</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>monu-ī,</i>	<i>I advised or have advised</i>	<i>monu-imus,</i>	<i>we advised or have advised</i>
<i>monu-istī,</i>	<i>thou advisedst or hast advised</i>	<i>monu-istis,</i>	<i>ye advised or have advised</i>
<i>monu-it,</i>	<i>he advised or has advised</i>	<i>monu-ērunt</i> <i>or monu ēre</i>	<i>they advised or have advised</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>monu-eram,</i>	<i>I had advised</i>	<i>monu-erāmus,</i>	<i>we had advised</i>
<i>monu-erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	<i>monu-erātis,</i>	<i>ye had advised</i>
<i>monu-erat,</i>	<i>he had advised</i>	<i>monu-erant,</i>	<i>they had advised</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>monu-erō,</i>	<i>I shall have advised</i>	<i>monu-erimus,</i>	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have advised</i>
<i>monu-eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have advised</i>	<i>monu-eritis,</i>	<i>ye will</i>	
<i>monu-erit,</i>	<i>he will have advised</i>	<i>monu-erint,</i>	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eam,	<i>I should advise</i>	(if) <i>I were to advise</i>
mon-eās,	<i>thou wouldst advise</i>	(in order that) <i>I may</i>
mon-eat,	<i>he would advise</i>	<i>advise</i>
mon-eāmus,	<i>we should advise</i>	(so that) <i>I advise</i>
mon-eātis,	<i>ye would advise</i>	(although) <i>I advise</i>
mon-eant,	<i>they would advise</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērem,	<i>I should be advising</i>	(if) <i>I were advising</i>
mon-ērēs,	<i>thou wouldst be advising</i>	(in order that) <i>I might</i>
mon-ēret,	<i>he would be advising</i>	<i>advise</i>
mon-ērēmus,	<i>we should be advising</i>	(so that) <i>I advised</i>
mon-ērētis,	<i>ye would be advising</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
mon-ērent,	<i>they would be advising</i>	<i>was advising</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erim		(if) <i>I were to have</i>
monu-eris		<i>vised</i>
monu-erit	rare in principal	(so that) <i>I advised or</i>
monu-erimus	sentences	<i>have advised</i>
monu-eritis		(although) <i>I have advised</i>
monu-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-issem,	<i>I should have advised</i>	
monu-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have advised</i>	(if) <i>I had advised</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
monu-issēmus,	<i>we should have advised</i>	<i>had advised</i>
monu-issētis,	<i>ye would have advised</i>	
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ē,	<i>advise (thou)</i>	mon-ēte,	<i>advise (ye)</i>
---------------	----------------------	-----------------	--------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētō,	<i>thou shalt or must advise</i>	mon-ētōte,	<i>ye shall or must advise</i>
mon-ētō,	<i>he shall or must advise</i>	mon-entō,	<i>they shall or must advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT: mon-ēre,	<i>to advise</i>	(Nom. mon-endum)
PERFECT: monu-isse,	<i>to have</i>	Acc. mon-endum,
	<i>advised</i>	<i>advising</i>
		Gen. mon-endi
FUTURE: monitū-	<i>to be</i>	Dat. mon-endō
	<i>about to advise</i>	Abl. mon-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. monit-um,	<i>to advise</i>	Abl. monit-ū,	<i>in advising</i>
-----------------------	------------------	----------------------	--------------------

347. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *regō, I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *reg-ere, rex-ī, rect-um.*

BASES: *reg-* (present); *rex-* (perfect); *rect-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *reg-ens* (gen. *regent-is*), *ruling*
FUTURE: *rect-ūrus, rect-ūra, rect-ūrum*, *about to rule*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>reg-ō,</i>	<i>I rule</i>	<i>reg-imus,</i>	<i>we rule</i>
<i>reg-is,</i>	<i>thou rulest</i>	<i>reg-itis,</i>	<i>ye rule</i>
<i>reg-it,</i>	<i>he rules</i>	<i>reg-unt,</i>	<i>they rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>reg-ēbam,</i>	<i>I was ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmus,</i>	<i>we were ruling</i>
<i>reg-ēbās,</i>	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbātis,</i>	<i>ye were ruling</i>
<i>reg-ēbat,</i>	<i>he was ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbant,</i>	<i>they were ruling</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>reg-am,</i>	<i>I shall rule</i>	<i>reg-ēmus,</i>	<i>we shall rule</i>
<i>reg-ēs,</i>	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	<i>reg-ētis,</i>	<i>ye will rule</i>
<i>reg-et,</i>	<i>he will rule</i>	<i>reg-ent,</i>	<i>they will rule</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-ī,</i>	<i>I ruled or have ruled</i>	<i>rex-imus,</i>	<i>we ruled or have ruled</i>
<i>rex-isti,</i>	<i>thou ruledst or hast ruled</i>	<i>rex-istis,</i>	<i>ye ruled or have ruled</i>
<i>rex-it,</i>	<i>he ruled or has ruled</i>	<i>rex-erunt</i> or <i>rex-ēre</i>	<i>they ruled or have ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-eram,</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>rex-erāmus,</i>	<i>we had ruled</i>
<i>rex-erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	<i>rex-erātis,</i>	<i>ye had ruled</i>
<i>rex-erat,</i>	<i>he had ruled</i>	<i>rex-erant,</i>	<i>they had ruled</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-erō,</i>	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	<i>rex-erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have ruled</i>
<i>rex-eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	<i>rex-eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
<i>rex-erit,</i>	<i>he will have ruled</i>	<i>rex-erint,</i>	<i>they will have ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-am,	<i>I should rule</i>	
reg-ās,	<i>thou wouldst rule</i>	(if) <i>I were to rule</i>
reg-at,	<i>he would rule</i>	(in order that) <i>I may</i>
reg-āmus,	<i>we should rule</i>	<i>rule</i>
reg-ātis,	<i>ye would rule</i>	(so that) <i>I rule</i>
reg-ant,	<i>they would rule</i>	(although) <i>I rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erem,	<i>I should be ruling</i>	{ (if) <i>I were ruling</i> (in order that) <i>I might</i> <i>rule</i> (so that) <i>I ruled</i> (when, although, etc.) <i>I</i> <i>was ruling</i>
reg-erēs,	<i>thou wouldst be ruling</i>	
reg-eret,	<i>he would be ruling</i>	
reg-erēmus,	<i>we should be ruling</i>	
reg-erētis,	<i>ye would be ruling</i>	
reg-erent,	<i>they would be ruling</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-erim		{ (if) <i>I were to have ruled</i> (so that) <i>I ruled or have</i> <i>ruled</i> (although) <i>I have ruled</i>
rex-eris		
rex-erit		
rex-erimus	rare in principal sentences	
rex-eritis		
rex-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-issem,	<i>I should have ruled</i>	
rex-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have ruled</i>	
rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled</i>	(if) <i>I had ruled</i>
rex-issēmus,	<i>we should have ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
rex-issētis,	<i>ye would have ruled</i>	<i>had ruled</i>
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-e,	<i>rule (thou)</i>		reg-ite,	<i>rule (ye)</i>
--------	--------------------	--	----------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itō,	<i>thou shalt or must rule</i>		reg-itōte,	<i>ye shall or must rule</i>
reg-itō,	<i>he shall or must rule</i>		reg-untō,	<i>they shall or must rule</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT: reg-ere, to rule

(Nom. reg-endum)

PERFECT: rex-isse, to have ruled

Acc. reg-endum, ruling

FUTURE: rectūr-us esse, to be about to rule

Gen. reg-endi

Dat. reg-endō

Abl. reg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, to rule

| Abl. rect-ū, in ruling

348. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.MODEL: **audiō**, *I hear*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **aud-īre**, **audīv-ī**, **audīt-um**.BASES: **aud-** (present); **audīv-** (perfect); **audīt-** (supine).
 PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **aud-iens** (gen. **audient-is**), *hearing*
 { FUTURE: **audīt-ūrus**, **audīt-ūra**, **audīt-ūrum**, *about to hear*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iō ,	<i>I hear</i>	aud-īmus ,	<i>we hear</i>
aud-is ,	<i>thou hearest</i>	aud-ītis ,	<i>ye hear</i>
aud-it ,	<i>he hears</i>	aud-iunt ,	<i>they hear</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbam ,	<i>I was hearing</i>	aud-iēbāmus ,	<i>we were hearing</i>
aud-iēbās ,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	aud-iēbātis ,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
aud-iēbat ,	<i>he was hearing</i>	aud-iēbant ,	<i>they were hearing</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam ,	<i>I shall hear</i>	aud-iēmus ,	<i>we shall hear</i>
aud-iēs ,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	aud-iētis ,	<i>ye will hear</i>
aud-iet ,	<i>he will hear</i>	aud-ient ,	<i>they will hear</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-i ,	<i>I heard or have heard</i>	audīv-imus ,	<i>we heard or have heard</i>
audīv-istī ,	<i>thou heardest or hast heard</i>	audīv-istis ,	<i>ye heard or have heard</i>
audiv-it ,	<i>he heard or has heard</i>	audiv-ērunt or audiv-ēre	<i>they heard or have heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audiv-eram ,	<i>I had heard</i>	audiv-erāmus ,	<i>we had heard</i>
audiv-erās ,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	audiv-erātis ,	<i>ye had heard</i>
audiv-erat ,	<i>he had heard</i>	audiv-erant ,	<i>they had heard</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audiv-erō ,	<i>I shall have heard</i>	audiv-erimus ,	<i>we shall have heard</i>
audiv-eris ,	<i>thou wilt have heard</i>	audiv-eritis ,	<i>ye will have heard</i>
audiv-erit ,	<i>he will have heard</i>	audiv-erint ,	<i>they will have heard</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iam,	<i>I should hear</i>	(if) <i>I were to hear</i>
aud-iās,	<i>thou wouldst hear</i>	(in order that) <i>I may</i>
aud-iat,	<i>he would hear</i>	<i>hear</i>
aud-iāmus,	<i>we should hear</i>	(so that) <i>I hear</i>
aud-iātis,	<i>ye would hear</i>	(although) <i>I hear</i>
aud-iant,	<i>they would hear</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-irem,	<i>I should be hearing</i>	(if) <i>I were hearing</i>
aud-irēs,	<i>thou wouldst be hearing</i>	(in order that) <i>I might</i>
aud-iret,	<i>he would be hearing</i>	<i>hear</i>
aud-irēmus,	<i>we should be hearing</i>	(so that) <i>I heard</i>
aud-irētis,	<i>ye would be hearing</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
aud-irent,	<i>they would be hearing</i>	<i>was hearing</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audiv-erim		{ (if) <i>I were to have heard</i> (so that) <i>I heard or have</i> <i>heard</i> (although) <i>I have heard</i>
audiv-eris		
audiv-erit	rare in principal	
audiv-erimus	sentences	
audiv-eritis		
audiv-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audiv-issem,	<i>I should have heard</i>	
audiv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have heard</i>	
audiv-isset,	<i>he would have heard</i>	(if) <i>I had heard</i>
audiv-issēmus,	<i>we should have heard</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
audiv-issētis,	<i>ye would have heard</i>	<i>had heard</i>
audiv-issent,	<i>they would have heard</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ī,	<i>hear (thou)</i>	aud-ite,	<i>hear (ye)</i>
---------------	--------------------	-----------------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-itō,	<i>thou shalt or must hear</i>	aud-itōte,	<i>ye shall or must hear</i>
aud-itō,	<i>he shall or must hear</i>	aud-iuntō,	<i>they shall or must hear</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT : **aud-ire,** *to hear*(Nom. **aud-iendum**)PERFECT : **audiv-isse,** *to have heard*Acc. **aud-iendum,** *hearing*FUTURE : **auditūrus esse,** *to be about to hear*Gen. **aud-iendi**Dat. **aud-iendō**Abl. **aud-iendō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **audit-um,** *to hear*| Abl. **audit-u,** *in hearing*

349. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.MODEL : **amō**, *I love, I like.*BASES : **am-** (present) ; **amāv-** (perfect) ; **amāt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES	{	PERFECT : amāt-us , amāt-a , amāt-um , <i>loved or having been loved</i>
		GERUNDIVE : am-andus , am-anda , am-andum , <i>fit to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-or ,	<i>I am loved</i>	am-āmur ,	<i>we are loved</i>
am-āris ,	<i>thou art loved</i>	am-āmini ,	<i>ye are loved</i>
am-ātur ,	<i>he is loved</i>	am-antur ,	<i>they are loved</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābar ,	<i>I was being loved</i>	am-ābāmur ,	<i>we were being loved</i>
am-ābaris or am-ābare }	<i>thou wast being loved</i>	am-ābāmini ,	<i>ye were being loved</i>
am-ābātur ,	<i>he was being loved</i>	am-ābantur ,	<i>they were being loved</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābor ,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	am-ābimur ,	<i>we shall be loved</i>
am-āberis or am-ābere ,	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	am-ābimini ,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
am-ābitur ,	<i>he will be loved</i>	am-ābuntur ,	<i>they will be loved</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us sum ,	<i>I was or have been loved</i>	amāt-ī sumus ,	<i>we were or have been loved</i>
amāt-us es ,	<i>thou wast or hast been loved</i>	amāt-ī estis ,	<i>ye were or have been loved</i>
amāt-us est ,	<i>he was or has been loved</i>	amāt-ī sunt ,	<i>they were or have been loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us eram ,	<i>I had been</i>	{	<i>been loved</i>	amāt-ī eramus ,	<i>we had been</i>	{	<i>been loved</i>
amāt-us erās ,	<i>thou hadst</i>			amāt-ī erātis ,	<i>ye had</i>		
amāt-us erat ,	<i>he had</i>			amāt-ī erant ,	<i>they had</i>		

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us erō ,	<i>I shall have</i>	{	<i>been loved</i>	amāt-ī erimus ,	<i>we shall have</i>	{	<i>been loved</i>
amāt-us eris ,	<i>thou wilt</i>			amāt-ī eritis ,	<i>ye will</i>		
amāt-us erit ,	<i>he will</i>			amāt-ī erunt ,	<i>they will</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-er,	<i>I should be loved</i>	
am-ēris or am-ēre }	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	(if) <i>I were to be loved</i>
am-ētur,	<i>he would be loved</i>	(in order that) <i>I may be loved</i>
am-ēmur,	<i>we should be loved</i>	(so that) <i>I am loved</i>
am-ēmini,	<i>ye would be loved</i>	(although) <i>I am loved</i>
am-entur,	<i>they would be loved</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ārer,	<i>I should be loved</i>	(if) <i>I were being loved</i>
am-ārēris or am-ārēre }	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	(in order that) <i>I might be loved</i>
am-ārētur,	<i>he would be loved</i>	(so that) <i>I was loved</i>
am-ārēmur,	<i>we should be loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was being loved</i>
am-ārēmini,	<i>ye would be loved</i>	
am-ārentur,	<i>they would be loved</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us sim	} rare in principal sentences	(if) <i>I were to have been loved</i>
amāt-us sis		(so that) <i>I was loved or have been loved</i>
amāt-us sit		(although) <i>I have been loved</i>
amāt-i simus		
amāt-i sitis		
amāt-i sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us essem,	<i>I should have been loved</i>	
amāt-us essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	(if) <i>I had been loved</i>
amāt-us esset,	<i>he would have been loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had been loved</i>
amāt-i essēmus,	<i>we should have been loved</i>	
amāt-i essētis,	<i>ye would have been loved</i>	
amāt-i essent,	<i>they would have been loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-āre,	<i>be (thou) loved</i>		am-āmini,	<i>be (ye) loved</i>
---------	------------------------	--	-----------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātor,	<i>thou shalt or must be loved</i>			
am-ātor,	<i>he shall or must be loved</i>	am-antor,	<i>they shall or must be</i>	<i>[loved]</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : am-ārī,	<i>to be loved</i>
PERFECT : amāt-us esse,	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE : amātum iri,	<i>to be about to be loved</i>

350. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
MODEL: moneō, I advise.

BASES: mon- (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PERFECT: monit-us, monit-a, monit-um, advised or having been advised
PARTICIPLES GERUNDIVE: mon-endus, mon-enda, mon-endum, fit to be advised

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>	mon-ēmur,	<i>we are advised</i>
mon-ēris,	<i>thou art advised</i>	mon-ēmini,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised</i>	mon-entur,	<i>they are advised</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbar,	<i>I was being</i>	} <i>advised</i>	mon-ēbāmur,	<i>we were being</i>	} <i>advised</i>
mon-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast</i>		mon-ēbāmini,	<i>ye were being</i>	
mon-ēbāre	<i>being</i>				
mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was being</i>		mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were being</i>	

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbor,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	mon-ēbimur,	<i>we shall be advised</i>
mon-ēberis or	<i>thou wilt be ad-</i>	mon-ēbimini,	<i>ye will be advised</i>
mon-ēbere	<i>vised</i>		
mon-ēbitur,	<i>he will be advised</i>	mon-ēbuntur,	<i>they will be advised</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sum,	<i>I was or have been advised</i>	monit-i sumus,	<i>we were or have been advised</i>
monit-us es,	<i>thou wast or hast been advised</i>	monit-i estis,	<i>ye were or have been advised</i>
monit-us est,	<i>he was or has been advised</i>	monit-i sunt,	<i>they were or have been advised</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us eram,	<i>I had been</i>	} <i>advised</i>	monit-i erāmus,	<i>we had been</i>	} <i>advised</i>
monit-us erās,	<i>thou hadst</i>		monit-i erātis,	<i>ye had been</i>	
monit-us erat,	<i>he had been</i>		monit-i erant,	<i>they had been</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us erō,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been advised</i>	monit-i erimus,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have been advised</i>
monit-us eris,	<i>thou wilt</i>		monit-i eritis,	<i>ye will</i>	
monit-us erit,	<i>he will</i>		monit-i erunt,	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ear,
mon-eāris or }
mon-eāre }
mon-eātur,
mon-eāmur,
mon-eāmini,
mon-eantur,

I should be advised
thou wouldst be advised
he would be advised
we should be advised
ye would be advised
they would be advised

(if) *I were to be advised*
(in order that) *I may*
be advised
(so that) *I am advised*
(although) *I am advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērer,
mon-ērēris or }
mon-ērēre }
mon-ērētur,
mon-ērēmur,
mon-ērēmini,
mon-ērentur,

I should be advised
thou wouldst be advised
he would be advised
we should be advised
ye would be advised
they would be advised

(if) *I were being advised*
(in order that) *I might*
be advised
(so that) *I was advised*
(when, although, etc.) *I*
was being advised

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sim
monit-us sis
monit-us sit
monit-i simus
monit-i sitis
monit-i sint

rare in principal
sentences

(if) *I were to have been*
advised
(so that) *I was advised*
or have been advised
(although) *I have been*
advised

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us essem,
monit-us essēs,
monit-us esset,
monit-i essemus,
monit-i essētis,
monit-i essent,

I should have been advised
thou wouldst have been
he would have been
we should have been
ye would have been
they would have been

(if) *I had been ad-*
vised
(when, although, etc.)
I had been advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ēre, be (thou) advised | mon-ēmini, be (ye) advised

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētor, thou must be advised |
mon-ētor, he must be advised | mon-entor, they must be advised

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: mon-ēri, to be advised
PERFECT: monit-us esse, to have been advised
FUTURE: monitum iri, to be about to be advised

351. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *regō, I rule.*

BASES: *reg-* (present); *rex-* (perfect); *rect-* (supine).

(PERFECT: *rect-us, rect-a, rect-um, ruled or having been ruled*)
 PARTICIPLES ERUNDIVE: *reg-endus, reg-enda, reg-endum, fit to be ruled*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>reg-or,</i>	<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>reg-imur,</i>	<i>we are ruled</i>
<i>reg-eris,</i>	<i>thou art ruled</i>	<i>reg-imini,</i>	<i>ye are ruled</i>
<i>reg-itur,</i>	<i>he is ruled</i>	<i>reg-untur,</i>	<i>they are ruled</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>reg-ēbar,</i>	<i>I was being ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmur,</i>	<i>we were being ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēbāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmini,</i>	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēbāre }</i>	<i>ruled</i>		
<i>reg-ēbātur,</i>	<i>he was being ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēbantur,</i>	<i>they were being ruled</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>reg-ar,</i>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēmur,</i>	<i>we shall be ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēmini,</i>	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēre }</i>			
<i>reg-ētur,</i>	<i>he will be ruled</i>	<i>reg-entur,</i>	<i>they will be ruled</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been ruled</i>	<i>rect-i sumus,</i>	<i>we were or have been ruled</i>
<i>rect-us es,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been ruled</i>	<i>rect-i estis,</i>	<i>ye were or have been ruled</i>
<i>rect-us est,</i>	<i>he was or has been ruled</i>	<i>rect-i sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us eram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>rect-i erāmus,</i>	<i>we had been</i>
<i>rect-us erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	<i>rect-i erātis,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>rect-us erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>	<i>rect-i erant,</i>	<i>they had been</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us erō,</i>	<i>I shall have</i>	<i>rect-i erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have</i>
<i>rect-us eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt been</i>	<i>rect-i eritis,</i>	<i>ye will been</i>
<i>rect-us erit,</i>	<i>he will ruled</i>	<i>rect-i erunt,</i>	<i>they will ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ar,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	
reg-āris or } reg-āre }	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	(if) <i>I were to be ruled</i>
reg-ātur,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	(in order that) <i>I may be ruled</i>
reg-āmur,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	<i>ruled</i>
reg-āmini,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	(so that) <i>I am ruled</i>
reg-antur,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	(although) <i>I am ruled</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erer,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	(if) <i>I were being ruled</i>
reg-erēris or } reg-erēre }	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	(in order that) <i>I might be ruled</i>
reg-erētur,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	(so that) <i>I was ruled</i>
reg-erēmur,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was being ruled</i>
reg-erēmini,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	
reg-erentur,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sim		(if) <i>I were to have been ruled</i>
rect-us sis		<i>ruled</i>
rect-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(so that) <i>I was ruled or have been ruled</i>
rect-ī simus		(although) <i>I have been ruled</i>
rect-ī sitis		
rect-ī sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us essem,	<i>I should have been ruled</i>	
rect-us essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled</i>	
rect-us esset,	<i>he would have been ruled</i>	(if) <i>I had been ruled</i>
rect-ī essemus,	<i>we should have been ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had been ruled</i>
rect-ī essētis,	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>	
rect-ī essent,	<i>they would have been ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ere,	<i>be (thou) ruled</i>		reg-iminī,	<i>be (ye) ruled</i>
----------	------------------------	--	------------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itor,	<i>thou must be ruled</i>		reg-untor,	<i>they must be ruled</i>
reg-itor,	<i>he must be ruled</i>			

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: reg-i,	<i>to be ruled</i>
PERFECT: rect-us esse,	<i>to have been ruled</i>
FUTURE: rectum iri,	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>

§ 352. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *audiō, I hear.*BASES: *aud-* (present); *audīv-* (perfect); *audīt-* (supine).(PERFECT: *audīt-us, audit-a, audit-um, heard or having been heard*PARTICIPLES GERUNDIVE: *aud-iendus, aud-ienda, aud-iendum, fit to be heard*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>aud-ior,</i>	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>aud-imur,</i>	<i>we are heard</i>
<i>aud-iris,</i>	<i>thou art heard</i>	<i>aud-imini,</i>	<i>ye are heard</i>
<i>aud-itur,</i>	<i>he is heard</i>	<i>aud-iuntur,</i>	<i>they are heard</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>aud-iēbar,</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>	<i>aud-iēbāmur,</i>	<i>we were being</i>	} <i>heard</i>
<i>aud-iēbāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>aud-iēbāmini,</i>	<i>ye were being</i>	
<i>aud-iēbāre</i>	<i>heard</i>			
<i>aud-iēbātur,</i>	<i>he was being heard</i>	<i>aud-iēbantur,</i>	<i>they were being</i>	

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>aud-iar,</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>	<i>aud-iēmur,</i>	<i>we shall be heard</i>
<i>aud-iēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be heard</i>	<i>aud-iēmini,</i>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<i>aud-iēre</i>			
<i>aud-iētur,</i>	<i>he will be heard</i>	<i>aud-ientur,</i>	<i>they will be heard</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī sumus,</i>	<i>we were or have been heard</i>
<i>audit-us es,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī estis,</i>	<i>ye were or have been heard</i>
<i>audit-us est,</i>	<i>he was or has been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us eram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>audit-ī erāmus,</i>	<i>we had been</i>	} <i>heard</i>
<i>audit-us erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>audit-ī erātis,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>	
<i>audit-us erat,</i>	<i>he had been</i>	<i>audit-ī erant,</i>	<i>they had been</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us erō,</i>	<i>I shall have</i>	<i>audit-ī erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have</i>	} <i>been heard</i>
<i>audit-us eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have</i>	<i>audit-ī eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have</i>	
<i>audit-us erit,</i>	<i>he will have</i>	<i>audit-ī erunt,</i>	<i>they will have</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iar,
aud-iāris or
aud-iāre }
aud-iātur,
aud-iāmur,
aud-iāmini,
aud-iantur,

I should be heard
thou wouldst be heard
he would be heard
we should be heard
ye would be heard
they would be heard

(if) *I were to be heard*
(in order that) *I may*
be heard
(so that) *I am heard*
(although) *I am heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-irer,
aud-irēris or
aud-irēre }
aud-irētur,
aud-irēmur,
aud-irēmini,
aud-irentur,

I should be heard
thou wouldst be heard
he would be heard
we should be heard
ye would be heard
they would be heard

(if) *I were being heard*
(in order that) *I might*
be heard
(so that) *I was heard*
(when, although, etc.)
I was being heard

PERFECT TENSE.

audit-us sim
audit-us sis
audit-us sit
audit-ī simus
audit-ī sitis
audit-ī sint

rare in principal
sentences

(if) *I were to have been*
heard
(so that) *I was heard*
or have been heard
(although) *I have been*
heard

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audit-us essem, *I should have been heard*
audit-us essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*
audit-us esset, *he would have been heard*
audit-ī essēmus, *we should have been heard*
audit-ī essētis, *ye would have been heard*
audit-ī essent, *they would have been heard*

(if) *I had been heard*
(when, although, etc.)
I had been heard

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ire, *be (thou) heard* | **aud-imini,** *be (ye) heard*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-itor, *thou must be heard*
aud-itor, *he must be heard* | **aud-iuntor,** *they must be heard*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **aud-iri,** *to be heard*
PERFECT : **audit-us esse,** *to have been heard*
FUTURE : **auditum iri,** *to be about to be heard*

THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

353. MODEL: *capiō, I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *cap-iō, cēp-ī, capt-um.*

BASES: *cap-* (present); *cēp-* (perfect); *capt-* (supine).

PARTI- (PRESENT: *cap-iens* (gen. *capient-is*), *taking*

CIPLES (FUTURE: *capt-ūrus, capt-ūra, capt-ūrum*, *about to take*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I take.*)

<i>cap-iō</i>	<i>cap-imus</i>
<i>cap-is</i>	<i>cap-itis</i>
<i>cap-it</i>	<i>cap-iunt</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)

<i>cap-iōbam</i>	<i>cap-iōbāmus</i>
<i>cap-iōbās</i>	<i>cap-iōbātis</i>
<i>cap-iōbat</i>	<i>cap-iōbant</i>

FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)

<i>cap-iam</i>	<i>cap-iēmus</i>
<i>cap-iēs</i>	<i>cap-iētis</i>
<i>cap-iet</i>	<i>cap-ient</i>

PERFECT. (*I took or have taken.*)

<i>cēp-ī</i>	<i>cēp-imus</i>
<i>cēp-istī</i>	<i>cēp-istis</i>
<i>cēp-it</i>	<i>cēp-erunt or</i> <i>cēp-ere</i>

PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)

<i>cēp-eram</i>	<i>cēp-erāmus</i>
<i>cēp-erās</i>	<i>cēp-erātis</i>
<i>cēp-erat</i>	<i>cēp-erant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)

<i>cēp-erō</i>	<i>cēp-erimus</i>
<i>cēp-eris</i>	<i>cēp-eritis</i>
<i>cēp-erit</i>	<i>cēp-erint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should take.*)

<i>cap-iam</i>	<i>cap-iāmus</i>
<i>cap-iās</i>	<i>cap-iātis</i>
<i>cap-iat</i>	<i>cap-iant</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I should be taking.*)

<i>cap-erem</i>	<i>cap-erēmus</i>
<i>cap-erēs</i>	<i>cap-erētis</i>
<i>cap-eret</i>	<i>cap-erent</i>

PERFECT.

<i>cēp-erim</i>	<i>cēp-erimus</i>
<i>cēp-eris</i>	<i>cēp-eritis</i>
<i>cēp-erit</i>	<i>cēp-erint</i>

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have taken.*)

<i>cēp-issem</i>	<i>cēp-issēmus</i>
<i>cēp-issēs</i>	<i>cēp-issētis</i>
<i>cēp-isset</i>	<i>cēp-issent</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Take.*)

<i>cap-e</i>	<i>cap-ite</i>
--------------	----------------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must take.*)

<i>cap-itō</i>	<i>cap-itōte</i>
<i>cap-itō</i>	<i>cap-iuntō</i>

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: *cap-ere*, *to take*

PERFECT: *cēp-isse*, *to have taken*

FUTURE: *captūr-us esse*, *to be about to take*

GERUND.

(*Nom. cap-iendum*)

Acc. cap-iendum, *taking*

Gen. cap-iendi

Dat. cap-iendō

Abl. cap-iendō

SUPINE

Acc. capt-um, *to take*

| *Abl. capt-ū*, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES	PERFECT :	capt-us, capt-a, capt-um, <i>taken or having been taken</i>
	GERUNDIVE :	cap-iendus, cap-ienda, cap-iendum, <i>fit to be taken</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

cap-ior	cap-imur
cap-eris	cap-imini
cap-itur	cap-iuntur

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

cap-iēbar	cap-iēbāmur
cap-iēbāris or cap-iēbāre	cap-iēbāmini
cap-iēbātur	cap-iēbantur

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iēmur
cap-iēris or cap-iēre	cap-iēmini
cap-iētur	cap-ientur

PERFECT. (*I was taken or have been taken.*)

capt-us sum	capt-i sumus
capt-us es	capt-i estis
capt-us est	capt-i sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-us eram	capt-i erāmus
capt-us erās	capt-i erātis
capt-us erat	capt-i erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-us erō	capt-i erimus
capt-us eris	capt-i eritis
capt-us erit	capt-i erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am or may be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iāmur
cap-iāris or cap-iāre	cap-iāmini
cap-iātur	cap-iantur

IMPERFECT. (*I was or might be taken.*)

cap-erer	cap-erēmur
cap-erēris or cap-erēre	cap-erēmini
cap-erētur	cap-erentur

PERFECT.

capt-us sim	capt-i simus
capt-us sis	capt-i sitis
capt-us sit	capt-i sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-us essem	capt-i essēmus
capt-us essēs	capt-i essētis
capt-us esset	capt-i essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

cap-ere	cap-imini
---------	-----------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must be taken.*)

cap-itor	cap-iuntor
cap-itor	

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : cap-i, *to be taken*PERFECT : capt-us esse, *to have been taken*FUTURE : captum iri, *to be about to be taken*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in *-ere*) which in the pres. indic. act. end in *-iō* are conjugated like *capio*, as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in *-ior*.

Obs. *Capio* is conjugated like *audio* in those parts in which the *i* of *audio* is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the *i* is short ; in other parts *capio* is conjugated like *regō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

354.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
d-ō	-are	ded-ī	dat-um	<i>give</i>
Compounds be- long to 3rd conj. except				
circumd-ō	-are	circumded-ī	circumdat-um	<i>put round</i>
st-ō	-āre	stet-ī	stat-um	<i>stand</i>
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-āre	praestit-ī	{ praestāt-um praestit-um }	<i>excel</i>
Except				
circumst-ō	-āre	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iuv-ō	-āre	iūv-ī	iūt-um	<i>help, delight</i>
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī	{ lavāt-um perf. part. { laut-us lōt-us }	<i>wash</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S: none.

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (A).

This is the way in which the perfect base of *amō* and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō	-āre	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um or pōtāt-um }	<i>drink</i>
-------	------	---------	---------------------------	--------------

E.—Perfect formed by U.

crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	<i>rattle</i>
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	<i>lie down</i>
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	<i>tame</i>
ēnio-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	<i>wear to death</i>
frio-ō	-āre	friou-ī	{ frict-um or fricāt-um }	<i>rub</i>
plic-ō	-āre	{ plicāv-ī plicu-ī }	{ plicāt-um plicit-um }	<i>fold</i>
sec-ō	-āre	secu-ī	sect-um	<i>cut</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
son-ō	-āre	sonu-ī	sonit-um	<i>sound</i>
ton-ō	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	<i>thunder</i>
vet-ō	-āre	vetu-ī	vetit-um	<i>forbid</i>
mic-ō	-āre	micu-ī	—	<i>vibrate</i>

So comp., except

dimic-ō	-āre	dimicāv-ī	dimicāt-um	<i>fight</i>
----------------	------	------------------	-------------------	--------------

F.—Perfect base identical with present base: *none*.

355.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-eō	-ēre	momord-ī	mors-um	<i>bite</i>
pend-eō	-ēre	pepend-ī	—	<i>be suspended</i>
spond-eō	-ēre	spopond-ī	spons-um	<i>promise</i>
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	<i>clip</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

cav-eō	-ēre	cāv-ī	caut-um	<i>beware of</i>
fav-eō	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	<i>be favourable</i>
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	<i>cherish</i>
mov-eō	-ēre	mōv-ī	mōt-um	<i>set in motion</i>
vov-eō	-ēre	vōv-ī	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>
sed-eō	-ēre	sēd-ī	sess-um	<i>sit</i>

Compounds as

possid-eō	-ēre	possēd-ī	possess-um	<i>possess</i>
------------------	------	-----------------	-------------------	----------------

Except

circumsed-eō	-ēre	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	<i>besiege</i>
supersed-eō	-ēre	supersēd-ī	supersess-um	<i>forbear</i>
vid-eō	-ēre	vid-ī	vis-um	<i>see</i>
pav-eō	-ēre	pāv-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	—	<i>gleam</i>
indulg-eō	-ēre	induls-ī	—	<i>be indulgent</i>
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	—	<i>press</i>
frig-eō	-ēre	frix-ī	—	<i>be cold</i>
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	—	<i>shine</i>
torqu-eō	-ēre	tors-ī	tort-um	<i>twist</i>
aug-eō	-ēre	aux-ī	auct-um	<i>augment</i>
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	<i>mourn for</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-eō	-ēre	ars-ī	ars-um	<i>be on fire</i>
haer-eō	-ēre	haes-ī	haes-um	<i>stick</i>
iub-eō	-ēre	iuss-ī	iuss-um	<i>command</i>
man-eō	-ēre	mans-ī	mans-um	<i>remain</i>
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	<i>caress</i>
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	{ mult-um muls-um }	<i>milk</i>
rid-eō	-ēre	ris-ī	ris-um	<i>laugh</i>
suaſ-eō	-ēre	suaſ-ī	suaſ-um	<i>recommend</i>
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	<i>abolish</i>
ci-eō	-ēre	civ-ī	cit-um	<i>arouse</i>
dēl-eō	-ēre	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	<i>abolish</i>
fl-eō	-ēre	flēv-ī	flēt-um	<i>weep</i>
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	<i>spin</i>
compl-eō	-ēre	complēv-ī	complēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	<i>fill</i>
repl-eō	-ēre	replēv-ī	replēt-um	<i>refill</i>
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	<i>fill up</i>

E.—Perfect formed by U.

This is the way in which the perfect base of *moneō* and of other verb of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

doc-eō	-ēre	docu-ī	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
misc-eō	-ēre	miscu-ī	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
ten-eō	-ēre	tenu-ī	tent-um	<i>hold</i>
Comp. as retin-eō	-ēre	retinu-ī	retent-um	<i>hold back</i>
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	<i>scorch</i>
cens-eō	-ēre	censu-ī	cens-um	<i>count</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-eō	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	<i>lunch</i>
ferv-eō	-ēre	ferv-ī (or ferbu-ī)		<i>be boiling</i>
strid-eō	-ēre	strid-ī		<i>creak</i>

356.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
can-ō	-ere	cecin-ī	cant-um	<i>sing</i>
Compounds as				
praecin-ō (§ 356, E)				
Compounds of dō,				
except circumd-ō				
as ēd-ō *	-ere	ēdid-ī	ēdit-um	<i>give out</i>
Including :				
crēd-ō	-ere	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	<i>trust</i>
perd-ō	-ere	perdid-ī	perdit-um	<i>destroy</i>
vend-ō	-ere	vendid-ī	vendit-um	<i>sell</i>
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	<i>prick</i>
Compounds as				
compung-ō (§ 356, c)				
sist-ō	-ere	stit-ī	stat-um	<i>make to stand</i>
Comp. as consist-ō	-ere	constit-ī	constit-um	<i>stand still</i>
Except				
circumsist-ō	-ere	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>
tang-ō	-ere	tetig-ī	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Comp. as attig-ō	-ere	attig-ī	attact-um	<i>touch *</i>
tend-ō	-ere	tetend-ī	tent-um	<i>stretch</i>
cad-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	cās-um	<i>fall</i>
Comp. as concid-ō	-ere	concid-ī	—	<i>fall</i>
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occās-um	<i>fall, set</i>
recid-ō	-ere	reccid-ī	recās-um	<i>fall back</i>
caed-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	caes-um	<i>cut</i>
Comp. as occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occis-um	<i>kill</i>
curr-ō	-ere	cucurr-ī	ours-um	<i>run</i>
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-ere	{ accucurr-ī or accurr-ī }		accurs-um <i>run to</i>
fall-ō	-ere	fefell-ī	fals-um	<i>deceive</i>
Comp. refell-ō	-ere	refell-ī	—	<i>disprove</i>

* Some of these are compounds of dō, *I give*, others of a verb -dō, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ō	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
pend-ō	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	<i>weigh out, pay</i>
tund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	{ tuns-um tūs-um }	<i>beat</i>
disc-ō	-ere	didic-ī	—	<i>learn</i>
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī	—	<i>learn besides</i>
parc-ō	-ere	peperc-ī	pars-ūrus	<i>be sparing</i>
posc-ō	-ere	poposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
Comp. as dēposc-ō	-ere	dēpoposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.				
ag-ō	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Comp. as abig-ō	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Except circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	<i>drive around</i>
cōg-ō	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	<i>drive together, compel</i>
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī	—	<i>pass (time)</i>
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	<i>accomplish</i>
em-ō	-ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Comp. as adim-ō	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Except coem-ō	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	<i>buy up</i>
frang-ō	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	<i>break</i>
Compounds as				
confring-ō	-ere	confrēg-ī	confract-um	<i>break</i>
leg-ō	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	<i>pick, read</i>
Comp. as collig-ō	-ere	collēg-ī	collect-um	<i>collect</i>
But <i>e</i> remains in				
perleg-ō	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	<i>read through</i>
releg-ō	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	<i>again go over</i>
Perf. differs in				
dilig-ō	} (§ 356, c.)			
intelleg-ō				
negleg-ō				
linqu-ō	-ere	liqu-ī	—	<i>leave</i>
Comp. as relinqu-ō	-ere	reliqu-ī	relict-um	<i>leave</i>
pang-ō	-ere	pēg-ī or pepig-ī	pact-um	<i>fasten</i>
Comp. : comping-ō	-ere	compēg-ī	compact-um	<i>join together</i>
rump-ō	-ere	rūp-ī	rupt-um	<i>break</i>
vinc-ō	-ere	vīc-ī	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
ed-ō	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
fund-ō	-ere	fūd-ī	fūs-um	<i>pour</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
carp-ō	-ere	carps-ī	carpt-um	<i>pluck</i>
Comp. as dēcerp-ō	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	<i>pluck off</i>
Four compounds of				
em-ō :				
cōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	<i>deck</i>
dēm-ō	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	<i>take off</i>
prōm-ō	-ere	promps-ī	prompt-um	<i>bring out</i>
sūm-ō	-ere	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
ger-ō	-ere	gess-ī	gest-um	<i>carry</i>
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	<i>put on the bridal veil, i.e. be married</i>
rēp-ō	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	<i>creep</i>
scalp-ō	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	<i>carve</i>
scrib-ō	-ere	scrips-ī	script-um	<i>write</i>
sculp-ō	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	<i>carve</i>
serp-ō	-ere	serps-ī	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
temn-ō	-ere	temps-ī	tempt-um	<i>despise</i>
fir-ō	-ere	uss-ī	ust-um	<i>burn, inflame</i>
Comp. : combūr-ō	-ere	combuss-ī	combust-um	<i>burn up</i>
cing-ō	-ere	cinx-ī	cinot-um	<i>gird</i>
coqu-ō	-ere	cox-ī	coot-um	<i>cook</i>
dic-ō (§ 123)	-ere	dix-ī	dict-um	<i>say</i>
duc-ō (§ 123)	-ere	dux-ī	duct-um	<i>lead</i>
fig-ō	-ere	finx-ī	fict-um	<i>form</i>
affig-ō	-ere	affix-ī	affict-um	<i>strike against</i>
config-ō	-ere	conflux-ī	conflict-um	<i>contend</i>
infig-ō	-ere	influx-ī	inflict-um	<i>strike on</i>
iung-ō	-ere	iunx-ī	iunct-um	<i>join</i>
Three compounds of				
leg-ō (§ 356, B) :				
dilig-ō	-ere	dillex-ī	dilect-um	<i>love</i>
intelleg-ō	-ere	intellex-ī	intellect-um	<i>understand</i>
negleg-ō	-ere	neglex-ī	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
ping-ō	-ere	pinx-ī	pict-um	<i>paint</i>
plang-ō	-ere	planx-ī	planet-um	<i>beat</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
Compounds of punġ-ō				
(§ 356, A), as				
compung-ō	-ere	compunx-i	compunct-um	<i>sting</i>
reg-ō	-ere	rex-i	rect-um	<i>rule</i>
Comp. as corrig-ō	-ere	correx-i	correct-um	<i>correct</i>
Except perg-ō	-ere	perrex-i	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
surg-ō	-ere	surrex-i	surrect-um	<i>rise</i>
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-i	distinct-um	<i>distinguish</i>
extingu-ō	-ere	extinx-i	extinct-um	<i>extinguish</i>
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-i	restit-um	<i>extinguish</i>
string-ō	-ere	strinx-i	strict-um	<i>strip</i>
stru-ō	-ere	strux-i	struct-um	<i>pile</i>
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-i	suct-um	<i>suck</i>
teg-ō	-ere	tex-i	tect-um	<i>cover</i>
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-i	tinct-um	<i>steep</i>
trah-ō	-ere	trax-i	tract-um	<i>draw</i>
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ere	unx-i	unct-um	<i>anoint</i>
veh-ō	-ere	vex-i	vect-um	<i>carry</i>
viv-ō	-ere	vix-i	vict-um	<i>live</i>
cēd-ō	-ere	cess-i	cess-um	<i>yield</i>
claud-ō	-ere	claus-i	claus-um	<i>shut</i>
Comp. as conclūd-ō	-ere	conclūs-i	conclūs-um	<i>confine</i>
divid-ō	-ere	divis-i	divis-um	<i>divide</i>
laed-ō	-ere	laes-i	laes-um	<i>hurt</i>
Comp. as collid-ō	-ere	collis-i	collis-um	<i>clash</i>
lūd-ō	-ere	lūs-i	lūs-um	<i>play</i>
merg-ō	-ere	mers-i	mers-um	<i>dip</i>
mitt-ō	-ere	mis-i	miss-um	<i>send</i>
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-i	plaus-um	<i>clap</i>
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-i	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
prem-ō	-ere	press-i	press-um	<i>press</i>
Compounds as				
comprim-ō	-ere	compress-i	compress-um	<i>restrain</i>
rād-ō	-ere	rās-i	rās-um	<i>scrape</i>
rōd-ō	-ere	rōs-i	rōs-um	<i>gnaw</i>
sparg-ō	-ere	spars-i	spars-um	<i>scatter</i>
Comp. as asperg-ō	-ere	aspers-i	aspers-um	<i>sprinkle</i>
trūd-ō	-ere	trūs-i	trūs-um	<i>thrust</i>
vād-ō	-ere	—	—	<i>go</i>
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ere	ēvās-i	ēvās-um	<i>go forth</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supina.	
fig-ō	-ere	fix-ī	fix-um	<i>fix</i>
flect-ō	-ere	flex-ī	flex-um	<i>bend</i>
flu-ō	-ere	flux-ī	flux-um	<i>flow</i>
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
ning-it or ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	—	<i>snore</i>

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel.

cern-ō	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>discern</i>
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	<i>besmear</i>
N. B.—Comp. :				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	<i>besmear</i>
pet-ō	-ere	petiv-ī or peti-ī	petit-um	<i>seek</i>
quaer-ō	-ere	quaesiv-ī	quaesit-um	<i>seek</i>
Comp. as exquir-ō	-ere	exquisiv-ī	exquisit-um	<i>seek out</i>
ser-ō	-ere	sēv-ī	sat-um	<i>sow</i>
Comp. as inser-ō	-ere	insēv-ī	insit-um	<i>ingraft</i>
sin-ō	-ere	siv-ī	sit-um	<i>allow</i>
spern-ō	-ere	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	<i>despise</i>
stern-ō	-ere	strāv-ī	strāt-um	<i>spread</i>
ter-ō	-ere	triv-ī	trit-um	<i>rub</i>
arcess-ō or accers-ō	-ere	arcessiv-ī	arcessit-um	<i>send for</i>
capess-ō	-ere	capessiv-ī	capessit-um	<i>take in hand</i>
laccess-ō	-ere	laccessiv-ī	laccessit-um	<i>provoke</i>
incess-ō	-ere	incessiv-ī	—	<i>assault</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 498) in form :—

adolesc-ō	-ere	adolēv-ī	adult-um	<i>grow up</i>
cresc-ō	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>grow</i>
nosc-ō	-ere	nōv-ī	nōt-um	<i>get to know</i>
Comp. (noscō has lost an initial g) :				
agnosc-ō	-ere	agnōv-ī	agnit-um	<i>recognise</i>
cognosc-ō	-ere	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	<i>ascertain</i>
ignosc-ō	-ere	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
obsolesc-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	<i>decay</i>
pasc-ō	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	<i>pasture</i>
quiesc-ō	-ere	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	<i>rest</i>
scisc-ō	-ere	soiv-ī	soit-um	<i>enact</i>
suesc-ō	-ere	suēv-ī	suēt-um	<i>become accustomed</i>

E.—Perfect formed by U.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
al-ō	-ere	alu-i	alt-um	<i>nourish</i>
Compounds of can-ō (§ 356, A)				
as praecin-ō	-ere	praecinu-i	praecent-um	<i>sing before</i>
col-ō	-ere	colu-i	cult-um	<i>cultivate</i>
accumb-ō	-ere	accubu-i	accubit-um	<i>recline at table</i>
incumb-ō	-ere	incubu-i	incubit-um	<i>lean</i>
occumb-ō	-ere	occubu-i	occubit-um	<i>sink</i>
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-i	prōcubit-um	<i>bend down</i>
recumb-ō	-ere	recubu-i	recubit-um	<i>recline</i>
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-i	succubit-um	<i>submit</i>
consul-ō	-ere	consulu-i	consult-um	<i>consult</i>
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-i	fremit-um	<i>roar</i>
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-i	gemit-um	<i>groan</i>
gign-ō	-ere	genu-i	genit-um	<i>produce</i>
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-i	occult-um	<i>hide</i>
pōn-ō	-ere	posu-i	posit-um	<i>place</i>
ser-ō	-ere	—	sert-um	<i>join</i>
Comp. as conser-ō	-ere	conseru-i	consert-um	<i>join</i>
tex-ō	-ere	texu-i	text-um	<i>weave</i>
vom-ō	-ere	vomu-i	vomit-um	<i>vomit</i>
met-ō	-ere	(messem fēc-i)	mess-um	<i>reap</i>
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-i	—	<i>check</i>
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-i	—	<i>resound</i>
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-i	—	<i>tremble</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

acu-ō	-ere	acu-i	acūt-um	<i>sharpen</i>
argu-ō	-ere	argu-i	argūt-um	<i>accuse</i>
dilu-ō	-ere	dilu-i	dilūt-um	<i>wash out</i>
exu-ō	-ere	exu-i	exūt-um	<i>strip off</i>
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-i	imbūt-um	<i>steep</i>
indu-ō	-ere	indu-i	indūt-um	<i>put on</i>
minu-ō	-ere	minu-i	minūt-um	<i>lessen</i>
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-i	abnūt-um	<i>refuse</i>
annu-ō	-ere	annu-i	annūt-um	<i>assent</i>
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-i	pollūt-um	<i>defile</i>
statu-ō	-ere	statu-i	statūt-um	<i>settle</i>

Compounds as

constitu-ō	-ere	constitu-i	constitūt-um	<i>settle</i>
-------------------	-------------	-------------------	---------------------	---------------

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	<i>stitch</i>
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
ru-ō	-ere	ru-ī	rūt-um	<i>rush down</i>
Comp. as diru-ō	-ere	diru-ī	dirut-um	<i>demolish</i>
metu-ō	-ere	metu-ī	—	<i>fear</i>
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	—	<i>agree</i>
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī	—	<i>pay</i>
plu-it	-ere	plu-it (or plūv-it)	—	<i>rain</i>
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	soltū-um	<i>loose</i>
volv-ō	-ere	volv-ī	voltū-um	<i>roll</i>
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessit-um	<i>accomplish</i>
accend-ō	-ere	accend-ī	accens-um	<i>kindle</i>
incend-ō	-ere	incend-ī	incens-um	<i>set on fire</i>
succend-ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	<i>kindle below</i>
dēfend-ō	-ere	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	<i>stumble</i>
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	<i>chew</i>
pand-ō	-ere	pand-ī	pass-um	<i>spread open</i>
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	<i>seize</i>
scand-ō	-ere	scand-ī	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Comp. as ascend-ō	-ere	ascend-ī	ascens-um	<i>climb up</i>
sid-ō	-ere	sid-ī	—	<i>settle down</i>
Comp. as consid-ō	-ere	consid-ī	consess-um	<i>settle down</i>
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
verr-ō	-ere	verr-ī	vers-um	<i>sweep</i>
vert-ō	-ere	vert-ī	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
bib-ō	-ere	bib-ī	—	<i>drink</i>
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	<i>hammer out</i>
strid-ō	-ere	strid-ī	—	<i>creak</i>
vīs-ō	-ere	vīs-ī	—	<i>visit</i>

In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

find-ō	-ere	fid-ī	fiss-um	<i>cleave</i>
scind-ō	-ere	scid-ī	sciss-um	<i>rend</i>
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	perculs-um	<i>overturn</i>

357. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

par-iō	-ere	peper-ī	part-um	<i>produce</i>
Compounds (4th conj.) : comper-iō and reper-iō (§ 358, F)				

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cap-iō	-ere	cēp-ī	capt-um	<i>take</i>
Comp. as accip-iō	-ere	accēp-ī	accept-um	<i>receive</i>
fac-iō	-ere	fēc-ī	fact-um	<i>make, do</i>
Comp. (§ 123) as				
satisfac-iō	-ere	satisfēc-ī	satisfact-um	<i>satisfy</i>
„ with preps. as				
affic-iō	-ere	affēc-ī	affect-um	<i>affect</i>
fug-iō	-ere	fūg-ī	fugit-um	<i>flee</i>
iact-iō	-ere	iēc-ī	iact-um	<i>throw</i>
Comp. as abic-iō *	-ere	abiēc-ī	abiect-um	<i>throw away</i>
fod-iō	-ere	fōdi	foss-um	<i>dig</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

allic-iō	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	<i>attract</i>
illic-iō	-ere	illex-ī	illect-um	<i>entice</i>
pellic-iō	-ere	pellex-ī	pellect-um	<i>entice</i>
spec-iō { (in old { Lat. only) }	-ere	spex-ī	—	<i>look</i>
Comp. as aspic-iō	-ere	aspex-ī	aspect-um	<i>look at</i>
quat-iō	-ere	—	quass-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
Comp. as				
concut-iō	-ere	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (I).

cup-iō	-ere	cupiv-ī	cupit-um	<i>desire</i>
sap-iō	-ere	sapiv-ī	—	<i>have taste, know</i>

E.—Perfect formed by U.

ēlic-iō	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	<i>lure forth</i>
rap-iō	-ere	rapu-ī	rapt-um	<i>seize</i>
Comp. as abrip-iō	-ere	abripu-ī	abrept-um	<i>carry off</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coepp-iō { (pres. not) { classical) }	-ere	coepp-ī (§ 190)	coept-um	<i>begin</i>
---	------	------------------------	-----------------	--------------

* In compounds of **iactō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 3).

358.**FOURTH CONJUGATION.**

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: *none*.

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.
ven-iō	-īre	vēn-ī	vent-um

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

farc-iō	-īre	fars-ī	fart-um	<i>stuff</i>
Comp. as referc-iō	-īre	refers-ī	refert-um	<i>stuff</i>
fulc-iō	-īre	fuls-ī	fult-um	<i>prop</i>
haur-iō	-īre	haus-ī	haust-um	<i>drain</i>
saep-iō	-īre	saeps-ī	saept-um	<i>fence in</i>
sanc-iō	-īre	sanx-ī	{ sanct-um or sancit-um }	<i>ratify</i>
sarc-iō	-īre	sars-ī	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
vinc-iō	-īre	vinx-ī	vinct-um	<i>bind</i>
sent-iō	-īre	sens-ī	sens-um	<i>feel</i>

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (I). *

This is the way in which the perfect base of **audiō** and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sepel-iō	-īre	sepeliv-ī	sepult-um
-----------------	-------------	------------------	------------------

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

amic-iō	-ire	{ amicu-ī amix		clothe
aper-iō	-ire	aperu-ī	apert-um	uncover, open
oper-iō	-ire	operu-ī	opert-um	cover
sal-iō	-ire	salu-ī	salt-um	
Comp. as dēsil-iō	-ire	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	leap down

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

comper-iō	-īre	comper-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
reper-iō	-īre	repper-ī	repert-um	<i>find</i>

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

359. FIRST CONJUGATION.All form their supine base like *hortor*.**360.** SECOND CONJUGATION.All form their supine base like *vereor*, except—

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	
<i>r-eor</i>	<i>-ēri</i>	<i>rat-us sum</i>	<i>think</i>
<i>fat-eor</i>	<i>-ēri</i>	<i>fass-us sum</i>	<i>acknowledge</i>
Compounds as			
<i>confit-eor</i>	<i>-ēri</i>	<i>confess-us sum</i>	<i>confess</i>
<i>aud-eō</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>aus-us sum</i>	<i>dare</i>
<i>gaud-eō</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>gāvis-us sum</i>	<i>rejoice</i>

361. THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>fru-or</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>fruct-us sum</i>	<i>enjoy oneself</i>
<i>fung-or</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>funct-us sum</i>	<i>busy oneself</i>
<i>loqu-or</i>		<i>locūt-us sum</i>	<i>speak</i>
<i>quer-or</i>		<i>quest-us sum</i>	<i>complain</i>
<i>sequ-or</i>		<i>secūt-us sum</i>	<i>follow</i>
<i>amplect-or</i>		<i>amplex-us sum</i>	<i>embrace</i>
<i>complect-or</i>		<i>complex-us sum</i>	<i>embrace</i>
<i>lāb-or</i>		<i>laps-us sum</i>	<i>slide</i>
<i>nit-or</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>{ nis-us sum, I endeavoured }</i>	<i>} endeavour, lean</i>
		<i>{ nix-us sum, I leaned }</i>	
<i>ūt-or</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>ūs-us sum</i>	<i>make use</i>
<i>fid-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>fis-us sum</i>	<i>trust</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 498) in form :—

<i>apiso-or</i>		<i>apt-us sum</i>	<i>obtain</i>
Comp. : <i>adipisc-or</i>		<i>adept-us sum</i>	<i>obtain</i>
<i>comminisc-or</i>		<i>comment-us sum</i>	<i>devise</i>
<i>expergisc-or</i>		<i>experrec-tus sum</i>	<i>awake oneself</i>
<i>irasc-or</i>		<i>irāt-us sum</i>	<i>get angry</i>
<i>nancisc-or</i>		<i>naot-us sum</i>	<i>obtain</i>
<i>nasc-or</i>		<i>nāt-us sum</i>	<i>be born</i>
<i>oblivisc-or</i>		<i>oblīt-us sum</i>	<i>forget</i>
<i>pacisc-or</i>		<i>pact-us sum</i>	<i>bargain</i>
<i>profiscisc-or</i>		<i>profect-us sum</i>	<i>set out</i>
<i>ulcisc-or</i>		<i>ult-us sum</i>	<i>take vengeance</i>
			<i>on, avenge</i>
<i>dēfetisc-or</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>dēfess-us sum</i>	<i>grow weary</i>

362. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	
mor-ior*	-ī	mortu-us sum	<i>die</i>
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum	<i>step</i>
Compounds as			
aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum	<i>attack</i>
pat-ior	-ī	pass-us sum	<i>suffer</i>
Comp. : perpet-ior	-ī	perpass-us sum	<i>endure</i>

363. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **partior**, except —

exper-ior	-īrī	expert-us sum	<i>try</i>
opper-ior	-īrī	{ oppert-us } { opperit-us } sum	<i>wait</i>
or-ior †	-īrī	ort-us sum	<i>rise</i>
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum	<i>agree</i>
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum	<i>measure</i>
ord-ior	-īrī	ors-us sum	<i>begin</i>

MISCELLANEOUS.

364. VERBS WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS FROM VARIOUS ROOTS.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fer-iō	-īre	{ ic-i percuss-i }	ict-um percuss-um	<i>} strike</i>
ferō	ferre	tul-i	lāt-um	<i>bear</i>
fiō	feri	fact-us sum		<i>become</i>
toll-ō	-ere	sustul-i	sublāt-um	<i>raise</i>

365. INTRANSITIVE ACTIVE VERBS USED IN PLACE OF PASSIVE VERBS.

fiō	{ I become, am made }	serves as the passive of faciō ,		<i>I make, do</i>
pereō	<i>I perish</i>	„	„	perdō , <i>I destroy</i>
vāpul-ō, -āre	<i>I get whipped</i>	„	„	verberō , <i>I whip</i>
vāneō	<i>I am on sale</i>	„	„	vendō , <i>I sell</i>

* Fut Partic. **moritūrus**. † Fut. Partic. **oritūrus**.

366. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS.

This list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, together with irregular verbs, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from *amō*, *moneō*, and *audiō* respectively; except—

(a) Inceptive verbs in *-ascō*, *-escō*, *-iscō*, formed from simple verbs, the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(b) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, *e.g.*—

	Pres. Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Simple verb :	<i>dūc-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>dux-ī</i>	<i>duct-um</i>	<i>lead</i>
Compound verb :	<i>abduc-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>abdux-ī</i>	<i>abduct-um</i>	<i>lead away</i>
Simple verb :	<i>pell-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>pepul-ī</i>	<i>puls-um</i>	<i>drive</i>
Compound verb :	<i>impell-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>impul-ī</i>	<i>impulsum</i>	<i>drive on</i>

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. The perfect and supine of verbs which are only slightly modified in composition, *e.g. occidō*, *I kill* (from *ob* and *caedō*), must be ascertained by reference to the simple verb; but compound verbs such as *surgō*, *I arise* (compounded of *sub* and *regō*), of which the elements cannot readily be seen, are given in alphabetical order as well as under the simple verb. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, *e.g. abnuō*, *I refuse*, are given in alphabetical order.

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition see § 164.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>abnu-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>abnu-ī</i>	<i>abnūt-um</i>	<i>refuse</i>
<i>abol-eō</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	<i>abolēv-ī</i>	<i>abolit-um</i>	<i>abolish</i>
<i>accend-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>accend-ī</i>	<i>accens-um</i>	<i>kindle</i>
<i>accumb-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>accubu-ī</i>	<i>accubit-um</i>	<i>recline at table</i>
<i>acu-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>acu-ī</i>	<i>acūt-um</i>	<i>sharpen</i>
<i>adipisc-or</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>adept-us sum</i>		<i>obtain</i>
<i>adolesc-ō</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>adolēv-ī</i>	<i>adult-um</i>	<i>grow up</i>

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
afflig-ō	-ere	afflix-ī	afflict-um	<i>strike against</i>
ag-ō	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Compounds as				
abig-ō	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Except				
circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	<i>drive around</i>
cōg-ō	-ere	coōg-ī	coact-um	<i>drive together,</i> <i>compel</i>
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī	—	<i>pass (time)</i>
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	<i>accomplish</i>
alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
allic-iō	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	<i>attract</i>
al-ō	-ere	alu-ī	alt-um	<i>nourish</i>
amic-iō	-ire	{ amicu-ī amix-ī }	amict-um	<i>clothe</i>
amplect-or	-ī	amplex-us sum		<i>embrace</i>
annu-ō	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	<i>assent</i>
aper-iō	-ire	aperu-ī	apert-um	<i>uncover, open</i>
apisc-or	-ī	apt-us sum		<i>obtain</i>
Compound :				
adi pisc-or	-ī	adept-us sum		<i>obtain</i>
arcess-ō or arcess-ō	-ere	arcessiv-ī	arcessit-um	<i>send for</i> *
ard-eō	-ēre	ars-ī	ars-um	<i>be on fire</i>
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	<i>accuse</i>
assent-ior	-irī	assens-us sum		<i>agree</i>
aud-eō	-ēre	aus-us sum		<i>dare</i>
aug-eō	-ēre	aux-ī	auct-um	<i>augment</i>
bib-ō	-ere	bib-ī	—	<i>drink</i>
cad-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	cās-um	<i>fall</i>
Compounds as				
concid-ō	-ere	concid-ī	—	<i>fall</i>
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occās-um	<i>fall, set</i>
recid-ō	-ere	reccid-ī	recās-um	<i>fall back</i>
caed-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	caes-um	<i>cut</i>
Compounds as				
occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occis-um	<i>kill</i>
can-ō	-ere	cecin-ī	cant-um	<i>sing</i>
Compounds as				
praecin-ō	-ere	praecin-ī	praecent-um	<i>sing before</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
capess-ō	-ere	capessiv-ī	capessīt-um	<i>take in hand</i>
cap-iō	-ere	cēp-ī	capt-um	<i>take</i>
Compounds as				
accip-iō	-ere	accēp-ī	accept-um	<i>receive</i>
carp-ō	-ere	carps-ī	carpt-um	<i>pluck</i>
Compounds as				
dēcerp-ō	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	<i>pluck off</i>
cav-eō	-ēre	cāv-ī	caut-um	<i>beware of</i>
cēd-ō	-ere	cess-ī	cess-um	<i>yield</i>
cens-eō	-ēre	censu-ī	cens-um	<i>count</i>
cern-ō	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>discern</i>
ci-eō	-ēre	civ-ī	cit-um	<i>arouse</i>
cing-ō	-ere	cīn-ī	cinct-um	<i>gird</i>
claud-ō	-ere	claus-ī	claus-um	<i>shut</i>
Compounds as				
conclūd-ō	-ere	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	<i>confine</i>
coep-iō { (pres. not) (classical) }	-ere	coep-ī	coept-um	<i>begin</i> [compel]
cōg-ō	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	<i>drive together,</i>
col-ō	-ere	colu-ī	cult-um	<i>cultivate</i>
combūr-ō	-ere	combuss-ī	combust-um	<i>burn up</i>
comminisc-or	-ī	comment-us	sum	<i>devise</i>
cōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	<i>deck</i>
comper-iō	-īre	comper-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-ī	—	<i>check</i>
complect-or	-ī	complex-us	sum	<i>embrace</i>
compl-eō	-ēre	complēv-ī	complēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
concut-iō	-ere	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake</i>
conflig-ō	-ere	conflīx-ī	conflict-um	<i>contend</i>
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	—	<i>agree</i>
consul-ō	-ere	consulu-ī	consult-um	<i>consult</i>
coqu-ō	-ere	coq-ī	coct-um	<i>cook</i>
crēd-ō	-ere	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	<i>trust</i>
crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	<i>rattle</i>
cresc-ō (§ 412)	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>grow</i>
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	<i>lie down</i>
cup-iō	-ere	cupiv-ī	cupit-um	<i>desire</i>
curr-ō	-ere	cucurr-ī	curs-um	<i>run</i>
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-ere	{ accucurr-ī or accurr-ī }	accurs-um	<i>run to</i>

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
dēcut-iō	-ere	dēcuss-ī	dēcuss-um	<i>shake off</i>
dēfend-ō	-ere	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
dēfētisc-or	-ī	dēfess-us sum		<i>grow weary</i>
dēl-eō	-ēre	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	<i>abolish</i>
dēm-ō	-ere	dēmps-ī	dēmt-um	<i>take off</i>
dīc-ō (§ 123)	-ere	dix-ī	dict-um	<i>say</i>
dilu-ō	-ere	dilu-ī	dilūt-um	<i>wash out</i>
disc-ō	-ere	didic-ī	—	<i>learn</i>
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī	—	<i>learn besides</i>
discut-iō	-ere	discuss-ī	discuss-um	<i>shatter</i>
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-ī	distinot-um	<i>distinguish</i>
dīvid-ō	-ere	dīvīs-ī	dīvīs-um	<i>divide</i>
d-ō	-are	ded-ī	dat-um	<i>give</i>
Comp. as ēd-ō *	-ere	ēdid-ī	ēdit-um	<i>give out</i>
Except				
circumd-ō	-are	circumdēd-ī	circumdat-um	<i>put round</i>
doc-eō	-ēre	docu-ī	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	<i>tame</i>
dūc-ō (§ 123)	-ere	dux-ī	duct-um	<i>lead</i>
ed-ō	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
ēlic-iō	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	<i>lure forth</i>
em-ō	-ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Compounds				
as adim-ō	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Except coem-ō	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	<i>buy up</i>
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	<i>wear to death</i>
eō (§ 173)	ire	iv-ī or i-ī	it-um	<i>go</i>
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	<i>hammer out</i>
excūt-iō	-ere	excuss-ī	excuss-um	<i>shake out</i>
expergisc-or	-ī	experrect-us sum		<i>awake oneself</i>
exper-ior	-iri	expert-us sum		<i>try</i>
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
extingu-ō	-ere	extinx-ī	extinot-um	<i>extinguish</i>
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	<i>strip off</i>

* Some of these are compounds of dō, *I give*, others of a verb -dō, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessit-um	<i>accomplish</i>
fac-iō	-ere	fēc-i	fact-um	<i>make, do</i>
Comp. as				
satisfac-iō	-ere	satisfēc-i	satisfact-um	<i>satisfy</i>
„ with preps. as				
affic-iō	-ere	affēc-i	affect-um	<i>affect</i>
fall-ō	-ere	fefell-ī	fals-um	<i>deceive</i>
Comp. : refell-ō	-ere	refell-ī	—	<i>disprove</i>
faro-iō	-ire	fars-ī	fart-um	<i>stuff</i>
Compounds as				
refero-iō	-ire	refers-ī	refert-um	<i>stuff</i>
fat-eor	-ēri	fass-us sum		<i>acknowledge</i>
Compounds as				
confit-eor	-ēri	confess-us sum		<i>confess</i>
fav-eō	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	<i>be favourable</i>
fer-iō	-ire	{ (iō-ī) (percuss-ī)	{ (ict-um) (percuss-um)	} <i>strike</i>
ferō (§ 163)	ferre	(tul-ī)	(lāt-um)	
Comp. with				
ab : aufer-ō	-re	abstul-ī	ablāt-um	<i>bear away</i>
ad : affer-ō	-re	attul-ī	allāt-um	<i>bring</i>
cum : confer-ō	-re	contul-ī	collāt-um	<i>bring together</i>
dis : differ-ō	-re	distul-ī	dilāt-um	<i>separate</i>
ex : effer-ō	-re	extul-ī	ēlāt-um	<i>bring out</i>
in : infer-ō	-re	intul-ī	illāt-um	<i>bring in</i>
ob : offer-ō	-re	obtul-ī	oblāt-um	<i>offer</i>
re : refer-ō	-re	rettul-ī	relāt-um	<i>bear back</i>
rē : rēfer-t	-re	rētul-it	—	<i>concern</i>
sub : suffer-ō	-re	sustul-ī	sublāt-um	<i>endure</i>
Other preps. un- changed, as in				
dēfer-ō	-re	dētul-ī	dēlātum	<i>bear down</i>
ferv-eō	-ēre	{ ferbu-ī ferv-ī	{ —	<i>be boiling</i>
fid-ō	-ere	fis-us sum		<i>have confidence</i>
fig-ō	-ere	fix-ī	fix-um	<i>fix</i>
find-ō	-ere	fid-ī	fiss-um	<i>cleave</i>
fiŋg-ō	-ere	finx-ī	fict-um	<i>form</i>
fiō (§ 165)	feri	(fact-us sum)		<i>become</i>
flect-ō	-ere	flex-ī	flex-um	<i>bend</i>
fl-eō	-ēre	flēv-ī	flāt-um	<i>weep</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
flu-ō	-ere	flux-ī	flux-um	<i>flow</i>
fod-iō	-ere	fōd-ī	foss-um	<i>dig</i>
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	<i>cherish</i>
frang-ō	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	<i>break</i>
Compounds as				
confring-ō	-ere	confrēg-ī	contract-um	<i>break</i>
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	<i>roar</i>
fric-ō	-āre	friou-ī	{ friet-um or fricat-um }	<i>rub</i>
frig-eō	-ēre	frix-ī	—	<i>be cold</i>
fru-or	-ī	fruct-us sum		<i>enjoy oneself</i>
fug-iō	-ere	fūg-ī	fugit-um	<i>flee</i>
fulc-iō	-ire	fuls-ī	fult-um	<i>prop</i>
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	—	<i>gleam</i>
fund-ō	-ere	fūd-ī	fūs-um	<i>pour</i>
fung-or	-ī	funct-us sum		<i>busy oneself</i>
gaud-eō	-ēre	gāvis-us sum		<i>rejoice</i>
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	<i>groan</i>
ger-ō	-ere	gess-ī	gest-um	<i>carry</i>
gign-ō	-ere	genu-ī	genit-um	<i>produce</i>
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum		<i>step</i>
Compounds as				
aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum		<i>attack</i> [†]
haer-eō	-ēre	haes-ī	haes-um	<i>stick</i>
haur-iō	-ire	haus-ī	haust-um	<i>drain</i>
iac-iō	-ere	iēc-ī	iact-um	<i>throw</i>
Compounds as				
abic-iō *	-ere	abiēc-ī	abieci-um	<i>throw away</i>
ignosc-ō	-ere	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
illic-iō	-ere	illex-ī	illect-um	<i>entice</i>
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	<i>steep</i>
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	<i>fill</i>
incend-ō	-ere	incend-ī	incens-um	<i>set on fire</i>
incess-ō	-ere	incessiv-ī	—	<i>assault</i>
incumb-ō	-ere	incubu-ī	incubit-um	<i>lean</i>
incut-iō	-ere	incuss-ī	incuss-um	<i>strike into</i>
indulg-eō	-ēre	induls-ī	—	<i>be indulgent</i>

* In compounds of **iaciō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 636, 3).

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
indu-ō	-ere	indu-ī	indūt-um	<i>put on</i>
infig-ō	-ere	infix-ī	infiēt-um	<i>strike on</i>
irasc-or	-ī	irāt-us sum		<i>get angry</i>
iub-eō	-ēre	iuss-ī	iuss-um	<i>command</i>
iung-ō	-ere	iunx-ī	iunct-um	<i>join</i>
iuv-ō	-āre	iūv-ī	iūt-um	<i>help, delight</i>
lāb-or	-ī	laps-us sum		<i>slide</i>
laccess-ō	-ere	laccessiv-ī	laccessit-um	<i>provoke</i>
laed-ō	-ere	laes-ī	laes-um	<i>hurt</i>
Compounds as				
collid-ō	-ere	collis-ī	collis-um	<i>clash</i>
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī { perf. { part {	lavāt-um { laut-us { lōt-us }	<i>wash</i>
leg-ō	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	<i>pick, read</i>
Compounds as				
collig-ō	-ere	collēg-ī	collect-um	<i>collect</i>
But e remains in				
perleg-ō	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	<i>read through</i>
releg-ō	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	<i>again go over</i>
Perf. differs in				
dilig-ō	-ere	dīlex-ī	dilect-um	<i>love</i>
intelleg-ō	-ere	intellex-ī	intellect-um	<i>understand</i>
negleg-ō	-ere	neglex-ī	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	<i>besmear</i>
N B.—Comp. :				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	<i>besmear</i>
linqu-ō	-ere	liqu-ī	—	<i>leave</i>
Compounds as				
relinqu-ō	-ere	reliqu-ī	relict-um	<i>leave</i>
loqu-or	-ī	loctt-us sum		<i>speak</i>
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	—	<i>shine</i>
lūd-ō	-ere	lūs-ī	lūs-um	<i>play</i>
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	<i>mourn for</i>
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī	—	<i>pay</i>
mālō (§ 158)	malle	mālu-ī	—	<i>will rather</i>
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	<i>chew</i>
man-eō	-ēre	mans-ī	mans-um	<i>remain</i>
merg-ō	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	<i>dip</i>
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum		<i>measure</i>

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
met-ō	-ere	(messemfēc-ī)	mess-um	<i>reap</i>
metu-ō	-ere	metu-ī	—	<i>fear</i>
mic-ō	-āre	micu-ī	—	<i>vibrate</i>
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	<i>lessen</i>
misc-eō	-ēre	miscu-ī	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
mitt-ō	-ere	mis-ī	miss-um	<i>send</i>
mord-eō	-ēre	momord-ī	mors-um	<i>hite</i>
mor-ior	-ī	mortu-us sum		<i>die</i>
mov-eō	-ēre	mōv-ī	mōt-um	<i>set in motion</i>
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	<i>caress</i>
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	{ mulot-um } { muls-um }	<i>milk</i>
nancisc-or	-ī	nact-us sum		<i>obtain</i>
nasc-or	-ī	nāt-us sum		<i>be born</i>
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	<i>spin</i>
nequ-eō (like } queō)	-ire	{ nequīv-ī } { or nequi-ī }	nequit-um	<i>be unable</i>
ning-it or ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	—	<i>snow</i>
nīt-or	-ī	{ nīs-us sum, I endeavoured } { nix-us sum, I leaned }		<i>endeavour, lean</i>
nōlō	nolle	nōlu-ī	—	<i>be unwilling</i>
nosc-ō	-ere	nōv-ī	nōt um	<i>get to know</i>
Comp. (noscō has lost an initial g) :				
agnosc-ō	-ere	agnōv-ī	agnit-um	<i>recognise</i>
cognosc-ō	-ere	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	<i>ascertain</i>
ignosc-ō	-ere	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	<i>put on the bridal veil, i.e. be married</i>
oblivisc-or	-ī	oblīt-us sum		<i>forget</i>
obsolesc-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	<i>decay</i>
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	<i>hide</i>
occumb-ō	-ere	occubu-ī	occubit-um	<i>sink</i>
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	<i>stumble</i>
oper-iō	-ire	operu-ī	opert-um	<i>cover</i>
opper-ior	-iri	{ oppert-us } { opperit-us }	sum	<i>wait</i>

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ord-ior	-irī	ors-us sum		<i>begin</i>
or-ior	-irī	ort-us sum		<i>rise</i>
pacois-or	-ī	pact-us sum		<i>bargain</i>
pand-ō	-ere	pand-ī	pass-um	<i>spread open</i>
pang-ō	-ere	pēg-ī or pepig-ī	pact-um	<i>fasten</i>
Compound :				
comping-ō	-ere	compēg-ī	compact-um	<i>join together</i>
parc-ō	-ere	peperc-ī	(pars-ūrus)	<i>be sparing</i>
par-iō	-ere	peper-ī	part-um	<i>produce</i>
Compounds :				
comper-iō	-ire	comper-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
reper-iō	-ire	repper-ī	repert-um	<i>find</i>
pasc-ō	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	<i>pasture</i>
pat-ior	-ī	pass-us sum		<i>suffer</i>
Compound :				
perpet-ior	-ī	perpass-us sum		<i>endure</i>
pav-eō	-ere	pāv-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>
pellic-iō	-ere	pellex-ī	pellect-um	<i>entice</i>
pell-ō	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
pend-eō	-ēre	pepend-ī	—	<i>be suspended</i>
pend-ō	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	<i>weight out, pay</i>
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	percula-um	<i>overturn</i>
percut-iō	-ere	percuſs-ī	percuſs-um	<i>strike through</i>
perd-ō	-ere	perdid-ī	perdit-um	<i>destroy</i>
perg-ō	-ere	perrex-ī	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
pet-ō	-ere	petiv-ī or peti-ī	petit-um	<i>seek</i>
ping-ō	-ere	pinx-ī	pict-um	<i>paint</i>
plang-ō	-ere	planx-ī	planct-um	<i>beat</i>
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	<i>clap</i>
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
plic-ō	-āre	{ plicāv-ī plicu-ī	{ plicāt-um plicit-um }	<i>fold</i>
plu-it	-ere	plu-it or plūv-it	—	<i>rain</i>
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	<i>defile</i>
pōn-ō	-ere	posu-ī	posit-um	<i>place</i>
posc-ō	-ere	poposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
Compounds as				
dēposc-ō	-ere	dēpoposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
possid-eō	-ēre	possēd-ī	possess-um	<i>possess</i>
possum	posse	potu-ī	—	<i>be able</i>

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pōt-ō	-āre	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um or pōtāt-um }	<i>drink</i>
prand-eō	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	<i>lunch</i>
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	<i>seize</i>
prem-ō	-ere	press-ī	press-um	<i>press</i>
Compounds as				
comprim-ō	-ere	compress-ī	compress-um	<i>restrain</i>
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	<i>bend down</i>
proficisc-or	-ī	profect-us sum		<i>set out</i>
prōm-ō	-ere	promps-ī	prompt-um	<i>bring out</i>
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	<i>prick</i>
Compounds as				
compung-ō	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	<i>sting</i>
quaer-ō	-ere	quaesiv-ī	quaesit-um	<i>seek</i>
Compounds as				
conquir-ō	-ere	conquisiv-ī	conquisit-um	<i>seek out</i>
quat-iō	-ere	—	quass-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
Compounds as				
concut-iō	-ere	concuss-ī	concuss-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
qu-eō	-īre	quīv-ī or qui-ī	quit-um	<i>be able</i>
quer-or	-ī	quest-us sum		<i>complain</i>
quiesco-ō	-ere	quiev-ī	quiēt-um	<i>rest</i>
rād-ō	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	<i>scrape</i>
rap-iō	-ere	rapu-ī	rapt-um	<i>seize</i>
Compounds as				
abrip-iō	-ere	abripu-ī	abrept-um	<i>carry off</i>
recumb-ō	-ere	recubu-ī	recubit-um	<i>recline</i>
rēfer-t	-re	rētul-it	—	<i>concern</i>
reg-ō	-ere	rex-ī	rect-um	<i>rule</i>
Compounds as				
corrig-ō	-ere	correx-ī	correct-um	<i>correct</i>
Except perg-ō				
surg-ō	-ere	perrex-ī	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
	-ere	surrex-ī	surrect-um	<i>rise</i>
r-eor	-ērī	rat-us sum		<i>think</i>
reper-iō	-īre	repper-ī	reperit-um	<i>find</i>
repl-eō	-ēre	replēv-ī	replēt-um	<i>refill</i>
rēp-ō	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	<i>creep</i>
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-ī	restinot-um	<i>extinguish</i>
rid-eō	-ēre	risī	ris-um	<i>laugh</i>
rōd-ō	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	<i>gnaw</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supíne.	
rump-ð	-ere	rûp-i	rupt-um	<i>break</i>
ru-ð	-ere	ru-i	rut-um	<i>rush down</i>
Comp. as diru-ð	-ere	diru-i	dirut-um	<i>demolish</i>
saep-ið	-ire	saeps-i	saept-um	<i>fence in</i>
sal-ið	-ire	salu-i	salt-um	<i>leap</i>
Compounds as				
dësil-ið	-iie	dësilu-i	dësuit-um	<i>leap down</i>
sano-ið	-ire	sanx-i	{ sanct-um or sancit-um }	<i>ratify</i>
sap-ið	-ere	sapiv-i	—	<i>have taste, know</i>
sarc-ið	-ire	sars-i	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
scalp-ð	-ere	scalps-i	scalpt-um	<i>carve</i>
scand-ð	-ere	scand-i	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Compounds as				
ascend-ð	-ere	ascend-i	ascens-um	<i>climb up</i>
scind-ð	-ere	scid-i	sciss-um	<i>rend</i>
scisc-ð	-ere	sciv-i	scit-um	<i>enact</i>
scrib-ð	-ere	scrips-i	script-um	<i>write</i>
sculp-ð	-ere	sculps-i	sculpt-um	<i>carve</i>
sec-ð	-äre	secu-i	sect-um	<i>cut</i>
sed-eð	-äre	sëd-i	sess-um	<i>sit</i>
Compounds as				
assid-eð	-äre	assëd-i	assess-um	<i>sit by</i>
Except				
circumsed-eð	-äre	circumsëd-i	circumsess-um	<i>besiege</i>
supersed-eð	-äre	supersëd-i	supersess-um	<i>forbear</i>
sent-ið	-ire	sens-i	sens-um	<i>feel</i>
sepel-ið	-ire	sepeliv-i	sepult-um	<i>bury</i>
sequ-or	-i	secût-us	sum	<i>follow</i>
ser-ð	-ere	sëv-i	sat-um	<i>sow</i>
Comp. as inser-ð	-ere	insëv-i	insit-um	<i>ingraft</i>
ser-ð	-ere	—	sert-um	<i>join</i>
Comp. as conser-ð	-ere	conseru-i	consert-um	<i>join</i>
serp-ð	-ere	serps-i	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
sîd-ð	-ere	sîd-i	—	<i>settle down</i>
Compounds as				
consid-ð	-ere	consëd-i	consess-um	<i>settle down</i>
sin-ð	-ere	siv-i	sit-um	<i>allow</i>
sist-ð	-ere	stit-i	stat-um	<i>make to stand</i>
Compounds as				
consist-ð	-ere	constit-i	constit-um	<i>stand still</i>

Present Indic. Except	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
circumsist-ō	-ere	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>
sol-eō	-ēre	solit-us sum		<i>be accustomed</i>
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	solūt-um	<i>loose</i>
son-ō	-āre	sonu-ī	sonit-um	<i>sound</i>
sparg-ō	-ere	spars-ī	spars-um	<i>scatter</i>
Compounds as				
asperg-ō	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	<i>sprinkle</i>
spec-iō { (in old Lat. only) }	-ere	spex-ī	—	<i>look</i>
Compounds as				
aspic-iō	-ere	aspex-ī	aspect-um	<i>look at</i>
spern-ō	-ere	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	<i>despise</i>
spond-eō	-ēre	spopond-ī	spons-um	<i>promise</i>
statu-ō	-ere	statu-ī	statūt-um	<i>settle</i>
Compounds as				
constitu-ō	-ere	constitu-ī	constitūt-um	<i>settle</i>
stern-ō	-ere	strāv-ī	strāt-um	<i>spread</i>
st-ō	-āre	stet-ī	stat-um	<i>stand</i>
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-āre	praestit-ī	{ praestāt-um praestit-um }	<i>excel</i>
Except				
circumst-ō	-āre	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-ī	—	<i>resound</i>
strid-eō	-ēre	strid-ī	—	<i>creak</i>
strid-ō	-ere			
string-ō	-ere	strinx-ī	strict-um	<i>strip</i>
stru-ō	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	<i>pile</i>
suād-eō	-ēre	suās-ī	suās-um	<i>recommend</i>
succend-ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	<i>kindle below</i>
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	<i>submit</i>
suesc-ō	-ere	suēv-ī	suēt-um	<i>become accus- tomed</i>
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	<i>suck</i>
sum	esse	fu-ī	—	<i>be</i>
So comp. except				
absum	abesse	āfu-ī	—	<i>be absent</i>
possum	posse	potu-ī	—	<i>be able</i>
prōsum	prōdesse	prōfu-ī	—	<i>be beneficial</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sūm-ō	-ere	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	<i>stitch</i>
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
surg-ō	-ere	surrex-ī	surrect-um	<i>arise</i>
taed-et	-ēre	(pertaesum est)		<i>weary</i>
tang-ō	-ere	tetig-ī	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Compounds as				
atting-ō	-ere	attig-ī	attact-um	<i>touch</i>
teg-ō	-ere	tex-ī	tect-um	<i>cover</i>
temn-ō	-ere	temps-ī	tempt-um	<i>despise</i>
tend-ō	-ere	tetend-ī	tent-um	<i>stretch</i>
ten-eō	-ēre	tenu-ī	tent-um	<i>hold</i>
Compounds as				
retin-eō	-ēre	retinu-ī	retent-um	<i>hold back</i>
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>
ter-ō	-ere	triv-ī	trit-um	<i>rub</i>
tex-ō	-ere	texu-ī	text-um	<i>weave</i>
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-ī	tinct-um	<i>steep</i>
toll-ō	-ere	(sustul-ī)	(sublāt-um)	<i>raise</i>
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	<i>clip</i>
ton-ō	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	<i>thunder</i>
torqu-eō	-ēre	tors-ī	tort-um	<i>twist</i>
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	<i>scorch</i>
trah-ō	-ere	trax-ī	tract-um	<i>draw</i>
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
trūd-ō	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	<i>thrust</i>
tund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	{ tuns-um } { tūs-um }	<i>beat</i>
ulcisc-or	-ī	ult-us sum		<i>take vengeance</i> <i>on, avenge</i>
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	<i>anoint</i>
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	—	<i>press</i>
ūr-ō	-ere	uss-ī	ust-um	<i>burn, inflame</i>
ūt-or	-ī	ūs-us sum		<i>make use</i>
vād-ō	-ere	—	—	<i>go</i>
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ere	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	<i>go forth</i>
veh-ō	-ere	vex-ī	vect-um	<i>carry</i>
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
vend-ō	-ere	vendid-ī	vendit-um	<i>sell</i>
vēn-eō	-īre	vēni-ī	vēnit-um	<i>go on sale</i>

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iō	-īre	vēn-i	vent-um	<i>come</i>
verr-ō	-ere	verr-i	vers-um	<i>sweep</i>
vert-ō	-ere	vert-i	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
vet-ō	-āre	vetu-i	vetit-um	<i>forbid</i>
vid-eō	-ēre	vid-i	vis-um	<i>see</i>
vinc-iō	-īre	vinx-i	vinct-um	<i>bind</i>
vinc-ō	-ere	vic-i	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
vis-ō	-ere	vis-i	—	<i>visit</i>
viv-ō	-ere	vix-i	vict-um	<i>live</i>
volō (§ 158)	velle	volu-i	—	<i>will</i>
Comp. : mālō	malle	mālu-i	—	<i>will rather</i>
nōlō	nolle	nōlu-i	—	<i>be unwilling</i>
volv-ō	-ere	volv-i	volut-um	<i>roll</i>
vom-ō	ere	vomu-i	vomit-um	<i>vomit</i>
vov-eō	-ēre	vōv-i	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>

NOTE.—A few verbs have no perfect or supine, and are used only in tenses formed from the present base, *e.g.* **langueō**, *I am faint*. Neither these, nor the defective verbs given in § 190, are included in the above list.

APPENDIX I.

MEMORANDA FOR LATIN COMPOSITION.

367. I. Some English words may have different meanings and be translated in a variety of ways in different contexts.

Examples :—

(1) **Country.**

- (a) He went into the country (*rūs*).
- (b) He died for his country (*patria*).
- (c) He marched into the country of the enemy (*finēs*).
- (d) He ruled the country well (*civitas* or *respublica*).
- (e) He was beloved by the whole country (*civēs*, *the citizens*).

(2) **World.**

- (a) Was the world (the whole universe) made by chance ? (*mundus*)
- (b) The Romans ruled the world (*orbis terrarum* or *omnēs gentēs*).

Cp. *ubi terrarum?* *where in the world?*

368. II. Latin avoids figurative language, English uses it a great deal.

regnum excipere	<i>ascend the throne, receive the crown</i>
------------------------	---

solium ascendere	<i>to climb the steps of the throne</i>
-------------------------	---

Contrast

corōnam accipere	<i>to receive a garland</i>
-------------------------	-----------------------------

369. III. Some common English words differing in meaning from the Latin word from which they are derived :—

<i>acts</i>	not <i>acta</i> (<i>records</i>), but <i>facta</i> .
-------------	--

<i>crown</i>	not <i>corōna</i> (<i>garland</i>), but <i>regnum</i> .
--------------	---

<i>famous</i>	not <i>famōsus</i> (<i>notorious</i>), but <i>clārus</i> .
---------------	--

<i>mortal</i>	not <i>mortālis</i> (<i>mortal man</i>), but <i>mortifer</i> (e.g. <i>vulnus</i> (= fatal) <i>mortiferum</i> , <i>a mortal wound</i>).
---------------	---

<i>nation</i>	not <i>natiō</i> (<i>a wild tribe</i>), but <i>gens</i> .
<i>office</i>	not <i>officium</i> (<i>duty</i>), but <i>magistrātus</i> or <i>honōrēs</i> .
<i>privilege</i>	not <i>privilēgium</i> (<i>a law concerning one man only</i>), but <i>ius</i> .
<i>receive</i>	not <i>recipere</i> (<i>get back</i>), but <i>accipere</i> , <i>excipere</i> .
<i>secure</i>	not <i>sēcūrus</i> (<i>free from care</i>), but <i>tūtus</i> .
<i>vile</i>	not <i>vīlis</i> (<i>cheap</i>), but <i>turpis</i> .

370. IV. Verbs having a perfect participle with active meaning :—

cēnō, *I dine* ; *cēnātus*, *having dined*.

prandeō, *I breakfast* ; *pransus*, *having breakfasted*.

iūrō, *I swear* ; *iūrātus*, *having sworn* (*coniūrātus*, *a conspirator*).

371. Deponent verbs, the perfect participle of which may be either active or passive :—

comitor, 1, *I accompany* ; *comitātus*, *having accompanied* or *having been accompanied*.

tueor, 2, *I protect* ; pf. part. *tuitus* or *tūtus* (= adj. *safe*) in passive sense.

mereor, 2, *I deserve* ; pf. part. *meritus* (*meritum*, *n.*, *desert*, *that which is deserved*).

paciscor, 3, *I agree* ; pf. part. *pactus* (*pactum*, *n.*, *agreement*, *that which is agreed upon*). *

APPENDIX II.

PROSODY AND METRE.

372. QUANTITY.—The metres used by the classical Latin poets depend entirely on quantity, i.e. on the time taken in pronouncing syllables. A syllable contains either one vowel or a diphthong; any syllable containing a diphthong or long vowel is a long syllable, and a syllable containing a short vowel is a short syllable unless two consonants (see Rule 3, below) follow the vowel. Thus, *os*, *bone*, has genitive *ossis*, in which the first syllable is long on account of the position of *o* before *ss*, although the *o* is naturally short, as is seen by the nominative.

373. The following rules will guide the learner in reading verse :—

(1) A diphthong or contracted syllable is long; e.g. *mensāē*, *nīl* (= *nihil*).

(2) The former of two vowels not forming a diphthong is short; e.g. *puer*.

(3) A syllable is long when its vowel is followed in the same word (or partly in the same and partly in the next word) by two consonants (other than *h*), by one of the double consonants *x*, *z*, or by semi-consonant *i*.

(4) A final syllable ending in a consonant counts as long before a word beginning with semi-consonant *i* or a consonant (other than *h*).

(5) A syllable containing a vowel naturally short is either long or short when the vowel is followed by two different consonants of which the second is *l* or *r*; e.g. *pātris* or *patris*, gen. sing. of *pater*. (A vowel by nature long remains long; e.g. *mātris*, gen. sing. of *māter*.)

(6) Final syllables of words ending in *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *as*, *es*, *os*, and *c* are long. Final *a*, however, in nom., voc., and acc. is short. Final *es* is short in such nominatives singular as *mīles*, and in the nom. plural of Greek substantives, e.g. *lampades*; and final *as* is short in the corresponding Greek acc. plural, *lampadas*. Final *os* is short in the nom. of Greek substantives of the second declension, e.g. *Dēlos*.

(7) Final *e* is short, except in the 1st (Greek) and 5th declensions, in 2nd sing. imper. act. of verbs of the 2nd conjugation, and in adverbs.

(8) Final **is** is short, except in acc., dat., and abl. plural, and in 2nd sing. pres. ind. act. of verbs of the 4th conjugation.

(9) Final **us** is short, except in the nom., voc., and acc. plural and gen. sing. of the 4th declension, and in fem. substantives like **pallus**.

(10) Final syllables of words of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant other than **c** or **s** are short.

(11) Monosyllables are generally long, except those ending in **b**, **d**, **t**.

374. ELISION.—Before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** a final vowel or diphthong is elided, as also is a final **m** together with the vowel preceding it; e.g. in the third line quoted in § 377 **posse Italiā** scans as **poss' Italiā** and **Teucrorum āvertere** as **Teucror' āvertere**. This rarely takes place when the two words are not in the same line.

375. METRE.—The metre most commonly used by the poets is the **dactylic hexameter**, or line consisting of six feet, the first four of which are either dactyls or spondees, while the fifth is a dactyl (rarely a spondee) and the sixth is doubtful, i.e. may be long or short. A **dactyl** consists of a long syllable followed by two short ones (— ∪ ∪) and a **spondee** consists of two long syllables.

376. The following is a scheme of the hexameter verse :—

1	2	3	4	5	6
— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪
— —	— —	— ∪ —	— —	— —	— —
				(rare)	

377. The following are examples of the dactylic hexameter divided into feet, with the quantities of the *syllables* marked :—

ārmā vī- | rūmquē cā- | nō ∪ Trō- | iāē quī | prīmūš āb | ōrīs.
 quīdvē dō- | lēns rē- | gīnā ∪ dē- | ūm tōt | vōlvērē | cāsūs.
 iēc pōs- | se Itali- | ā ∪ Teū- | orōrum ā- | vētērē | rēgēm.

Obs.—In reading, the word-accent must be carefully kept; e.g. **dolens** in the second line must be pronounced **dólens** not **dólens**.

378. The hexameter followed by a **pentameter** (i.e. a line of five feet) forms the **elegiac couplet**.

379. The pentameter consists of two half-lines, each of which contains two dactyls followed by a long syllable. In the first half a spondee may be substituted for either of the dactyls.

Obs.—The dactylic pentameter is never used except in the elegiac couplet, *i.e.* each pentameter is preceded by a hexameter.

The following is the scheme of the pentameter :—

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | —
 — — | — — | | ∪

380. Example of the elegiac couplet :—

Īgnībŭs | Īlĭā- | cīs || ādē- | rām, ōŭm | lāpsā cā- | pīllīs
 Dēcīdīt | āntē sā- | crōs || lānēā | vītā fō- | cōs.

NOTE.—The first half of a pentameter always ends with the end of a word. Elision is allowed in the first two feet only.

APPENDIX III.

ABBREVIATIONS.

381.

A. U. C.	annō urbis conditae	<i>in the year of the city's foundation</i>
Cos. Coss.	consule, consulibus	<i>in the consulship of</i>
D.	data (est epistula)	<i>the letter was dated</i>
D D.	dōnō dedit	<i>he gave as a gift</i>
DD.	dedērunt	<i>they gave</i>
D. M. S.	dīs mānibus sacrum	<i>sacred to the divine shades</i> (= sacred to the memory of)
D. S. P.	dē suā pecūniā	<i>at his own cost</i>
Imp.	imperātor	<i>emperor</i>
	patrēs conscripti, or pōnendum cūrāvit	<i>members of the Senate, or</i> <i>he saw to the building of (a monument)</i>
P. M.	pontifex maximus	<i>the chief Pontiff (head of the Roman religion)</i>
P. R.	populus Rōmānus	<i>the Roman people</i>
Quir.	Quiritēs	<i>Roman citizens</i>
S. or Sal.	salūtem	<i>(he sends) greeting (beginning of a letter)</i>
S. C.	Senātus consultum	<i>a decree of the Senate</i>
S. D.	salūtem dicit	<i>he sends greeting (beginning of a letter)</i>
S. P. Q. R.	Senātus populusque Rōmānus	<i>the Senate and Roman people</i>
S. V. B. E. E. Q. V.	sī valēs, bene est : ego quidem valeō	<i>I hope you are well, as I am at present (lit. if you are well, it is well ; I indeed am well)</i>
S. V. G. V.	sī valēs, gaudeō : valeō	<i>if you are well, I am glad ; I am well</i>
TR. PL.	tribūnus plēbis	<i>tribune of the plebs (a magistrate)</i>
TR. POT.	tribūniā potestāte	<i>(invested) with the powers of a tribune (as the emperors were)</i>
X. V.	decemvirōrum	<i>(one) of a commission of ten</i>

PRAENOMINA.

382. A free-born Roman had three names: **praenōmen**, **nōmen**, and **cognōmen**. The **praenōmen** was the **personal** name, the **nōmen** that of the **gens** (*clan*), the **cognōmen** that of the **familia** (*family*); *e.g.* **Publius Cornēlius Scipiō** is the individual **Publius** belonging to the **gens Cornēlia** and the **familia Scipiōnum**.

383. The following is a list of Roman **praenōmina** with the abbreviations commonly used:—

A.	Aulus	N.	Numerius
App.	Appius	P.	Publius
C.	Gaius	Q.	Quintus
Ca.	Gnaeus	Ser.	Servius
D.	Decimus	Sex. or S.	Sextus
K.	Kaesō	Sp.	Spurius
L.	Lūcius	T.	Titus
M.	Marcus	Ti.	Tiberius
M'.	Mānius		

APPENDIX IV.

FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS.

SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES FROM VERBS.

384. The nominative of the verbal substantive, of which the supines are respectively the accusative and ablative cases, is formed by adding **-us** to the supine base. These substantives are of the fourth declension and of masculine gender; e.g. **audit-us**, **-ūs**, *the sense of hearing*; **ūs-us**, **-ūs**, *use*.

385. Substantives formed by adding **-iō** (base **-iōn-**) to the supine base of the verb are very numerous; e.g. **act-iō**, **-iōnis**, *action*. These substantives are all feminine.

386. Substantives formed by adding **-or** (base **-ōr-**) to the supine base denote the agent—i.e. one who performs the action expressed by the verb; e.g. **vēnāt-or**, **-ōris**, *hunter*; **foss-or**, **-ōris**, *digger*. These substantives are masculine.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

387. Adjectives ending in **-ilis** or **-bilis** denote that the substantive to which they refer is capable of performing or (more usually) suffering the action indicated by the verb.

Examples : **doc-ilis**, *teachable*, cp. **docēre**, *to teach*; **ūt-ilis**, *useful*, cp. **ūti**, *to use*; **sta-bilis**, *steadfast*, cp. **stāre**, *to stand*.

Adjectives ending in **-idus** imply a condition or state, those in **-cundus** a characteristic or habit; adjectives in **-bundus** imply (like present participles) the present performance of the verbal action.

Examples : **frig-idus**, *cold*, cp. **frigēre**, *to be cold*; **irā cundus**, *hot-tempered*, cp. **irasci**, *to be angry*, **irātus**, *angry*.

389. Adjectives ending in **-ax** (gen. **-ācis**) indicate a propensity, often an excessive one.

Examples: aud-ax, daring, rash, cp. audēre, to dare; loqu-ax, talkative, cp. loqui, to talk.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

390. Adjectives are formed from substantives by the addition of various endings, the more important of which are illustrated by the following examples:—

Patr-ius, *paternal*, **pater-nus**, *owned by a father*, cp. **pater**, *father*; **quer-nus**, *oaken*, cp. **quercus**, *oak*; **aur-eus**, *golden*, cp. **aurum**, *gold*; **bell-icus**, *military*, cp. **bellum**, *war*; **form-ōsus**, *beautiful*, cp. **forma**, *shape, beauty*; **vi-o-lentus**, *violent*, cp. **vis**, *force*; **barb-ātus**, *bearded*, cp. **barba**, *beard*; **fāt-ālis**, *fated*, cp. **fātum**, *fate*; **salūt-āris**, *healthful*, cp. **salūs** (base, **salūt-**), *health*; **host-ilis**, *hostile*, cp. **hostis**, *enemy*; **Lat-inus**, *Latin*, cp. **Latium**; **oppid-ānus**, *provincial*, cp. **oppidum**, *country town*; **agr-ārius**, *agrarian*, cp. **ager**, *field*.

391. From masculine substantives of the third declension ending in the nominative singular in **-tor** (genitive **-tōris**) feminine substantives may be formed by changing **-tor** to **-trix** (base, **-trīc-**); e.g.—

vēnā-tor, *hunter*

vēnā-trix, **-trīcis**, *huntress*

DIMINUTIVES.

392. From many Latin substantives **diminutives** may be formed, conveying the idea of *smallness*, just as in English we have “islet” from “isle,” “mannikin” from “man,” etc. In the following sections the commoner methods of forming diminutives are indicated.

393. From substantives of the first and second declensions (except some ending in **-er**) diminutives are formed by adding to the base **-ulus** if the substantive is masculine, **-ula** if the substantive is feminine, and **-ulum** if it is neuter; the same rule applies to substantives of the third declension with base ending in a dental (**d, t**) or guttural (**c, g**); e.g.—

rīv-us, *stream*
parm-a, *shield*
oppid-um, *town*
caput (gen. **capit-is**), *head*
rex (gen. **rēg-is**), *king*

rīv-ulus, *streamlet*
parm-ula, *little shield*
oppid-ulum, *small town*
capit-ulum, *little head*
rēg-ulus, *petty king*

394. If the base of the substantive ends in a vowel, -olus, -ola, or -olum is added instead of -ulus, -ula, -ulum; e.g.—

fili-us,	<i>son</i>	fili-olus,	<i>little son</i>
fili-a,	<i>daughter</i>	fili-ola,	<i>little daughter</i>
negōti-um,	<i>business</i>	negōti-olum,	<i>bit of business</i>

NOTE.—If the base ends in l, n, or r, the diminutive termination contracts with this last letter of the base into -llus, -lla, -llum; e.g.—

corō-n-a,	<i>garland</i>	coro-lla,	<i>small garland</i>
libe-r,	<i>book</i>	libe-llus,	<i>pamphlet</i>

395. From substantives other than those included in the preceding sections diminutives ending in -culus, -cula, -culum are formed on the model of the examples here given:—

frāter,	<i>brother</i>	frāter-culus,	<i>little brother</i>
mulier,	<i>woman</i>	mulier-cula,	<i>little woman</i>
corpus,	<i>body</i>	corpus-culum,	<i>atom</i>
nāv-is,	<i>ship</i>	nāv-i-cula,	<i>skiff</i>
vers-us (4th decl.),	<i>verse</i>	vers-i-culus,	<i>little verse</i>
spēs (5th decl.),	<i>hope</i>	spē-cula,	<i>ray of hope</i>

FORMATION OF VERBS FROM VERBS.

396. Three classes of verbs call for notice here:—

- frequentative** verbs, expressing *repeated* action; *
- inceptive** verbs (also called **inchoative**), expressing *incipient* or *increasing* action;
- desiderative** verbs, expressing *desire* of action.

397. The present base of a **frequentative** verb is formed either (i) by adding -it- to the present base of the simple verb, or (ii) by adding -it- to the supine base of the simple verb, or (iii) is identical with the supine base of the simple verb. From verbs of the first conjugation frequentative verbs are formed by the first method only. Many verbs, though frequentative in form, have no frequentative force, but are either equivalent to the simple verb or imply intenser action.

Present (of simple verb).	Supine (of simple verb).	Frequentative.
(i) rog-ō, <i>ask</i>	—	rog-it-ō, <i>ask repeatedly</i>
ag-ō, <i>drive</i>	—	ag-it-ō, <i>shake</i>
min-or, <i>threaten</i>	—	min-it-or, <i>threaten</i>
(ii) legō, <i>read</i>	lect-um	lect-it-ō, <i>read repeatedly</i>
veniō, <i>come</i>	vent-um	vent-it-ō, <i>come frequently</i>
(iii) canō, <i>sing</i>	cant-um	cant-ō, <i>sing</i>
vert-ō, <i>turn</i>	vers-um	vers-ō, <i>twist</i>

398. *Obs.*—Frequentative verbs are all of the first conjugation.

399. *Inceptive* verbs are all of the third conjugation and are formed by adding to the present base of a verb of the

1st conj. -ascō, *e.g.*—

lab-asc-ō, -ere, *begin to totter*, from lab-ō, -āre, *totter*

2nd conj. -escō, *e.g.*—

sil-esc-ō, -ere, *become silent*, ,, sil-eō, -ēre, *be silent*

3rd conj. -escō or -iscō, *e.g.*—

trem-esc-ō }
trem-isc-ō } -ere, *begin to tremble*, ,, trem-ō, -ere, *tremble*

4th conj. -iscō, *e.g.*—

obdorm-isc-ō, -ere, *fall asleep*, ,, dorm-iō, -īre, *sleep*

400. *Desiderative* verbs are formed by adding -uriō to the supine base of the simple verb; *e.g.* ēs-uriō, *I desire to eat, am hungry*, from the base of ēs-um, supine of edō, *I eat*.

401. *Obs.*—All desiderative verbs are of the fourth conjugation.

APPENDIX V.

PARSING.

402. In parsing a *substantive* give (1) kind, (2) gender, (3) number, (4) case, (5) syntax, *i.e.* the reason for the case, (6) nominative and genitive singular, (7) declension.

403. In parsing a *pronoun* give (1) all forms of nominative singular, (2) gender, (3) number, (4) case, (5) syntax. If it is a relative give the antecedent.

404. In parsing an *adjective* give (1) all forms of nominative singular, (2) gender, (3) number, (4) case, (5) syntax. If it is in the comparative or superlative degree give the positive.

405. In parsing a *verb* give (1) voice, (2) mood, (3) tense, (4) number, (5) person, (6) syntax, (7) principal parts (pres. indic., *præ* infin., perfect indic., supine) of the verb from which it comes, (8) conjugation. If a perfect passive form give also gender.

406. In parsing a *participle*, *gerund*, or *gerundive*, give (1) voice, (2) tense, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) principal parts of the verb from which it comes, (7) conjugation.

Supines and *infinitives* are parsed as finite verbs, except that they have neither number nor person.

407. Example.—*Classis quam rex summa diligentia usus comparaverat tempestatibus quassata est.*

Classis : noun, collective, fem., sing., nom., subject of *quassata est*. **Classis**, -is, 3.

Quam : pronoun, *qui, quæ, quod* ; fem., sing., acc., governed by *comparaverat* ; agreeing with its antecedent *classis*.

Rex : noun, common, masc., sing., nom., subject of *comparaverat*. **Rex**, *regis*, 3.

Summa : adjective, *summus*, -a, -um ; fem., sing., abl., qualifying *diligentia* ; superlative of *superus*.

Diligentia : noun, abstract, fem., sing., abl. of instrument with **usus**. **Diligentia**, -ae, 1.

Usus : participle, deponent, perfect, masc., sing., nom., **utor**, **uti**, **usus sum**, 3.

Comparaverat : verb, act., indic., plup., sing., 3rd person, agreeing with its subject **rex**. **Comparo**, **comparavi**, **comparatum**, 1.

Tempestatibus : noun, common, fem., pl., abl. of instrument with **quassata est**. **Tempestas**, -atis, 3.

Quassata est : verb, pass., indic., perf., fem., sing., 3rd person, agreeing with its subject **classis**. **Quasso**, **quassavi**, **quassatum**, 1.

APPENDIX VI.

WORDS SPELT ALIKE BUT DIFFERING IN MEANING.

408. The following lists, which are by no means exhaustive, are not to be learnt by heart, but should be read through and may prove useful for reference.

409. The following can be parsed (1) as verbs or participles, and (2) as some other part of speech :—

VERBS.	NOUNS, ETC.
aggere <i>from</i> aggerō	aggere <i>from</i> agger
cānēs ,, cāneō }	canēs ,, canis
canēs ,, canō }	
can-am, -ās, -ī, -is, <i>from</i> canō	cān-am, -ās, -ī, -is, <i>from</i> cānus
dēcōra <i>from</i> dēcōro	dēcōra <i>from</i> decus
fīd-e, -ēs, fīdō	fīd-ē, -ēs ,, fīdēs
labēs ,, labō	lābēs, (1) <i>a fall</i> , (2) <i>a spot</i>
lābor, <i>I glide</i>	labor, <i>toil</i>
latēre ,, lateō	latere, <i>from later or latus</i>
leg-ēs, -is ,, legō }	lēg-ēs, -is, <i>from</i> lex
lēgēs ,, lēgō }	
māl-am, -is ,, mālō	{ māl-am, -is, <i>from</i> māla
	{ māl-is, <i>from</i> mālum or mālus
	{ malis ,, malus
manē ,, maneō	māne, <i>adv.</i>
mensis ,, metior	{ mensis, <i>from</i> mensa
	{ mensis, <i>a month</i>
miseris ,, mittō	miseris, <i>from</i> miser
nīsi ,, nītor	nisi, <i>conj.</i>
nōta ,, noscō	nota, <i>a mark</i>
nōvi ,, noscō	novī, <i>from</i> novus
reg-e, -ēs, -ī, -is, <i>from</i> regō	rēg-e, -ēs, -ī, -is, <i>from</i> rex
rōsa <i>from</i> rōdō	rosa, <i>a rose</i>
sed-ē, -ēs ,, sedeō	sēd-e, -ēs, <i>from</i> sēdēs
vād-e, -ēs, -is vādō	{ vad-e, -ēs, -is, <i>from</i> vas
	{ vad-is ,, vadum
velis ,, volō	vēl-is ,, vēlum
vēneris veniō	Veneris ,, Venus
virēs vireō	virēs ,, vis
vocēs vocō	vōcēs ,, vox

410. Care is needed to distinguish the following words, many of which in some of their cases differ only in quantity :—

acer, *keen*.

āēr, **āeris** (*acc.* **āera**), *m., the air*.

casses, **-ium**, *a hunting net*.

clāva, *a cudgel*.

collis, *a hill*.

coma, *the hair*.

cupidō, **-inis**, *desire*.

decor, **-ōris**, *m., comeliness*.

fidēs, **-ēi**, *faith*.

fretum, *a strait, sea*.

frons, **frondis**, *foliage*.

lātus, *broad*.

lepor or **lepōs**, **-ōris**, *pleasantness*.

lēvis, *smooth*.

liber, **-era**, **-erum**, *free*.

Līber, **-eri**, *an Italian deity identified with Bacchus*.

māla, *the jaw*.

mālus, *f., an apple-tree, a mast*.

mānō, *I flow*.

mercēs, **-ēdis**, *hire*.

mora, *delay*.

opera, *exertion*.

ōra, *coast*.

orbis, *a ring*.

ovis, *a sheep*.

pālus, **-i**, *a stake*.

pōpulus, *f., a poplar*.

reddō, *I give back*.

secūris, *an axe*.

solum, *the ground*.

tālīs, *such*.

vas, **vadis**, *m., a surety*.

vir, **virī**, *a man*.

vīs, *pl. virēs*, *force*.

acer, **-eris**, *n., a maple*.

aes, **aeris**, *n., bronze*.

cassis, **-idis**, *a helmet*.

cassus, *empty*.

clāvis, *a key*.

clāvus, *a nail*.

collum, *the neck*.

comes, **-itis**, *a companion*.

cōmis, *affable*.

cupidus, *desirous*.

decōrus, *seemly*.

decus, **-oris**, *n., ornament*.

fidēs, **-ium**, *a lyre*.

frētus, *relying*.

frons, **frontis**, *the forehead*.

latus, **-eris**, *n., a side*.

later, **-eris**, *m., a brick*.

lepus, **-oris**, *a hare*.

levis, *light*.

liberī, *children (lit. free people)*.

liber, **-bri**, *a book*.

mālum, *an apple*.

malus, *bad*.

maneō, *I remain*.

merx, **mercis**, *merchandise*.

morus, *a mulberry-tree*.

mōs, **mōris**, *manner*.

(**ops**), **opīs**, *help*.

opus, **-eris**, *work*.

ōs, **ōris**, *mouth*.

os, **ossis**, *bone*.

orbus, *bereft*.

ōvum, *an egg*.

palūs, **-ūdis**, *a swamp*.

populus, **-i**, *m., a people*.

redeō, *I go back*.

sēcūrus, *free from care*.

sōlus, *alone*.

tālus, *a heel, a die*.

vās, **vāsis**, *n., a vessel*.

vīrus, **-i**, *n., venom*.

vīs (*from volō*), *you will*.

MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

1. Romulus, son of Mars, was the first king of the Romans.
2. The king and queen are dear to all the citizens.
3. Citizens, obey me, your king.
4. The king and his son Gaius have been murdered.
5. Give the letter to me, your brother.
6. We shall read the lives of Miltiades, Themistocles and Pausanias, famous men.
7. Miltiades, the Athenian, would not yield to Darius, the king of the Persians.
8. Let us choose, says he, Miltiades as general.
9. Miltiades was made leader of the Greeks.
10. You and I and our friends have conquered the enemy.
11. Horatius, the bravest of the Romans, defended the bridge.
12. Cut down the bridge, O consul, as quickly as you can.
13. Three Roman soldiers were fighting for the temples and houses of Rome.
14. The city of Rome has gates and walls and towers.
15. Greece is the native land of sailors and poets and the mother of the arts.
16. The Rhine and Rhône are large and swift rivers of Europe. Which of the two is the longer?
17. The father-in-law of the brave general gives sharp spurs and a black horse as rewards to his son-in-law.
18. My sister's doves with white wings make their nests in the high pine-tree.
19. The leaders of the enemy do not love peace and honour.
20. The soldiers, who were the guardians of the shining temple of Jupiter, heard the cackling (sonitus) of the geese.
21. In summer the trees are beautiful.
22. In the winter the winds break their branches.
23. A horse has one mouth, two eyes, four legs, and is very useful to man.

24. Is not the boy whom his father praises happy ?
25. To whom does the general give the crown ? To the soldier who saved (servō) his comrade's life.
26. The land was ruled by a good king.
27. The boy killed the bird with a stone.
28. We are loved by our friends and we love them.
29. Do not give him a sword but give him arrows.
30. Boys, obey your masters and love your parents.
31. Did not Marius, the Roman general, conquer the Teutones ?
32. You and I will hide this from our friends.
33. He came into the city with twelve soldiers.
34. He has given his children the bread that they asked him for.
35. These long wars so frightened the people that they longed for peace.
36. The ships of the sailors have many ropes, a few sails, and no nets.
37. The leader of the Athenians defends the city and the citadel with the army and the ships.
38. The top of the mountain was protected by a great tower filled with soldiers.
39. The darts of the enemy will wound severely the brother of Cicero.
40. Those boys do not care about cows, horses, and dogs.
41. Our island has many very beautiful valleys.
42. Grandfathers often give gifts to the little sons of (their) daughters.
43. Mothers never hate their sons, nor boys their mothers.
44. Britain is the native land of sailors and soldiers : its inhabitants will never become slaves.
45. In summer masters give prizes to the boys : some for swimming, others for running.
46. The glad sailors have given the sweet roses to the unfortunate queen.
47. This girl has received a very beautiful book from her father.
48. There are very many men in the warship.
49. Rome was the largest city of Italy and the head of the Roman empire.
50. All good mothers love and cherish their own sons.
51. Were the wicked slaves caught by these soldiers or not ?
52. Our citizens will defend this city with their swords.
53. His books will be very useful to me and to my brother.

54. He had hastened into that district with two legions.
55. The wheels of the chariots were being broken by the stones.
56. The same day these letters were sent to Rome by the consul.
57. The lieutenants, experienced in war, led the forces of the Romans and routed the enemy.
58. The slave who ran away was captured and put to death by his master.
59. The dictator came to Rome that he might defend the city walls.
60. Britain is a small island which is opposite to Gaul.
61. Romulus built the walls of the city of Rome.
62. Let us give useful gifts to our sons and daughters.
63. The name of Rome is very dear to all good citizens.
64. The leader of the Romans has himself taken away our silver and gold.
65. I do not know where the Nervii are, and how far away they are.
66. The Senate commanded the decemvirs to inspect the Sibylline books.
67. He said he would not come before the fifth day.
68. Cassius set out for Sicily, Brutus was sent away to Athens.
69. Do not spare the enemy or their horse-soldiers; we must either conquer or die.
70. Let justice, wisdom and virtue be practised; let vice and envy be avoided.
71. The general drew up the army on a hill which was on this side of the city: the soldiers, frightened by a hail-storm, deserted the camp in the night.
72. Curius Dentatus celebrated a triumph in his consulship: he was the first man to bring four elephants to Rome.
73. He said that from that day he had not ceased to respect the Romans.
74. Pompey slew twenty thousand barbarians and captured 180 cities.
75. Since he had ascertained their plans, he was collecting corn from the fields as quickly as possible.
76. Nobody suspected that Caesar had crossed into Britain from Gaul.
77. Their camp having been captured, the enemy gave hostages to Caesar.
78. When they had re-built the ships, the seventh legion crossed over into Gaul.

338 MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION.

79. Caesar perceived that the chiefs kept coming to the camp.
80. The chiefs promised that they would not make war without a cause.
81. They determined to raise a rebellion.
82. Caesar came to conquer the Britons.
83. I ceased to be ashamed of my poverty.
84. They all acted differently.
85. He arrived contrary to everyone's expectation.
86. He was standing on the top of a tower.
87. He died on the first of May in the year of the city 863.
88. A man whose name was Gaius did this.
89. When I have done this I shall go to Rome.
90. He was sixteen years old on the 15th of October.
91. Seeing is believing ; do not believe all that you hear.
92. I have long been wishing to see you.
93. He said he would not have come if Caesar had not persuaded him.
94. The soldiers were sent by Hasdrubal to Hannibal at Capua.
95. If he had known that you were here, he would not have hoped to be pardoned.
96. The cavalry had to hasten from Rome to Gaul.
97. I should like to know what you think of this.
98. I beseech you not to be idle.
99. Nobody is wise who asks the gods for riches.
100. This book ought to be read by all.
101. The bottom of the mountain was held by the enemy all night.
102. I cannot hear what he says.
103. He asked me why I had come back.
104. He ruled the city for forty years.
105. As the danger was increasing, he said he could not wait any longer.
106. Why have you not performed this duty? You used to be considered a man of great prudence.
107. "You will never be able," he said, "to take the island as long as you employ such generals."
108. Do you think that he did this in order to benefit the State or himself?
109. What would you have done if he had asked you to leave the city?
110. I will go into the garden to see your roses.

111. I stayed at home for three days and then went into the country.

112. I persuaded him that I needed money, but I could not persuade him to give me any.

113. I will see him if I can, but if he has left the city, I will inform you.

114. He said that he did not know what to do.

115. I tried to persuade him to come with me.

116. He ought not to read the book if he is too foolish to understand it.

117. The goddess advised the Athenians to make Miltiades their general.

118. Why did you order me to speak, if you did not wish to hear me?

119. Some (fem.) come to look : others to be looked at.

120. They have sent men into Greece to seek help.

121. When he had resolved to set out from Gaul for Rome, he ordered his ships to be repaired as quickly as possible.

122. How blind I was, that I did not see all this !

123. I fear that nobody will think me wise.

124. When the boys were asked about the apples, they replied that they did not know anything.

125. I told him to send all my books to my brother at Athens.

126. The city was attacked by the Gauls in that year.

127. Having collected an army he set out from Rome.

128. Was not Camillus the noblest of the Romans?

129. I know that the ambassadors have returned to the camp.

130. The poet Horace was born in the consulship of Manlius.

131. What do you seek of me? Tell me whence you come, and by whom you were sent.

132. The general was informed that the tenth legion was in want of provisions.

133. He killed the senators, and threw the rest into prison.

134. Some said that the infantry would refuse to obey orders.

135. This trench was six feet deep by three feet broad.

136. The ancestors of the Romans lived at Alba Longa ; their ancestors at Lanuvium.

137. The corn lay on the ground while the reapers slept.

138. You were away in the country when I made my speech in the Senate.

139. Is it worth while (say, of such value) to endure such evils?

340 MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION.

140. For how much did he buy the corn with which he supplied the soldiers?

141. I asked him to send a messenger to me at Falerii.

142. I make little account of the hatred of a bad man.

143. These portents were made of much account (were valued at a great price) by the Romans.

144. Socrates was accused of corrupting the Athenian youth, but he would not seek for anyone to speak for him, nor would he pray the judges to acquit him, so he was condemned to death.

145. I do not know why he has gone away. I hope he will return soon.

146. You persuaded me to do this, but I know I ought not to have done it.

147. We have need of more men: these are too few to take the city.

148. If he had done this, we should have been angry.

149. He went away to see the king's palace.

150. Do not give him the book till he asks you.

151. He was too wise to return home.

152. I asked him when he would come. He said he did not know.

153. If he is made consul, the citizens will be spared.

154. They hoped that they would enjoy peace.

155. He says that this is the best book he has.

156. When he has returned to Rome, we will set out for the country.

157. He has come to see his father; but I fear that he will not see him.

158. Caesar, fearing that he might be cut off, returned to the same spot whence he had set out.

159. If I thought that you were wrong, I would not hesitate to say this to you.

160. When he had arrived at the camp, he asked the lieutenant whether he had seen the enemy's cavalry.

161. "If you have seen them," said he, "I shall order our horsemen to hasten."

162. Although you are very strong, you ought to remember that all have not the same strength as you.

163. The citizens gave him so many rewards that he became very proud and despised his parents.

164. He summoned the senators and exhorted them to defend the State.

165. Before I leave the city, I will order the walls to be repaired.

166. As you think that I have made a mistake, I will show you where you are wrong.

167. If he comes, I shall see him.

168. Do not go away before night.

169. You are obeyed by nobody.

170. We need more soldiers to capture so strong a town.

171. I do not doubt that he is a good man.

172. I think that we ought to have made peace three months ago.

173. Do not go away ; I want you to stay here.

174. If he does this, we shall not praise him.

175. He stayed at Rome for three years.

176. I will go to the city to find my friends.

177. The general told his soldiers that he would never desert them. He asked them why they were unwilling to obey him : Let them only fight like brave men, he said, and they would conquer the enemy.

178. In summer the tiny ant drags to its nest with its mouth food for its little ones ; in winter it sleeps and does not work. What, pray, is wiser than the ant ?

179. Neither heat nor cold, neither fire nor sword, has ever restrained the avarice of man.

180. The people blame me, says the rich man ; I praise myself and count my money. Why do you laugh ?

181. You will become a bold sailor and will sail over many seas ; at last you will retire into the country.

182. In that battle ten thousand Romans were slain.

183. The Romans pitched their camp on the top of the hill, which was in front of the enemy.

184. He said that he had been rich once, but that all his money had been taken away by the soldiers, and nothing was left to him.

185. If he had said this, I should not have believed him.

186. Do not go away till your father orders you.

187. These men are too few to take the city.

188. He persuaded me to come with him.

189. The less you say, the better it will be.

190. Dionysius the tyrant, when banished from Syracuse, taught boys in Corinth.

191. The news of Caesar's victory is conveyed to Labienus by the Remi with remarkable swiftness.

192. I who was once a useless log have by the skill of a workman become a god.

193. Men fought with fists and clubs before they learnt to fortify towns and make laws.

342 MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION.

194. I was persuaded to go home.
195. It is of importance to all.
196. He lived at Corinth fifteen years, and then emigrated to Sicily.
197. You must try to come here before the 12th of August.
198. Are you not ashamed of such an action?
199. Who would buy his life at so great a price?
200. He is not worthy to be called a king.
201. If you do not help your friends, no one will help you.
202. He asked why I was walking alone.
203. Though many fled, the rest met the enemy boldly.
204. He went out of the city at midnight, that he might not be seen.
205. You prevent me from being of use to you.
206. I said I would come, if I were permitted.
207. In the reign of Tullus Hostilius war broke out between the Romans and the Albans. When the two armies were drawn up ready for battle it was proposed that the quarrel should be decided by the combat of champions. Three brothers in each army were chosen, the Romans being named Horatii and the Albans Curiatii. The two armies sat down to watch. For a long time they fought fiercely, and at last it was seen that the Curiatii were all wounded, whilst two of the Horatii were killed.
208. He could not return to Athens, because his ship had been wrecked in a storm.
209. To die for one's country is sweet and glorious.
210. Having killed the Gaul, Manlius returned to his friends.
211. Do not pity this poor man.
212. Are not the Belgae braver than the rest of the Gauls?
213. The city of Jerusalem was taken by the Romans in the year 70 A.D.
214. What he says is not only not true, but it is not even probable.
215. It follows then, does it not? that nothing is expedient which is not also honourable. Yes.
216. I was so far from praising him that I did not even thank him.
217. He could hardly be persuaded that such was not the case.
218. He said that he would not go unless I went with him.
219. The quaestor then sent a despatch to the commander-in-chief informing him that the enemy, on hearing of this, had beaten a hasty retreat.

220. He wished me to go home.
221. The boy is skilled in reading, but should learn to write.
222. I am so tired that I can hardly stand.
223. You pity others and are ashamed of yourself.
224. In ten days we walked 150 miles.
225. Asked for his opinion, he said he knew nothing.
226. Hannibal was always the first to go into battle, and the last to leave the field.
227. At Fregellae a wall and gate were struck by lightning.
228. One of the consuls was killed, the other escaped.
229. It is a fool's way to put off till to-morrow what should have been done to-day.
230. What is to prevent us from carrying out our plan?
231. Caesar resolved to return to Rome immediately, that he might stand for the consulship.
232. All the world agrees that the moon moves round the earth.
233. I hope to see you on the 15th of October.
234. Having ascertained this fact, he promised to break up the crowd which had gathered round the king's palace.
235. He pretended that he had met the man who had killed the king by poison.
236. Every man may err: it is the province of God to forgive those who have erred.
237. He consults, as a suppliant, the oracles of Phoebus, and asks what land he is to inhabit.
238. As soon as they heard this, they determined to send ambassadors at once to treat for peace.
239. Do you not know that the State needs the strength of the younger and the wisdom of the older men?
240. The loss of a standard was considered a great disgrace to a legion.
241. They promised to return home with us, if we would meet them at the bottom of the hill.
242. Labienus, who had been Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War, was the first to join [himself to] Pompey.
243. I cannot refuse to grant your request, for I am not the man to break my word.
244. Although the anchors had been let down, the ships were swamped by the waves.
245. I hope that all the poorest citizens will be spared.
246. In the evening they reached the river Allia, which is about eleven miles distant from Rome.

344 MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION.

247. Not only was Cicero a renowned author, but he was almost the greatest orator of all time.

248. Caesar has sent out scouts to discover where his reinforcements are.

249. The laws of Utopia are so good that no one ever wishes to break them.

250. It makes no difference at all whether he is wise or not.

251. The general drew up his army in an ample space, rode through the ranks, addressed many soldiers by name, and exhorted all alike to fight bravely for empire and liberty.

252. Almost everybody would say that the best way of learning a language is to speak it.

253. A man there was, though some did count him mad,
The more he cast away, the more he had.

254. He said that he would have come, if he had not been prevented.

255. I wonder why he did not come.

256. Caesar placed garrisons in the conquered towns, and crossed the Rhine.

257. This victory cost the Gauls many lives, and much money.

258. I have been rather foolish in trusting the traitor Curio.

259. It makes a great deal of difference to me whether Caesar lives or not, none to Cicero.

260. Horace travelled from Rome to Brundisium in fifteen days.

261. To call a man ungrateful is to say everything bad of him at once.

262. Those who wish to forget their sorrows should work hard.

263. Of those that fought against Hannibal at Cannae, some escaped by flight, others were taken prisoners. The latter were very numerous ; but, although Hannibal offered to release them for a small sum, the Senate refused it by a decree, and left them to be sold or put to death.

264. Both you and I have deserved well of the State : but I fear that we shall not receive our just rewards.

265. Those that had fled were sent to Sicily.

266. In 55 B.C. Caesar, having stayed three years in Gaul, determined to cross to Britain.

267. He said that he thought nothing more pleasant than living in the country.

268. I am afraid he is not sorry for his crime.

MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION. 345

269. Do not suppose that the work is too difficult for you to undertake.

270. They must be prevented from carrying out their wicked plot.

271. After this the king came to the Rhine; which when he had crossed, he ordered the Suebi to loose the bridge and follow him.

272. I advise you to leave this bridge, and also to leave to guard it them that made it, that we may have a way of return.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The number after verbs refers to the conjugation. Those of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations are to be taken as regular, except when preceded by an asterisk (*), in which case their principal parts (or those of the verbs of which they are compounds) may be found in § 366 or the section referred to, respectively. The parts of verbs of the 3rd conjugation may be found in § 366, unless there is a special section referred to. Substantives are followed by the termination of the genitive sing. and the gender, adjectives by the terminations of the nom. fem. and neut., except those of a single termination (*e.g.* **ferox**), where the ending of the genitive is given.

The following are the chief abbreviations used in the vocabularies :—

	masculine.	pron.	pronoun.
	feminine.	vb.	verb.
n.	neuter.	adv.	adverb.
c.	common.	prep.	preposition.
sing.	singular.	conj.	conjunction.
pl.	plural.	poss.	possessive.
comp.	compound.	dem.	demonstrative.
sb.	substantive.	rel.	relative.
adj.	adjective.	interr.	interrogative.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels*), *prep. with abl., from ; (of agency), by.*

ab-dicō, 1, resign.

***ab-dō**, 3, hide.

***ab-dūcō**, 3, lead away ; abduct.

***abiciō**, 3 (**ab** + **iacio**), throw away.

***ab-rumpō**, 3, break off.

***abs-ci-dō**, 3, cut off.

absens, -**sentis**, *partic.*, absent.

***ab-solvō**, 3, acquit.

***abs-trahō**, 3, draw away, steal.

***ab-sum**, be absent ; **haud multum abesse**, to be not far from.

***accendō**, 3, set on fire.

***accidō**, 3 (**ad** + **cado**), befall.

***accipiō**, 3 (**ad** + **capio**), receive, accept ; hear ; suffer.

accūsātiō, -**ōnis**, *f.*, accusation, prosecution.

accūsō, 1, accuse.

acer, **acris**, -**e**, keen.

aciēs, -**ēi**, *f.*, line (of battle).

acriter, *adv.*, keenly.

acūtus, -**a**, -**um**, sharp.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to ; by.

***ad-dō**, 3, add.

***ad-dūcō**, 3, bring.

adhibeō, 2, apply.

adhūc, *adv.*, hitherto ; still.

***adimō**, 3 (**ad** + **emo**), take away (from).

***adipiscor**, 3 (**ad** + **apiscor**), obtain.

***ad-iuvō**, 1, help.

ad-ministrō, 1, govern.

admirābilis, -**e**, wonderful, admirable.

***ad-mittō**, 3, commit.

ad-moneō, 2, remind, admonish.

*ad-moveō, 2, apply.

*ad-orior, 4, assail.

*ad-sum, adesse, be present.

*ad-vehō, 3, bring to.

advena, -ae, c., stranger.

*ad-veniō, 4, come to, arrive.

adventus, -ūs, m., coming.

adversus, *prep. with acc.*, towards, against.

aedēs -is, f., *sing.* temple, *pl.* dwelling.

aedificium, -iī, n., building.

aedificō, 1, build.

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick.

aequor, -oris, n., *sing. and pl.*, sea.

aes, aeris, n., bronze.

aestus, -ūs, m., tide.

aetās, -ātis, f., age.

aethēr, -eris, m., upper air, sky.

*afferō, afferre (ad + fero), bring, announce, bring forward.

*afficiō, 3 (ad + facio), affect, afflict, visit (with).

afflictus, -a, -um, shattered.

*affligō, 3, (ad + fligo), strike, dash, against, knock down.

ager, agri, m., field; territory.

agger, -eris, m., mound, embankment.

*aggredior, 3 (ad + gradior), attack.

agmen, -minis, n., marching column, army

agna, -ae, f., ewe lamb.

*agō, 3, drive; pass (time, etc.), act; agere cum, deal with, negotiate.

agricola, -ae, m., farmer.

*aiō, *verb defect.*, say.

alacritās, -ātis, f., eagerness.

albus, -a, -um, white.

aliēnus, -a, -um, another's.

aliquis, aliqui, *indef. subst. and adj.*, some one, any one; *n.*, something, anything; *pl.*, some, any.

aliquot, *indef. num.*, some, a few.

alius, -a, -ud, another, other.

*al-loquor, 3, speak to, address.

alter, -tera, -terum, one of two, other of two; second.

altus, -a, -um, high, lofty; deep.

amārus, -a, -um, bitter.

ambo, -ae, -o, both.

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship.

amicus, -i, m., friend.

*ā-mittō, 3, let slip, lose.

amō, 1, love.

amor, -ōris, m., love.

amplius, *adv.*, more, longer.

an, *conj.*, or (*in double questions*); haud scio an, I do not know whether, I am inclined to think that.

ancilla, -ae, f., handmaid.

*animadvertō, 3 (animus + ad + verito), or animum ad-verto, notice.

animal, -mālis, n., animal.

animus, -i, m., mind; heart, spirit, courage; habeo in animo, I intend.

*an-nuō, 3 (ad + *nuo), and a - sent.

annus, -i, m., year.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, in front of, before.

ante-quam, ante . . . quam, *conj.*, before.

antiquus, -a, -um, old.

antrum, -i, n., cave.

aper, apri, m., boar.

*aperiō, 4, open.

apertē, *adv.*, openly.

apertus, -a, -um, open.

apparātus, -ūs, m., preparation.

ap-pāreo, 2, appear.

appellō, 1, name.

ap-propinquō, 1, come near to.

Aprilis, -e, of April.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, with, among.

aqua, -ae, f., water.

arātrum, -i, n., plough.

arbitror, 1, consider.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
 ardens, -entis, fiery.
 *ardeō, 2, be on fire, burn.
 ardor, -ōris, *m.*, heat, zeal.
 ārea, -ae, *f.*, courtyard.
 ārena, -ae, *f.*, sand; arena.
 arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms; war; troops.
 armātūra, -ae, *f.*, troops; levis
 —, light-armed troops.
 armātus, -a, -um, armed.
 arō, 1, plough.
 *arripō, 3 (ad + rapio), snatch.
 arrogō, 1, claim.
 ars, artis, *f.*, skill; art.
 arvum, -ī, *n.*, ploughland.
 aspectus, -ūs, *m.*, appearance.
 asper, -era, -erum, rough.
 *aspiciō, 3 (ad + specio), see.
 assiduus, -a, -um, unflagging, unceasing.
 astrum, -ī, *n.*, star.
 astūtia, -ae, *f.*, craft.
 atque, &c, and; *after* alius, than; *after* simul, perinde, as.
 attonitus, -a, -um, astounded.
 *at-tribuō, 3, attribute.
 auctor, -ōris, *c.*, adviser; auctore me, at my advice.
 auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*, authority.
 audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.
 audacter, boldly.
 audax, -dācis, bold.
 *audeō, 2, dare.
 audiō, 4, hear.
 *auferō, 3 (ab + fero), carry off, steal.
 *augeō, 2, increase.
 aula, -ae, *f.*, yard; court.
 aura, -ae, *f.*, breeze; *pl.*, the upper air.
 aureus, -a, -um, golden.
 auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver.
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.
 aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
 autem, *conj.*, but, however.
 auxilium, -ii, *n.*, help, aid.

avārus, -a, -um, covetous.
 *ā-vehō, 3, carry off.
 *ā-vertō, 3, avert.
 avidus, -a, -um, greedy.
 avis, -is, *f.*, bird.
 āvolō, 1, fly away.
 avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.
 baculum, -ī, *n.*, stick.
 barba, -ae, *f.*, beard.
 barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous; *subst.*, barbarian.
 bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.
 bēlua, -ae, *f.*, beast.
 bene, *adv.*, *comp.* melius, *superl.* optimē, well.
 beneficium, -ii, *n.*, benefit, favour.
 benignē, *adv.*, kindly.
 *bibō, 3, drink.
 blandus, -a, -um, caressing.
 bonus, -a, -um, *compar.* melior, *superl.* optimus, good, patriotic, loyal; *subst.* bonum, -ī, *n.*, good, weal.
 bōs, bovis, *c.*, ox, cow.
 brevis, -e, short.
 breviter, *adv.*, briefly.
 *cadō, 3, fall.
 caedēs, -is, *f.*, murder.
 *caedō, 3, cut, slaughter.
 caelestis, -e, heavenly.
 caelum, -ī, *n.*, heaven.
 caerula, *n. pl.*, blue depths (*of the sky*).
 callidus, -a, -um, clever, cunning.
 candidus, -a, -um, shining.
 canis, -is, *c.*, dog.
 cantō, 1, sing.
 capax, -ācis, roomy.
 capella, -ae, *f.*, kid.
 capillus, -ī, *m.*, *sing. and pl.*, hair.
 *capiō, 3, seize, catch; delude; obtain, feel, understand.

captivus, -i, *m.*, prisoner.
caput, -pitis, *n.*, head; **damnare capitis**, to condemn to death.
carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.
cāritās, -ātis, *f.*, affection.
carmen, -minis, *n.*, song, poem.
carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat.
carpentum, -i, *n.*, carriage.
***carpō**, 3, pluck.
cārus, -a, -um, dear.
casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage.
castigō, 1, punish.
castrum, -i, *n.*, *sing.* fort; *pl.* camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, chance, mishap.
catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter.
Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato.
catulus, -i, *m.*, puppy.
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, case; *abl.*, causā, for the sake (of).
***caveō**, 2, beware.
***cēdō**, 3, depart; yield, submit to.
celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, speed.
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly.
cēlō, 1, hide.
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.
censeō, 2, think, advise.
ensor, -ōris, *m.*, censor.
certāmen, -minis, *n.*, contest; combat.
certō, *adv.*, certainly.
certus, -a, -um, certain; **certiorem facere**, to inform.
cervus, -i, *m.*, stag.
cēterus, -a, -um, *usu. pl.*, the other, the rest.
cibus, -i, *m.*, food.
circiter, *prep. with acc.*, about.
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around.
***circumcidō**, 3 (circum + caedo), cut around, trim.
***circum-dō**, 1, surround.
***circum-stō**, 1, stand around.
***circum-veniō**, 4, surround, beset.
cithara, -ae, *f.*, lute.
citō, 1, summon.

civis, -is, *c*, citizen.
civitas, -ātis, *f.*, state.
clādēs, -is, *f.*, disaster.
clam, *adv.*, secretly.
clāmō, 1, call, cry out, proclaim.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout.
clārus, -a, -um, bright; famous.
classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.
***claudō**, 3, close; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear.
***coepi** (*perf.*), 3, began.
***coerceō**, 2, keep in check (co- + arceo), repress.
***cognoscō**, 3 (com + nosco), learn, know, investigate.
***cōgō**, 3 (co- + ago), collect; compel.
cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort (*i.e.* the tenth part of a legion).
cohortor, 1, encourage, harangue.
collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague.
colligō, 1, bind together.
***colligō**, 3 (com + lego), gather together.
colloquium, -ii, *n.*, conference.
***colloquor**, 3, parley.
collum, -i, *n.*, neck.
comes, -mitis, *c.*, companion.
commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies.
commentārius, -ii, *m.*; *pl.* commentaries, memoirs.
***com-mittō**, 3, join (battle); commit.
***com-moveō**, 2, agitate.
communicō, 1, impart (*with cum*).
communis, -e, common.
com-parō, 1, get ready.
***comperio**, 4, ascertain.
***com-pleo**, 2, fill up.
complexus, -ūs, *m.*, embrace.
com-plūrēs, -plūra, very many.
***com-pōnō**, 3, match; compose; settle.
***con-cēdō**, 3, concede.
***concidō**, 3 (com + caedo), fall, be overthrown.

conciliō, 1, win over.
concilium, -iī, *n.*, assembly ; council.
concurſus, -ūs, *m.*, concourse.
***concutiō**, 3 (com + quatio), shake.
condemnō, 1, condemn.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition ; terms.
***con-dō**, 3, found.
***con-ferō**, conferre, compare ; se conferre, to betake oneself.
***conficiō**, 3 (com + facio), make, accomplish, finish ; waste, wear out.
***con-fidō**, 3, be confident.
con-firmō, 1, strengthen.
***confiteor**, 2 (com + fateor), confess.
***con-figō**, 3, come into conflict.
***con-gredior**, 3 (com + gradior), meet, fight.
***congruō**, 3, agree.
***coniciō**, 3 (com + iacio), throw.
cōnor, 1, try.
***conſcendō**, 3 (com + ſcando), go on board.
***con-ſentiō**, 4, with *dat.*, agree.
***con-ſequor**, 3, obtain, overtake.
***con-ſidō**, 3, sit down.
conſilium, -iī, *n.*, counsel, plan.
***con-ſiſtō**, 3, consist of.
conſpectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.
***conſpergō**, 3 (com + ſpargo), sprinkle, bespatter.
***conſpiciō**, 3 (com + ſpecio), view, observe.
conſpicor, 1, catch sight of.
conſtanter, *adv.*, resolutely.
***conſtituō**, 3 (com + ſtatuō), appoint.
***con-ſtō**, 1, *impers.*, it is certain.
conſul, -ſulis, *m.*, conſul.
conſulātus, -ūs, *m.*, conſulſhip.
***conſulō**, 3, take counſel ; with *dat.*, conſult the intereſts of ; with *acc.*, aſk advice of.
***con-ſumō**, 3, wear away.
contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.*, contact.

***contemnō**, 3, diſregard, deſpiſe.
***con-tendō**, 3, exert oneſelf ; haſten, march ; ſtrive, quarrel.
***contingō**, 3 (com + tango), touch ; *intrans.*, come to paſs.
contiō, -ōnis, *f.*, aſſembly.
contra, *adv.*, on the contrary ; *prep. with acc.*, oppoſite to, againſt.
contrōverſia, -ae, *f.*, diſpute.
contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, inſult.
***con-vellō**, 3, tear away.
***con-veniō**, 4, meet, be agreed on.
***con-vertō**, 3, turn round ; turn towards ; *c. ſigna*, to wheel round.
con-vocō, 1, call together.
***co-orior**, 4, ariſe.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, *ſing.* abundance ; *pl.* forces.
cōpiōſus, -a, -um, copious.
cor, cordis, *n.*, heart.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn.
corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath.
corpus, -poris, *n.*, body.
***corripō**, 3 (com + rapio), chide.
***corrumpō**, 3 (com + rumpo), ſpoil.
corvus, -ī, *m.*, raven.
crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent.
***crēdō**, 3, with *dat.*, believe.
cremō, 1, cremate.
creō, 1, create.
***creſcō**, 3, grow.
crīnis, -is, *m.*, *uſu. pl.*, the hair.
cruciō, 1, torture.
crūdēlis, -e, cruel.
cruentus, -a, -um, blood-ſtained.
crur, -ōris, *m.*, blood (from a wound).
cubiculum, -ī, *n.*, bedroom.
cubile, -is, *n.*, couch.
cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with ; *meum*, etc., with me ; amid.
cum, *conj.*, when ; ſince, al-though.

cunctor, 1, linger, tarry.
 cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.
 cupidō, -dinis, *f.*, desire.
 cupidus, -a, -um, desirous,
 greedy.
 *cupiō, 3, desire.
 cūr, *adv.*, why.
 cūra, -ae, *f.*, care.
 cūria, -ae, *f.*, Senate-house.
 cūrō, 1, trouble oneself about,
 attend to; *with acc.* and
gerundive, to see to.
 *currō, 3, run.
 cursus, -us, *m.*, running; course.
 custodiō, 4, keep under guard.
 custōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guardian.

damnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, condemna-
 tion.
 damnō, 1, condemn.
 daps, dapis, *f.*, *sing.* and *pl.*,
 banquet.
 dē, *prep.* *with abl.*, from; about.
 dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess.
 dēbeō, 2, owe; I ought, must,
 have to.
 *dē-cēdō, 3, depart, die.
 decem, *num.*, ten.
 December, -bris, -bre, of Decem-
 ber.
 decem-vir, -ī, *m.*, decemvir
 (one of a commission of ten
 magistrates).
 *dē-cernō, 3, decide; decree.
 *dēcidō, 3 (de + cado), fall
 down.
 *dēcipiō, 3 (de + capio), deceive.
 dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree, decision.
 *dēcutiō, 3 (de + quatio), strike
 off.
 *dē-dūcō, 3, lead away.
 *dēfendō, 3, defend.
 dēfensor, -ōris, *m.*, defender.
 *dē-ferō, -ferre, carry down.
 deinde, *adv.*, thereupon.
 dēlectō, 1, delight.
 *dēlēō, 2, destroy.
 dēlibērō, 1, deliberate.

*dēligō, 3 (de + lego), choose,
 select.
 *dē-mittō, 3, let down.
 dē-monstrō, 1, point out.
 dēnique, *adv.*, finally, in a word.
 dens, dentis, *m.*, tooth.
 densus, -a, -um, thick, thronging.
 *dē-pellō, 3, drive away.
 *dē-pōnō, 3, lay aside; place;
 renounce.
 dē-portō, 1, carry away.
 *dē-serō (*comp.* of sero, join),
 desert, abandon.
 *dēsiliō, 4 (de + salio), leap
 down, dismount.
 *dē-sinō, 3, cease.
 *dēspiciō (de + specio), look
 down.
 *dē-sum, -esse, be wanting.
 dē-terreō, 2, deter.
 *dē-trahō, 3, pull down.
 dētrimentum, -ī, *n.*, damage.
 dē-turbō, 1, dislodge.
 deus, -ī, *m.*, god.
 dextra, -ae, *f.*, right hand.
 *dicō, 3, say, name.
 dictum, -ī, *n.*, word, come and
 diēs, -ēī, *sing. c., pl. m., day.*
 difficilis, -e, difficult.
 digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; inch.
 dignus, -a, -um, worthy, *with*
abl.
 diligens, -entis, industrious.
 diligenter, *adv.*, carefully.
 diligentia, -ae, *f.*, industry.
 dimidius, -a, -um, half.
 *dī-mittō, 3, dismiss.
 *diruō, 3 (dis + ruo), demolish.
 *dis-cēdō, 3, depart.
 disciplina, -ae, *f.*, learning.
 *discō, 3, learn.
 *dis-currō, 3, run to and fro.
 displiceō, 2, displease.
 *dis-pōnō, 3, arrange.
 *dissideō, 2 (dis + sedeo), be at
 variance.
 dis-similis, -e, unlike.
 *distō, 1 (dis-sto), stand apart, be
 distant.

diŭ, *adv.*, long.
diŭturnus, -a, -um, long-last-
 ing.
dives, -vitis, rich.
***dividō**, 3, divide.
divinus, -a, -um, divine; **res**
divinae, religious affairs.
divitiae, -ārum, *f.*, wealth.
***dō**, 1, give; **poenam**, pay a
 penalty, be punished; **exiti-**
um dare, destroy.
***doceō**, 2, teach, inform.
doctus, -a, -um, learned.
doleō, 2, be grieved.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
dolus, -ī, *m.*, trick; guile.
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house; **domum**,
 home, homewards.
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift.
dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back.
dubitō, 1, doubt, hesitate.
ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.
***ducō**, 3, draw, build, make,
 lead; quaff.
dulcēdō, -dinis, *f.*, sweetness.
dulcis, -e, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while; as long as,
 until; provided that.
dummodo, *conj.*, provided that,
 if only.
duo, -ae, -o, two.
duodecim, *num.*, twelve.
dūrō, 1, last.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard; austere,
 harsh.
dux, **ducis**, *c.*, leader.

ebur, -boris, *n.*, ivory.
***edō**, 3, eat.
***ē-dō**, 3, give out, publish.
ēduō, 1, bring up, rear.
***ē-ducō**, 3, lead out.
***efficiō**, 3 (ex + facio), bring
 about, contrive.
effigies, -ēī, *f.*, apparition.
***effugiō**, 3 (ex + fugio), escape.

***effundō**, 3 (ex + fundo), pour
 out, shed, vent.
egeō, 2, with *abl.*, and *gen.*, to be
 without.
ego, *pl. nōs*, *pers. pron.*, I, me,
etc.
***ēgredior**, 3 (ex + gradior), go
 forth.
ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, re-
 markable.
***ēiciō**, 3 (ex + iacio), expel.
***ē-lābor**, 3, glide away.
ēmineō, 2, stand out, project.
***emō**, 3, buy.
enim, *conj.*, for.
***eō**, *ire*, go.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, -quitis, *c.*, horseman, (*col-*
lect.) cavalry.
equester, -tris, -tre, (of) cavalry.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore.
errō, 1, wander.
***ē-rumpō**, 3, burst out, sally.
et, *conj.*, and.
etiam, *conj.*, even, also.
et-sī, *conj.*, although.
***ē-veniō**, 4, result, happen.
***ē-vertō**, 3, overturn.
ē, *ex*, *prep. with abl.*, out of,
 from.
***ex-cēdō**, 3, depart.
***excidō**, 3 (ex + cado), fall out,
 escape.
***ex-cieō**, 2, rouse.
***excipio**, 3 (ex + capio), except;
 catch, receive; welcome.
excūsō, 1, excuse.
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example.
***ex-eō**, -īre, go out.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
existimō, 1, consider.
exitium, -īī, *n.*, destruction.
expedit, 4, *impers.*, it is ex-
 pedient.
***ex-pellō**, 3, drive out, banish.
***ex-pōnō**, 3, put out; expose;
 disembark, set forth.

ex-pugnō, 1, storm, reduce.
exsilium, -i, *n.*, exile.
ex-spectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation.
ex-spectō, 1, await; long for.
***ex-struō**, 3, build up.
exsul, -sulis, *c.*, an exile.
***ex-tollō**, 3, exalt.
extrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, outside.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *superl.*, outermost; in *extremo ponte*, at the end of the bridge.

faber, -brī, *m.*, craftsman.
fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, fable.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.
facinus, -oris, *n.*, crime.
***faciō**, 3, make, celebrate, value (*with gen. of price*).
factum, -i, *n.*, deed.
facultās, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity.
fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech-tree.
fallax, -lācis, deceitful.
***fallō**, 3, deceive.
fāma, -ae, *f.*, fame.
famēs, -is hunger, famine.
familia, -ae, *f.*, household, family.
fās, *n. indecl.*, right; *fas est*, it is lawful.
fascis, -is, *m.*, bundle.
***faveō**, 2, *with dat.*, favour, support.
favor, -ōris, *m.*, favour.
fax, facis, *f.*, torch.
fēliciter, *adv.*, happily, successfully.
fēlix, -licis, happy.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.
ferē, *adv.*, nearly.
***ferō**, ferre, bear; offer, propose.
ferōciter, *adv.*, fiercely.
ferox, -ōcis, haughty; savage.
ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron; sword.
ferus, -a, -um, wild; cruel.
festinō, 1, hasten.

festus, -a, -um, festal; **festum**, -i, *n.*, holiday.
fidēlis, -e, faithful.
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith; credence, protection, allegiance.
filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
filius, -ii, *m.*, son.
***fingō**, 3, fashion; imagine; feign.
finiō, 4, finish.
finis, -is, *m.*, end; *pl.*, borders, territory.
***fiō**, fieri (*used as pass. of facio*), become, be made, happen.
firmus, -a, -um, strong, steadfast.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame.
***fleō**, 2, weep.
floccus, -i, *m.*, flock (of wool); *non flocci facio*, I don't care a straw (for).
flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.
flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river.
***fodiō**, 3, dig up.
fons, fontis, *m.*, spring; source.
for, 1, speak, say.
forma, -ae, *f.*, beauty.
formica, -ae, *f.*, ant.
formōsus, -a, -um, handsome.
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
forte, *adv.*, by chance.
fortis, -e, strong; brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, courage.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune.
forum, -i, *n.*, market-place, forum.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench.
***frangō**, 3, break.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, fraud.
frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold.
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, profit, fruit.
frūmentum, -i, *n.* (*also in pl.*), corn.
***fruor**, 3, *with abl.*, enjoy.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.
frux, frūgis, *f.*, pulse, meal.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.

*fugiō, 3, flee, escape, shun.
 fugō, 1, put to flight, rout.
 *fulgeō, 2, shine.
 fulvus, -a, -um, yellow.
 *fundō, 3, pour; put to flight.
 fundus, -i, m., farm, estate.
 funestus, -a, -um, of mourning.
 fur, furis, c., thief.
 furtum, -i, n., theft.
 *gaudeō, 2, rejoice, delight in.
 gaudium, -ii, n., joy.
 gener, -eri, m., son-in-law.
 gens, gentis, f., clan; race, tribe.
 genus, -eris, n., kind, species.
 *gerō, 3, bear; carry on, wage;
 se gerere, to behave; do;
 res gestae, achievements.
 *gignō, 3, engender.
 glaciēs, -iī, f., ice, icicle.
 gladius, -ii, m., sword.
 glōria, -ae, f., glory.
 grātia, -ae, f., favour; thanks;
 gratias agere, thank.
 gravis, -e, heavy; severe.
 graviter, adv., violently.
 grex, gregis, m., flock, herd.
 habeo, 2, have; hold, keep;
 regard.
 habitō, 1, inhabit; dwell.
 *haereō, 2, stick fast.
 hasta, -ae, f., spear.
 haud, adv., not.
 hērēs, -rēdis, c., heir.
 hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., this;
 the former.
 hiems, hiemis, f., winter.
 hilaris, -e, merry, happy.
 hinc, adv., hence; on this side.
 hircus, -i, m., goat.
 homō (homo), -inis, m. and f.,
 human being, man.
 honestus, -a, -um, honourable.
 honor, -ōris, m., honour; office.
 hōra, -ae, f., hour (i.e. $\frac{1}{2}$ of
 the time between sunrise and
 sunset).

horreo, 2, bristle.
 hortus, -i, m., garden.
 hospes, -pitis, c., host, enter-
 tainer.
 hostis, -is, c., enemy.
 hūc, adv., hither.
 humerus, -i, m., shoulder.
 humus, -i, f., ground.
 ibi, adv., there.
 ictus, -ūs, m., stroke.
 idem, eadem, idem, the same.
 idūs, -duum, f., Ides (fifteenth
 day of March, May, July, and
 October, thirteenth of other
 months).
 igitur, adv., therefore.
 ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant.
 ignāvia, -ae, f., laziness;
 cowardice.
 ignāvus, -a, -um, lazy; cowardly.
 ignis, -is, m., fire.
 ignōminia, -ae, f., disgrace.
 ignōrō, 1, be unaware.
 *ignoscō, 3, (in- + nosco), with
 dat., pardon.
 ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown.
 ilex, -licis, f., holm-oak.
 ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that
 one; he, she, it; the latter.
 illic, adv., there.
 illinc, adv., thence; on that side.
 illustris, -e, renowned.
 imāgō, -ginis, f., image; ghost.
 imber, -bris, m., shower.
 imitor, 1, imitate.
 im-memor, -moris, unmindful.
 immolō, 1, offer sacrifice.
 immortalis, -e, immortal.
 impedimentum, -i, n., hindrance;
 pl., baggage.
 impediō, 4, hamper; prevent.
 *impellō, 3 (in + pello), impel.
 imperātor, -ōris, m., commander,
 general; emperor.
 imperium, -ii, n., command,
 rule, sovereignty, empire.
 imperō, 1, command; with dat.,
 rule, demand.

impetrō, 1, obtain.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, charge.

impiē, *adv.*, undutifully, wickedly.

***impleō**, 2 (in + -pleo), fill.

***impōnō**, 3 (in + pono), place upon, impose.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, dishonest.

imprūdēns, -entis, unsuspecting.

impūne, *adv.*, without punishment, safety.

in, *prep.* with *abl.*, with *acc.*, into, on to, to; in, on, against.

inānis, -e, empty, useless.

***incautus**, -a, -um, unwary.

***in-cēdō**, 3, march, come.

***incendō**, 3, set fire to, burn.

in-certus, -a, -um, uncertain.

***incidō**, 3 (in + cado), fall into, fall upon, attack.

***incipiō**, 3 (in + capio), begin.

in-cognitus, -a, -um, unknown.

incola, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant, resident, denizen.

incolumis, -e, uninjured, safe.

in-cultus, -a, -um, untilled.

***in-currō**, 3, collide with.

inde, *adv.*, thereupon, thenceforward.

in-dignus, -a, -um, unworthy; shameful.

industria, -ae, *f.*, industry.

***in-eō**, -ire, enter, begin; **consilium** —, form a plan.

inertia, -ae, *f.*, indolence.

in-expugnābilis, -e, impregnable.

infectus, -a, -um, not done; **re infectā**, without success.

in-fēlix, -licis, unhappy.

***in-ferō**, **inferre**, bring into, inflict (upon), occasion.

inferus, -a, -um, *compar.* inferior, *superl.* **infimus** and **imus**, -a, -um; **inferi**, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of the Lower World, the dead; **imus**, -a, -um, lowest, foot of the.

in-firmus, -a, -um, weak.

ingenium, -ii, *n.*, character genius, cleverness.

ingens, -entis, huge.

inimicitia, -ae, *f.*, enmity.

inimicus, -i, *m.*, enemy.

initium, -ii, *n.*, beginning.

inīdria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, outrage; *abl.*, **iniuriā**, wrongfully.

iniustē, *adv.*, wrongfully.

in-nocens, -entis, guiltless.

***in-nuō**, 3, beckon.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, lack, dearth.

***inquam**, *v.* defect., say.

***in-sequor**, 3, pursue.

insidiae, -arum, *f.*, ambush.

insolens, -entis, *adj.*, arrogant.

insolentia, -ae, *f.*, arrogance.

***in-sonō**, 1, rattle.

***inspiciō**, 3 (in + specio), look at, look into.

***instituō**, 3 (in + statuo), construct; institute; instruct.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island.

***intellegō**, 3 (inter + lego), understand, know.

inter, *prep.* with *acc.*, between, among.

***intercidō**, 3 (inter + cado), perish.

***intercludō**, 3 (inter + claudio), intercept.

***inter-dicō**, 3, forbid.

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile.

***interficiō**, 3 (inter + facio), kill,

interior, -ius, *gen.* -ōris, *adj.* *compar.*, inner; *superl.* **intimus**, -a, -um, inmost.

***inter-mittō**, 3, place between.

***inter-rumpō**, 3, break down.

***inter-sum**, -esse, be between, be different, take part in; *impers.*, interest, with *gen.* of person, *abl. f.* of possess. pronouns, it makes a difference, there is a difference.

intrō, 1, enter.

intus, *adv.*, within.

**in-vādō*, 3, invade (*with in*).

**in-vehō*, 3, inveigh (*in pass.*, *with in*).

**in-veniō*, 4, find.

invictus, -a, -um, unconquered.

invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy.

invisus, -a, -um, hateful.

invitō, 1, invite.

invitus, -a, -um, unwilling; me

invito, against my will.

ipse, -a, -um, *dem. pron.*, self (himself, etc.), the very.

ira, -ae, *f.*, anger.

irātus, -a, -um, angry.

is, *ea*, *id*, *dem. pron.*, he, she, it, etc.

iste, *ista*, *istud*, *dem. pron.*, that.

ita, *adv.*, thus, so.

ita-que, *adv.*, accordingly.

iter, *itineris*, *n.*, journey, march; road.

iterum, *adv.*, again.

iaceō, 2, lie.

**iaciō*, 3, throw

iactō, 1, throw.

iam, *adv.*, now, already.

**iubeō*, 2, bid, command.

iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant.

iūdex, -dicis, *m.*, judge, juror; me *iudice*, in my judgment.

iūdicō, 1, judge.

iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke; ridge.

**iungō*, 3, join.

iūs, *iūris*, *n.*, right, law; *iure*, rightly.

iussus (*only abl.*, -ū), *m.*, bidding.

iustō, *adv.*, justly.

iustitia, -ae, *f.*, justice, uprightness.

iustus, -a, -um, just.

iuvenis, -is, *c.*, *compar. iūnior*; *adj.*, young; *subst.*, a youth, young man.

**iuvō*, 1, help; *impers.*, to delight.

kalendae, *kalends* (*first day of month*).

labium, -ii, *n.*, lip.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labour.

labōrō, 1, work, be in distress.

lāc, *lactis*, *n.*, milk.

**laccessō*, 3, provoke.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

**laedō*, 3, injure.

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joy.

laetus, -a, -um, joyful.

lāmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mourning.

lāmina, -ae, *f.*, plate.

lapis, -pidis, *m.*, stone.

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, largess.

largus, -a, -um, abundant.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.

lātus, -a, -um, broad.

latus, -teris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudābilis, -e, praiseworthy.

laudō, 1, praise.

laus, *laudis*, *f.*, praise, glory.

lectus, -a, -um, picked.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, envoy; lieutenant.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.

legiōnārii, -ōrum, *m.*, legionary troops.

lēgō, 1, bequeath.

**legō*, 3, choose; read.

lēnis, -e, gentle.

levis, -e, light, trivial.

leviter, *adv.*, lightly.

lex, *lēgis*, *f.*, law; *legem ferre*, propose a law.

libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly.

liber, -bri, *m.*, book.

liber, -era, -erum, free.

liberālitās, -ātis, *f.*, generosity.

liberī, -ōrum, *m.*, children.

liberō, 1, set free; extricate.

libertās, -ātis, *f.*, freedom.

libet, 2, *impers.*, it pleases.

licet, 2, *impers.*, it is allowed.

licitor, -ōris, *m.*, licitor (*attendant on a magistrate*).

ligō, 1, bind.
limen, -*minis*, *n.*, threshold.
linter, -*tris*, *f.*, boat.
linum, -*i*, *n.*, flax, linen.
littera (*lītera*), -*ae, f.*, *pl.* letter; literature.
litus, -*toris*, *n.*, shore.
locus, -*i*, *m.*, place; *pl.* *loci* (places) and *loca*, *n.* (region).
longē, *adv.*, far.
longinquus, -*a*, -*um*, distant.
longus, -*a*, -*um*, long.
***loquor**, 3, speak.
lūdibrium, -*ii*, *n.*, jest.
***lūdō**, 3, play.
lūdus, -*i*, *m.*, game.
lūmen, -*minis*, *n.*, light, day-light.
lūna, -*ae, f.*, moon.
lupus, -*i*, *m.*, wolf.
lutum, -*i*, *n.*, mud.
lux, *lūcis*, *f.*, light; *prima lux*, dawn.

maestus, -*a*, -*um*, sad, sorrowful.
magis, *adv. compar.*, *superl.* *maximē*; *compar.*, more; *superl.*, most of all.
magister, -*tri*, *m.*, master; captain.
magistrātus, -*ūs*, *m.*, magistrate.
magnopere, *adv.*, earnestly, exceedingly.
magnus, -*a*, -*um*, *compar.* *māior*, *superl.* *maximus*, great, large; loud; *māiōrēs*, -*um*, *m.*, ancestors.
male, *adv.*, *compar.* *pēius*, *superl.* *pessimē*, badly.
malefīcium, -*ii*, *n.*, mischief.
***mālō**, *malle*, choose rather, prefer.
malus, -*a*, -*um*, *compar.* *pēior*, *n.* *pēius*, *superl.* *pessimus*, -*a*, -*um*, bad, wicked; *malum*, -*i*, *n.*, evil, misfortune.
mandātum, -*i*, *n.*, injunction, message.

mandō, 1, entrust.
***maneo**, 2, remain; await.
mānēs, -*ium*, *m.*, shades of the dead.
manifestus, -*a*, -*um*, evident.
manipulus, -*i*, *m.*, manipule, company (*there were thirty in a legion*).
manus, -*ūs*, *f.*, hand.
mare, -*is*, *abl.* -*i*, *n.*, sea.
marinus, -*a*, -*um*, of the sea.
marmoreus, -*a*, -*um*, of marble.
māter, -*tris*, *f.*, mother.
mātrimōnium, -*ii*, *n.*, marriage; in *matrimonium ducere*, to marry.
mātrōna, -*ae, f.*, matron.
mātūrō, 1, hasten.
medius, -*a*, -*um*, middle, middle of the mid.
***memini**, -*isse*, *perf.* for *pres.*, remember.
memor, -*oris*, mindful.
memoria, -*ae, f.*, memory.
memorō, 1, mention.
mendax, -*dācis*, lying.
mens, *mentis*, *f.*, mind.
mensa, -*ae, f.*, table.
mensis, -*is*, *m.*, month.
mercātor, -*ōris*, *m.*, merchant.
mereō, and *mereor*, 2, deserve.
***mergō**, 3, plunge.
meritō, *adv.*, deservedly.
mēta, -*ae, f.*, goal.
***metō**, 3, mow, reap.
***metuō**, 3, fear.
metus, -*ūs*, *m.*, fear.
meus, -*a*, -*um*, *voc. sing. m.* *mī*, *possess. pron.*, my.
migrō, 1, change one's abode, remove.
miles, -*litis*, *c.*, soldier.
militāris, -*e*, military.
mille, *adj. indecl. and subst. (n., pl. milia)*, a thousand.
minister, -*tri*, *m.*, servant.
minor, 1, threaten.
***miscēō**, 2, mingle.
miser, -*a*, -*um*, wretched.

misereor, 2, pity; *act. impers.*
with *gen.*, *me miseret*.

miseria, -ae, *f.*, misery, trouble.

misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity.

miseror, 1, pity.

***mittō**, 3, send; utter; throw.

modo, *adv.*, only; lately.

modus, -i, *m.*, way, method.

molestia, -ae, *f.*, trouble.

moneō, 2, warn.

mons, **montis**, *m.*, mountain.

***monstrō**, 1, show, point out.

monstrum, -i, *n.*, portent, monster.

monumentum, -i, *n.*, monument.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.

morbus, -i, *m.*, disease.

***moriō**, 3, die.

moror, 1, tarry.

mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death.

mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, custom; *m. pl.*,
manners, character.

***moveō**, 2, move, influence,
produce.

mox, *adv.*, soon.

mūgitus, -ūs, *m.*, lowing.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, multitude.

multō, 1, fine.

multum, *compar. plūs, superl.*

plūrimum, much; *abl. as adv.*,

multō, by much, much.

multus, -a, -um, *compar. plūs,*

plūris, superl. plūrimus, many.

mūnitō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.

mūnus, -neris, *n.*, gift.

mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall.

musca, -ae, *f.*, fly.

mūtō, 1, change.

mūtus, -a, -um, mutual.

nam, *conj.*, for.

narrō, 1, tell, describe.

***nascor**, 3, be born.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, disposition.

nātus, -i, *m.*, son; *in pl.*, children.

nātus, -ūs, *m.*, birth; **natu maior**,
older, **natu minor**, younger.

naufragium, -ii, *n.* (often *pl.*),
shipwreck.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, voyage.

nāvigō, 1, sail.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship.

nē, *adv.*, not; *in the phrase ne . . .*

quidem, not even; *conj.*, that

. . . not, lest.

-ne, *interr. particle.*

nec, and **neque**, nor; **necnon**,

and indeed; **nec . . . nec**,

neither . . . nor.

necessitās, -ātis, *f.*, necessity.

nec-ne (*in the second part of a*
double question), or not.

necō, 1, kill.

nefāriē, *adv.*, wickedly.

nefārius, -a, -um, villainous.

nefās, *n. indecl.*, impious deed,
sin.

***neglegō**, 3 (**nec + lego**), be re-
gardless of; overlook.

negō, 1, say . . . not, deny.

negōtium, -ii, *n.*, business.

nēmō, **nullius**, *c.*, no one.

nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*, grandson.

nēquam, *adj. indecl.*, worthless.

***nesciō**, 4, not to know.

neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.

nīdus, -i, *m.*, nest.

nihil, **nīl**, *n. indecl.*, nothing.

nihilum, **nīlum**, -i, *n.*, nothing;

nihilō minus, nevertheless.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow.

nōbīlis, -e, high-born.

noceō, 2, with *dat.*, be harmful.

***nōlō**, **nolle**, be unwilling, refuse.

nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnae, -arum, *f.*, Nones (*seventh*
day of March, May, July and
October, fifth of other months).

non-ne, *interr. particle.*

nōn-nulli, -ōrum, *m.*, some (per-
sons).

nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.

noster, nostra, nostrum, *possess.*

pron., our, ours; *subst.*, **nostrī**,

-ōrum, *m.*, our people, our men.

November, -bris, -bre, (of) November.

novitās, -ātis, *f.*, newness, strangeness.

novus, -a, -um, new.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud.

nūbila, -ōrum, *n.*, clouds.

***nūbō**, 3, wed (*of a woman*).

nullus, -a, -um, none, no.

num, *interr. particle*.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.

nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin; sesterce (*v. sestertius*).

numquam, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nuntiō, 1, announce.

nuntius, -īī, *m.*, messenger; message, tidings.

nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.*, nod.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

***ob-eō**, -īre, die.

***obiciō**, 3 (ob + iacio), throw before.

obitus, -ūs, *m.*, death.

***obliviscor**, 3, *with gen.*, forget.

***ob-ruō**, 3, overwhelm.

obsecrō, 1, beseech.

ob-servō, 1, watch.

obses, -sidis, *m. and f.*, hostage.

***obsideō**, 2 (ob + sedeo) besiege, blockade.

***ob-sum**, -esse, *with dat.*, hinder.

obvius, -a, -um, in the way, meeting; **obvius esse or fieri alicui**, to meet.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting.

***occidō**, 3 (ob + caedo), murder.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.

octingenti, -ae, -a, eight hundred.

octōgintā, *num.*, eighty.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.

***ōdi**, **ōdisse**, *perf. for pres.*, hate.

odium, -īī, *n.*, hatred.

offensiō, -ōnis, *f.*, disfavour.

***offerō**, **offerre** (ob + fero), offer.

ōlim, *adv.*, once upon a time, formerly.

***ōmittō**, 3 (ob + mitto), pass over.

omninō, *adv.*, altogether.

omnis, -e, every, all.

onus, -neris, *n.*, burden.

onustus, -a, -um, laden.

opiniō, -ōnis, *f.*, opinion, belief.

***opinor**, 1, imagine, believe.

oportet, 2, *impers.*, it is necessary, one must.

oppidum, -īī, *n.*, town.

oppugnō, 1, besiege.

ops, **opis**, *f.*, *pl.* power, resources; *sing.* aid.

optō, 1, desire.

opus, -peris, *n.*, work; piece of workmanship; siege-work, task.

opus, *n. indecl.*, *with est*, need, *usu. impers. with abl.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, orator, envoy.

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; **orbis terrarum**, the world.

ordō, -dinis, *m.*, row, order.

***orior**, 4, arise, begin.

ornāmentum, -īī, *n.*, ornament.

ōrō, 1, plead, beseech.

ortus, -ūs, *m.*, rising.

ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth; face (*often pl.*).

os, **ossis**, *n.*, bone.

***ostendō**, 3 (obs + tendo), show, display.

ōtium, -īī, *n.*, leisure; peace.

ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep.

- pācō**, 1, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
paenitet, 2, *impers. (acc. of person, gen. of thing)*, one repents of.
***palescō**, 3, turn pale.
pallium, -i, *n.*, cloak.
pālūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh.
pānis, -is, *m.*, bread.
pār, *paris*, equal.
***parō**, *with dat.*, spare.
parens, -entis, *c.*, parent.
pāreō, 2, *with dat.*, obey, submit.
***pariō**, 3, bring forth.
parō, 1, provide, prepare.
parricida, -ae, *c.*, parricide, murderer.
pars, -tis, *f.*, part.
Parthicus, -a, -um, Parthian.
parum, *adv.*, *compar. minus, superl. minimē, pos. (too) little; compar. less; superl. least, not at all.*
parvus, -a, -um, *compar. minor, superl. minimus*, little, small.
***pascō**, 3, pasture, feed.
passim, *adv.*, in every direction.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; mille passuum, mile.
pater, -tris, *m.*, father.
***patior**, 3, suffer.
patrius, -a, -um, of a father;
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land.
patruus, -i, *m.*, father's brother, uncle.
paucus, -a, -um, few.
paulatim, *adv.*, gradually.
pax, *pācis*, *f.*, peace.
***peccō**, 1, transgress, sin.
pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money.
pecus, -cudis, *f.*, head of cattle; beast.
***pellō**, 3, drive, expel, rout.
penētēs, -ium, *m.*, household gods, home.
***pendeō**, 2, hang.
***pendō**, 3 pay.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through.
- *per-agō**, 3, perform; complete.
***per-currō**, 3, run through.
***percutiō**, 3 (*per + quatio*), smite.
***per-dūcō**, 3, lead through; conduct, build.
peregrīnus, -a, -um, foreign.
perennis, -e, perennial, enduring.
***per-eō**, -īre, perish.
***per-ferō**, -ferre, endure.
***perficiō**, 3 (*per + facio*), finish, achieve.
perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous.
***perfringō**, 3 (*per + frango*), break through.
***pergō**, 3, proceed.
periculum, -i, *n.*, danger.
per-inde, *adv.*, just as.
peritus, -a, -um, *with gen.*, skilled (in).
per-multus, -a, -um, very many.
perniciōs, -ōi, *f.*, ruin.
perpetuus, -a, -um, unbroken; in perpetuum, for ever.
***perspicīō**, 3 (*per + specio*), perceive, look into.
***per-suādeō**, 2, *with dat.*, persuade.
per-terreō, 2, scare.
per-turbō, 1, upset.
***per-veniō**, 4, arrive at, reach.
pēs, *pedis*, *m.*, foot.
***petō**, 3, seek, make for.
pietās, -ātis, *f.*, dutiful affection, piety, devotion to the dead.
piger, -gra, -grum, lazy.
pilum, -i, *n.*, javelin.
pinguis, -e, fat.
pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather; *pl.*, wings.
placeō, 2, please; *impers.*, *with dat.*, it pleases, seems right, it is resolved.
placidus, -a, -um, calm.
plācō, 1, appease.
plānō, *adv.*, clearly.
***plangō**, 3, beat.

plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen. or abl.*, full.

plērumque, *subst.*, *acc. n. as adv.*, generally.

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.

polliceor, 2, promise.

polus, -i, *m.*, pole.

pōmum, -i, *n.*, apple.

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight.

***pōnō**, 3, place.

pons, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge.

populō, **populor**, 1, ravage.

populus, -i, *m.*, the people.

***porrigō**, 3 (*por- + rego*), stretch out.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

portō, 1, bring; **arma portāre**, to be in arms.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour.

***poscō**, 3, request.

***possum**, **posse**, be able.

post, *adv.*, afterwards; *prep. with acc.*, behind, after.

postea, *adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, *compar. posterior*, *superl. postrēmus*, *pos. next*; *subst.*, **posterī**, -ōrum, *m.*, posterity.

postridiē, *adv.*, on the next day.

postulātum, -i, *n.*, demand, request.

postulō, 1, ask.

potens, -entis, powerful.

potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power.

potior, 4, *with abl. or gen.*, take possession of.

potius, *adj.*, rather.

prae, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; **prae se gerere**, display.

praebē, 2, offer, show.

praeceptum, -i, *n.*, maxim.

praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, prey; booty.

praeditus, -a, -um, endowed with.

***praefficiō**, 3 (*prae + facio*), place in command (of).

prae-ligō, 1, bind in front.

***prae-mittō**, 3, send in advance.

praemium, -iī, *n.*, reward.

praesidium, -iī, *n.*, protection; barrier; garrison.

***prae-sum**, -esse, rule over.

***praeter-mittō**, 3, let slip, omit.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor.

praetōriānus, -a, -um, of the imperial bodyguard.

prātum, -i, *n.*, meadow.

precēs, **precum**, *f. pl.*, prayers.

precor, 1, pray.

***premō**, 3, press, cover.

pretiōsus, -a, -um, precious.

pretium, -iī, *n.*, price; prize.

primum, *adv.*, first.

primus, -a, -um, first, foremost

princeps, -cipis, *adj. and subst.*, first, chief, chieftain.

prior, **prius**, -ōris, preceding.

pristinus, -a, -um, early.

prius, *adv.*, previously.

privātus, -a, -um, private; **privātus**, -i, *m.*, private individual.

prō, in front of; for, on behalf of; as, conformably with.

prō-cūrō, 1, attend to.

***prō-currō**, 3, rush forward, charge.

prōdigium, -iī, *n.*, portent.

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, treachery.

***prō-dūcō**, 3, prolong.

proelium, -iī, *n.*, battle.

***prō-ferō**, -ferre, produce.

***prōficiō**, 3 (*pro + facio*), effect; be useful.

***proficiscor**, 3, set out.

***pro-fundō**, 3, shed.

pro-fundus, -a, -um, deep, profound.

***prōgredior**, 3 (*pro + gradior*), advance.

prōgressus, -ūs, *m.*, progress.

prohibē, 2, keep away, restrain, hinder.

prōlēs, -is, *f.*, offspring.

prōmissus, -a, -um, long.

***prō-mittō**, 3, promise.

***prōmō**, 3 (pro + emo), express.
 ***prō-moveō**, 2, advance (*trans.*).
prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.
 ***prō-pōnō**, 3, set before, propose.
proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, by reason of.
 ***prō-ruō**, 3, rush forth.
 ***prōsiliō**, 4 (pro + salio), leap forth.
prosperus, -a, -um, prosperous ;
res prosperae, prosperity.
 ***prō-sum**, **prōdesse**, *with dat.*, benefit, avail.
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.
prudentia, -ae, *f.*, prudence, wisdom.
publicō, *adv.*, at the public expense.
publicus, -a, -um, public.
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.
puer, -eri, *m.*, boy.
pueritia, -ae, *f.*, boyhood.
pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.
pugnō, 1, fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome.
pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.*, beauty.
pūniō, 4, punish.
puteus, -i, *m.*, well.
putō, 1, think.

quadrans, -antis, *m.*, a fourth part.
quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.
quadringentiēs, four hundred times.
 ***quaerō**, 3, look for.
quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, gain, profit.
quālis, -e, such as.
quam, *adv.*, **quam maximus**, as great as possible ; *with comparatives*, than.
quamobrem, wherefore.
quam-quam, *conj.*, although.
quam-vis, *adv.*, however (much) ; *conj.*, although.

quandō, *adv.*, when?
quantus, -a, -um, how great, as (great).
quā-rē, *adv.*, *interrog.*, why? *rel.*, wherefore.
quartus, -a, -um, fourth.
quasi, *adv. and conj.*, as if.
quattuor, *adj. num.*, four.
querēla, -ae, *f.*, complaint.
 ***queror**, 3, complain.
qui, **quae**, **quod**, *pron.*, who, which.
quia, *conj.*, because.
quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, whoever, whatever.
quid, why?
quidam, **quaedam** (*adj. and subst.*), **quoddam** (*adj.*), **quidam** (*subst.*), a certain, some, a certain person, some one.
quidem, *conj.*, indeed, certainly.
quies, -ētis, *f.*, rest, repose.
quin, *conj.* (see §§ 223-225).
qui-nam, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, who, which, or what, pray?
quindecim, *num.*, fifteen.
quingēni, -ae, -a, *num. distr.*, five hundred each.
quīni, -ae, -a, *num. distr.*, five each.
quingūagintā, *num.*, fifty.
quinqūies, *adv.*, five times.
quis, **quae**, **quid**, *pron. interrog.*, who? what? **quid**, *adv.*, why?
quis-quam, **quaequam**, **quidquam**, or **quicquam** (*in neg. clauses*), *adj.*, any, any one ; *subst.*, anyone, anything.
quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque**, *adj.*, **quodque**, each, every, everyone, everything.
quisquis, **quaequae**, **quidquid**, whoever, whatever.
quō, *adv.*, to which place, whither ; *conj.* (*with compar.*), in order that ; (*with compar.*) **quo . . . eo**, the . . . the ; **quōminus** (*with verbs, etc., of hindering*), that not, from.

quod, *conj.*, because ; so far as.
quō-modo, *adv.*, how ?
quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.
quoniam, *conj.*, since.
quoque, *adv.*, too.
quot, *adj. pl. indecl.*, how many ?
quot annis, every year.
quotidiū, *adv.*, every day.
quotiēs and quotiens, *adv.*, how often ? as often as.

rām, *-ī, m.*, branch, bough.
rapina, *-ae, f.*, theft.
***rapiō**, 3, snatch, carry off.
ratus, *-a, -um*, fixed.
rebelliō, *-ōnis, f.*, revolt.
***recipiō**, 3 (re + capio), *se recipere*, retreat, recover.
re-citō, 1, read aloud.
reclinō, 1, recline.
recordor, 1, remember.
rectē, *adv.*, rightly.
recūsō, 1, refuse.
***red-dō**, 3, give back ; hand.
***red-eō**, *-īre*, return.
reditus, *-ūs, m.*, return.
***re-ducō**, 3, bring back, withdraw.
***re-ferō**, *referre*, bring back, relate.
rēfert, *impers.*, it concerns (*see interest*).
regiō, *-ōnis, f.*, region.
rēgius, *-a, -um*, royal ; **rēgia**, *-ae, f.*, palace.
regnō, 1, reign.
regnum, *-ī, n.*, kingship, kingdom.
***regō**, 3, guide, rule.
rēligiō, *-ōnis, f.*, scruple.
***re-linguō**, 3, leave, forsake.
reliquus, *-a, -um*, remaining, the rest of.
***re-luceō**, 2, flash.
***re-mittō**, 3, send back.
***re-moveō**, 2, remove.
re-novō, 1, renew.
***reor**, 2, think.

repente, *adv.*, suddenly.
repentinus, *-a, -um*, sudden.
***re-petō**, 3, renew, repeat.
repudiō, 1, reject.
re-putō, 1, reflect (upon).
rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair ; feat ; scheme ; property ;
res publica, state, republic.
***re-scindō**, 3, cut down.
***re-sistō**, 3, stop, resist.
***respergō**, 3 (re + spargo), bespatter.
***re-spondeō**, 2, answer.
responsum, *-ī, n.*, answer.
***restituō**, 3 (re + statuo), restore.
***re-stō**, 1, remain.
***retineō**, 2 (re + teneo), restrain, keep.
***re-vertor**, 3, return.
re-vocō, 1, recall.
rex, rēgis, m., king.
***rideō**, 2, laugh ; laugh at, ridicule.
rigeō, 2, be stiff.
ripa, *-ae, f.*, bank.
rōbur, *-boris, n.*, strength
rogō, 1, ask, ask for.
rota, *-ae, f.*, wheel.
ruīna, *-ae, f.*, downfall.
rūmor, *-ōris, m.*, rumour.
***ruō**, 3, rush.
rursus, *adv.*, again.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred ;
sacrum, *-ī, n.*, rite, sacrifice.
sacrificium, *-ii, n.*, sacrifice.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
saevitia, *-ae, f.*, cruelty.
saevus, *-a, -um*, cruel.
salūs, *-ūtis, f.*, safety.
salūtāris, *-e*, beneficial.
salūtō, 1, greet, hail.
sanguinolentus, *-a, -um*, covered with blood.
sanguis, *-guinis, m.*, blood.
sapiens, *-entis*, wise.
sapientia, *-ae, f.*, wisdom.

satis, *adj. or subst. indecl., and adv.*, enough.

***satis-faciō**, 3, satisfy.

saxum, -i, *n.*, boulder

scelus, -leris, *n.*, crime.

sciō, 4, know.

***scribō**, 3, write.

scriptor, -ōris, *m.*, writer.

scrobis, -is, *m.*, pit

scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield.

sē, *pron. reflexive, gen. sui, dat.*

sibi, *abl. sē*, himself, etc.;
(*in indirect speech*), he, etc.

secundus, -a, -um, following,
second, favourable; **res se-**
cundae, prosperity.

sed, *conj.*, but.

***sedeō**, 2, sit.

sēdēs, -is, *f.*, abode.

sēditiosus, -a, -um, rebellious.

semper, *adv.*, always.

sempiternus, -a, -um, everlast-
ing.

senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, Senate.

senex, **senis**, *compar. senior*,
-oris, *adj.*, old; *subst. masc.*,
an old man.

sententia, -ae, *f.*, opinion.

***sentiō**, 4, feel, perceive.

***sepeliō**, 4, bury.

septimus, -a, -um, seventh.

septuāgesimus, -a, -um, seven-
tieth.

***sequor**, 3, follow.

serēnus, -a, -um, clear.

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation.

sērō, *adv.*, late.

serviō, 4, *with dat.*, be a slave
to.

servitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, slavery.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery.

servō, 1, save, keep, preserve.

sestertius, -ii, *m.*, sesterce (*see*
§ 334), about 2d.

sex, *num.*, six.

sextans, -antis, *m.*, a sixth.

sextus, -a, -um, sixth.

sī, *conj.*, if.

sic, *adv.*, so, thus.

signum, -i, *n.*, sign, standard,
statue.

silentium, -ii, *n.*, silence.

sileō, 2, be silent.

silva, -ae, *f.*, wood, forest.

similis, -e, like, *with gen. and dat.*

simplex, -plicis, simple, artless.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time;

simul ac, as soon as.

simulō, 1, simulate, pretend.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

singulāris, -e, unique.

singuli, -ae, -a, *num. distr.*, one
each.

sitis, -is, *f.*, thirst.

sī-ve, **sēū**, *conj.*, **sive . . . sive**,
seu . . . seu, be it that . . . or
that, whether . . . or.

socer, -ceri, *m.*, father-in-law.

societās, -ātis, *f.*, society.

socius, -ii, *m.*, ally.

sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, sun.

***soleō**, 2, be wont.

sōlitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, solitude.

solum, *adv.*, only.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone.

***solvō**, 3, loosen; pay.

sonus, -i, *m.*, sound; word(s).

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.

spatium, -ii, *n.*, space.

speciēs, -ēi, *f.*, semblance.

speculum, -i, *n.*, mirror.

***spernō**, 3, despise.

spērō, 1, hope.

spēs, -ei, *f.*, hope.

spīca, -ae, *f.*, ear (*of corn*).

spiculum, -i, *n.*, point (*of a*

spoliō, 1, despoil.

spolium, -ii, *n.*, spoil.

***spondeō**, 2, betroth; **sponsus**,
-i, *m.*, a betrothed.

sponte, *adv. (abl. of + spons)*, of
one's own accord.

stabilitās, -ātis, *f.*, stability.

statim, *adv.*, immediately.

***statuō**, 3, resolve.

stella, -ae, *f.*, star.

stipendium, -ii, *n.*, tribute.

stipes, -pitis, *m.*, stake.

***stō**, 1, stand.

***stringō**, 3, draw.

studeō, 2, take pains about
(*with dat.*).

studiōsus, -a, -um, devoted to.

studium, -ii, *n.*, zeal, devotion.

stultus, -a, -um, foolish.

***suādeō**, 2, advise.

suāvis, -e, sweet.

sub, *prep. with abl. and acc.*,
under.

***sub-dūcō**, 3, draw up, beach (*a*
ship).

***sub-eō**, -īre, go under, ap-
proach.

***subigō**, 3 (*sub + ago*), subdue.

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.

***sub-veniō**, 4, succour (*with dat.*).

***succēdō**, 3, approach.

sūdo, 1, perspire.

***sum**, *esse*, be.

***sūmō**, 3, take up, take ; *poenas*
—, I punish.

super, *prep. with abl. and acc.*,
over.

superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride.

superbus, -a, -um, haughty.

superior, *see superus*.

superō, 1, overcome, surpass.

***super-sum**, -esse, remain, sur-
vive.

superus, -a, -um, *compar. su-
perior, superl. suprēmus and
summus*; *compar.*, higher ;
summus, -a, -um, highest, top
of the ; most important.

suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*,
above.

***surgō**, 3 (*sub + rego*), rise.

***suscipiō**, 3 (*sus + capio*), take
upon oneself, undertake.

***sustineō**, 2, hold up ; withstand.

suis, -a, -um, *poss. pron. usu*
*referring to the principal sub-
ject of the sentence*, his own,
etc. ; *subst.*, **sui**, -ōrum, *m.*,
one's own people, troops, etc.

tabula, -ae, *f.*, picture.

taedet, 2 (*acc. of person, gen. of
thing*), *impers.*, one is tired of.

talentum, -ī, *n.*, talent (*about*
£240).

tālis, -e, such.

tam, *adv.*, so ; **non tam . . .**
quam, not so much . . . as.

tamen, *adv.*, however.

tam-quam, *adv.*, just as, as
being.

tandem, *adv.*, at length.

***tangō**, 3, touch.

tantus, -a, -um, so great ; **tan-
tum**, *adv.*, only, merely.

tardus, -a, -um, slow.

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.

***tegō**, 3, cover.

tellūs, -lūris, *f.*, the earth.

tōlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon.

temperō, 1, abstain from.

tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, storm.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

tempus, -poris, *n.*, time.

***tendō**, 3, stretch, stretch out.

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.*, darkness.

***teneō**, 2, hold, keep.

tener, -era, -erum, tender,
young.

tentō, 1, attempt.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, back ; **terga dare**
hosti, to flee from the enemy.

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, ground.

terreō, 2, frighten.

terribilis, -e, dreadful.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

testāmentum, -ī, *n.*, will.

testis, -is, *c.*, witness.

testor, 1, call to witness.

testūdō, -dinis, *f.*, tortoise ; shed
(*for protecting soldiers attack-
ing walls*).

timeō, 2, fear.

timidus, -a, -um, timid.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga, gown.

tolerō, 1, endure, suffer.

***tollō**, 3, pick up ; raise ; carry
off.

*tonō, 1, thunder.
 *torqueō, 2, twist; hurl.
 *torreō, 2, scorch, bake.
 tot, *num. indecl.*, so many.
 totiēs, *adv.*, so often.
 tōtus, -a, -um, whole.
 *trādō, 3, hand over.
 *trādūcō, 3 (trans + dūco), lead across.
 *trahō, 3, drag.
 trānō, 1, swim across.
 trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.
 *trans-eō, -ire, cross.
 *trans-figō, 3, pierce through.
 *transiliō, 4 (trans + salio), leap across.
 trans-portō, 1, convey.
 trecēnī, -ae, -a, three hundred each.
 *tremefaciō, 3 (tremere + facio), cause to shake.
 trēs, tria, three.
 tribuō, 3, grant.
 tribus, -ūs, *f.*, tribe (*division of the Roman people*).
 tributum, -ī, *n.*, tribute.
 triciēs, *adv.*, thirty times.
 trigintā, *num.*, thirty.
 tristis, -e, sad, sorrowful.
 tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness.
 tū, *pers. pron., pl. vōs*, thou, you. *The plural vos is used only when more than one person is addressed.*
 tueor, 2, watch over.
 tum, *adv.*, then.
 turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd.
 turpis, -e, ugly; filthy; disgraceful, base.
 turris, -is, *f.*, tower.
 tūtus, -a, -um, safe.
 tuus, -a, -um, *possess. pron.*, thy, your; tui, -ōrum, *m.*, your people.
 ubi, *adv.*, where, when.
 ubi-cumque, *adv.*, wherever.
 ubi-que, *adv.*, everywhere.

†ulter, -tra, -trum, *compar. ulterior, superl. ultimus, compar. farther, superl. farthest.*
 umquam, *adv.*, ever.
 ūnā, *adv.*, together.
 uncia, -ae, *f.*, the twelfth part.
 unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.
 unde, *adv.*, whence, from what quarter.
 undique, *adv.*, from all sides, everywhere.
 ungula, -ae, *f.*, hoof.
 ūnus, -a, -um, one.
 urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, city-.
 urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
 usquam, *adv.*, anywhere.
 usque, *adv.*, continuously; usque ad, right up to.
 ut, *conj. (in consecutive sentences), that; (in final sentences), in order that.*
 uter, utra, utrum, which of two.
 uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que, *gen. utriusque, dat. utrique, each.*
 ūtilis, -e, useful.
 uti-nam, *adv.*, would that.
 *ūtor, 3, use (*with abl.*).
 utrum, *adv.*, whether (*in direct questions utrum marks the interrogation and is not translated in English*).
 uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.
 vacca, -ae, *f.*, cow.
 *vādō, 3, go on.
 vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford.
 vagor, 1, roam.
 vagus, -a, -um, roaming.
 valdē, *adv.*, exceedingly.
 valeō, 2, be able, be well.
 validus, -a, -um, strong.
 vallēs or vallis, -is, *f.*, valley.
 vallum, -ī, *n.*, palisade.
 vānus, -a, -um, empty, fruitless.
 vāstō, 1, lay waste.
 vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously, strongly.

*vehō, 3, convey; *pass.*, to be borne, ride.

vēlox, -lōcis, swift.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, hunting, chase.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.*, hunter.

*vendō, 3, sell.

*veniō, 4, come.

vēnor, 1, hunt.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; verba facere, to speak.

vereor, 2, fear.

vērō, *adv.*, indeed, however.

versō, 1, whirl; *pass.*, stay, be; be occupied.

*vertō, 3, turn.

vērus, -a, -um, true, real.

vester, -tra, -trum, *possess. pron.*, your, yours.

vestigium, -iī, *n.*, footprint.

*vetō, 1, forbid.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road.

victor, -ōris, *m.*, conqueror.

victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.

victus, -ūs, *m.*, food.

*videō, 2, see; *pass.*, appear, seem.

vigeō, 2, flourish.

vigilō, 1, be watchful.

vigintī, *num.*, twenty.

*vincō, 3, conquer.

vinculum, -ī, *n.*, cord, chain.

vindicō, 1, make a claim for, avenge.

violens, -entis, violent.

violō, 1, outrage, violate.

vir, viri, *m.*, man; husband; hero.

virga, -ae, *f.*, twig.

virgō, -ginis, *f.*, maiden.

viridis, -e, green.

virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, valour.

vis, *acc. vim, pl. virēs, -ium, f.*, force.

vita, -ae, *f.*, life.

vitium, -iī, *n.*, fault.

vītō, 1, avoid.

*vivō, 3, live.

vix, *adv.*, scarcely.

vocō, 1, call.

volō, 1, fly.

*volō, velle, be willing, wish; quid tibi vis? what do you mean?

voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, will, wish.

voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.

*vomō, 3, vomit.

*voveō, 2, vow, wish for.

vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice, cry; word.

vulnus, -neris, *n.*, wound.

vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

a, *art.*, quīdam, quaedam, quidam or quoddam (*a certain*); generally untranslated.

abandon, *re-linquō, 3.

ability, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; of speech, facundia, -ae, *f.*

able, be, possum, posse.

abode, sedēs, -is, *f.*

about, *adv.*, circiter; *prep.* circā with *acc.* (*round*); dē with *abl.* (*concerning*); be about to, use fut. indic. or fut. partic. with sum.

absent, be, ab-sum.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

abundant, largus, -a, -um.

accept, accipio, 3 (*comp.* of *capiō).

accompany, comitor, 1.

accomplishment, ars, artis, *f.*

accord, of . . . own, sponte (*abl.*, with meā, etc.).

account, make of little, *parvi faciō, 3.

account of, on, propter, ob, with *acc.*

accuse, accūsō, 1 (*see* § 250).

acknowledged, it is, *con-stat (*from* stō, 1).

acquit, *ab-solvō, 3.

across, trans. (*with acc.*).

act, *agō, 3.

address, contio, -ōnis, *f.*

admiration, admirātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

admit, *see* allow.

Adriatic, sb., Adria, -ae, *m.*

advance, *vb.*, *prō-gredior, 3 (*comp.* of gradior); *in-cēdō, 3.

adversary, adversārius, -ī, *m.*; inimicus, -ī, *m.*

adversity, rēs (*pl.*, *gen.* rērum) adversae.

advise, moneō, 2 (*with* ut, nē).

Aeneas, Aenēās, -ae, *m.*

affair, rēs, rei, *f.*; public —s, res-publica, rei-publicae, *f.*

afraid, be, timeō, 2 (*no supine*); vereor, 2 (*see* § 213).

after, *prep.*, post with *acc.*; *conj.*, postquam, or use *partic.* or *cum-clause*.

afterwards, postea.

again, rursus, iterum; — and again, iterum atque iterum.

against, *prep.*, contrā, in, adversus (*all with acc.*).

age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*; (= old age) senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*; at the — of eight, octō annōs nātus (*pp.* of nascor, 3).

Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*

alive, be, *vivō, 3.

all, omnis, -e (*generally in pl.*); with a superlative, quisque, quaeque (§§ 187, 189).

allow, *sinō, 3; be allowed, use licet (§ 257).

ally, socius, -ī, *m.*

alone, *adj.*, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* solius; *adv.*, solum.

Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *m.*
also, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
alter, mūtō, *l.*
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambush, insidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
among, inter, apud, *with acc.*, in
with abl.; *be among*, inter-sum,
interesse (with dat.).
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, *m.*
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um.
and, et, -que, āc, atque; *and not*,
neque, nec; *and so*, itaque.
anger, ira, -ae, *f.*
angry, irātus, -a, -um.
angry, be, *irascor, 3; *or use*
piget (§ 94).
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*; *bestia*,
-ae, f.
announce, nuntiō, *l.*
annually, per annōs.
answer, *vb.*, *respondeō, 2; *sb.*,
responsum, -ī, *n.*
ant, formica, -ae, *f.*
Antony, Antōnius, -ī, *m.*
anxiety, sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*
any, anyone, anything, *see*
§§ 182-189; *anywhere*, us-
quam; *at any time*, quandō
(after num, si).
apple, mālum, -ī, *n.*; *pōmum*,
-ī, n.
appoint, creō, 1; (= *fix*) *ē-dicō,
 3.
approve, be —d by, *use placet*,
 2, *with dat.*
April, Aprīlis, -e (*adj. and sb.*).
arise, *surgō, 3 (*rise up*); *orior,
 4 (*of the sun*); *co-orior, 4 (*of*
storms, etc.).
Aristides, Aristīdēs, -is, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, *ad-veniō, 4; *per-veniō,
 4; *ac-cēdō, 3.
arrogance, superbia, -ae, *f.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, conj., cum, quia, quod (*be-
 cause, §§ 249-52*), *or partic.*; *(after idem)* qui; *as . . . as*,
see how; *as long as*, dum
 (§ 239); *quālis, quantus, quot*,
after tālis, tantus, tot re-
spectively; *as often as*, quo-
tiēs; *as soon as*, ut (§ 236);
as if, quasi, velut *si*, tam-
quam, tamquam si (§ 255); *see*
also § 254.
ashamed, be, pudet (§ 257).
ask, rogō, 1; *poscō*, 3 (*with*
double acc.); *quaerō*, 3.
ass, asinus, -ī, *m.*
assign, assignō, *l.*
assistance, auxilium, -iī, *n.*
at, in, with abl. (*but see §§ 292,*
293).
Athenian, Athēniensis, -e.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, sb., impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, vb., *ad-orior, 4; *petō*, 2
(seek); *impetum facio*, 3.
August, Sextilis, -e; *after 27*
B.C., Augustus, -a, -um (*adj.*
sb.).
autumn, autumnus, -ī, *m.*
avoid, vitō, *l.*
await, expectō, 1; *maneō, 2.
axe, secūris, -is (*acc. secūrim*), *f.*
back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
bad, malus, -a, -um.
banish, *ex-pellō, 3.
bank, sb., rīpa, -ae, *f.*
banquet, dapēs, -um, *f. pl.*
base, turpis, -e.
battle, proelium, -iī, *n.*, pugna,
 -ae, *f.*; *for battle of, use ad*
with acc., or the adj. of the
place-name.
be, *sum, esse.
bear, vb., *ferō, ferre (*carry, en-*
dure), tolerō, 1 (*endure*); *see*
also carry.
beard, barba, -ae, *f.*
beast, bestia, -ae, *f.*

beat, verberō, 1; lacerō, 1 (*tear*);
— *back*, *re-pellō, 3; vincō, 1
(*conquer*); *am beaten*, vāpulō,
3.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quia, quoniam, quod,
cum (§§ 249-52); — *of*, prop-
ter, *with acc.*

become, *fiō, fieri.

becoming, it is, decet, 2 (§ 257).

beech tree, fāgus, -i, f.

befall, *ac-cidō, 3 (*with dat.*),
(*comp.* of cadō).

before, *prep.*, ante *with acc.*;
conj., antequam, priusquam
(§ 243); *adv.* antea.

beg, orō, 1; obsecrō, 1.

begin, *in-cipiō, 3 (*comp.* of
capio); *coepti, coepisse; —
battle, *com-mittō, 3.

beginning, principium, -iī, n.;
initium, -iī, n.; *or use* primus,
-a, -um.

behave, mē gerō, 3; *or use*
aliquid *faciō, 3.

believe, *crēdō, 3 (*with dat.*); *to*
be believed, crēdibilis, -e.

beloved, cārus, -a, -um; dilectus,
-a, -um.

beneath, sub (*with acc. & abl.*).

benefit, *vb.*, *prō-sum (*with*
dat.).

beseech, obsecrō, 1.

besiege, *ob-sideō, 2 (*comp.* of
*sedeō).

betake myself, mē *con-ferō,
-ferre.

betray, *prō-dō, 3.

better, melior, -ius.

between, inter (*with acc.*).

beware, *caveō, 2.

beyond, ultrā, *with acc.*

bind, (*lit.*) *vinciō, 4; (*by an*
oath) *ob-stringō, 3.

birth (= *origin*), ortus, -ūs, m.

bitter, ācer, -cris, -cre (*sharp*,
unpleasant); amārus, -a, -um
(*bitter-tasting*).

boar, aper, -pri, m.

body, corpus, -oris, n.; manus,
-ūs, f. (*i.e. band of soldiers*).

bold, audax, *gen.* -ācis.

boldness, audācia, -ae, f.

bond, vinculum, -i, n.

book, liber, -bri, m.

booty, praeda, -ae, f.

born, be, *nascor, 3.

both, ambō (*like duo*, § 193); *or*
translate by uterque (§ 181);

both . . . and, et . . . et.

bottom of the, *use* Imus, -a, -um.

boundary, terminus, -i, m.; (*of*
a country) finis, -is, m.

boy, puer, -i, m.

branch, rāmus, -i, m.

brave, fortis, -e.

bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.

bread, pānis, -is, m.

break, *frangō, 3 (*shatter*);

*rumpō, 3 (*burst*); violō, 1

(*break laws*); *per-rumpō, 3

(*burst through*); — *down*, *in-

ter-rumpō, 3; — *my word*,

fidem *fallō, 3.

bridge, pons, pontis, m.

brief, brevis, -e.

bring, *ferō, ferre; *portō, 1;

af-ferō (*bring to a place*);

— *on*, in-ferō.

bring up, educō, 1.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

bronze, aes, aeris, n.

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

build, aedificō, 1; *con-struō, 3;

(— *a bridge*) faciō, 3.

bull, taurus, -i, m.

burden, onus, -eris, n. (*see* § 280).

burn, *ūrō, 3, *incendō, 3,

cremō, 1 (*all trans.*); *ardeo,

2 (*intrans.*).

burst, *rumpō, 3; — *into*,

*ir-rumpō, 3.

but, sed, tamen, at, nisi (*except*).

buy, *emō, 3.

buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.

by, ā or ab *with abl.* (*of persons*),
or use simple abl. (*of things*).

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, *vb.*, appello, 1; nōminō (name); pay a —, salūtō, 1; — in (money), *redigō, 3 (*comp. of *agō*).
calm, tranquillus, -a, -um.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, *vb.*, possum, posse; sciō, 4; see also possible.
capable, capax, *gen.* -ācis; — of enduring, patiens, *gen.* -entis.
capture, *capiō, 3.
care, *sb.*, cūra, -ae, *f.* (i.e. care for something); diligentia, -ae, *f.* (diligence); take care, *caveō, 2, take care that, cūrō (1) ut . . . (with subj.), take care that . . . not, *caveō (2) nē and subj.
care for, *vb.*, cūrō, 1.
careful, diligens, *gen.* -entis.
careless, imprūdens, -entis.
carry, *ferō, ferre; portō, 1; *gerō, 3; *vehō, 3; carry on (of war), *gerō, 3; carry off, *tollō, 3; deportō, 1; carry out, *ef-ferō, efferre; carry back, *re-ferō, referre.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginian, *sb. and adj.*, Carthāginiensis, -e; *sb.* Poenus, -i, *m.*; *adj.*, Pūnicus, -a, -um.
cast, see throw.
catch, *capiō, 3; *dē-prehendō, 3.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, -us, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
cease, cessō, 1; *dē-sinō, 3.
celebrated, see famous.
certain, certus, -a, -um (sure); a certain, quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam.
chain, compes, -edis, *f.*; vinculum, -i, *n.*
change, *vb.* mūtō, 1 (trans.).
character, mōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*

charge, *sb.* impetus, -ūs, *m.* (attack); orimen, -inis, *n.* (accusation).
check, *reprimō, 3 (*comp. of *premō*).
cheer (= gladden), confirmō, 1.
cheerfully, libenter.
chieftain (chief man), princeps, -ipis, *m.*
choice, *adj.*, lectus, -a, -um.
choose, *dē-ligō, *ē-ligō, 3 (*comp. of *legō*); (= wish) volō, velle.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
Cimon, Cīmon, Cīmōn-is, *m.*
Cisalpine, Cisalpinus, -a, -um.
citadel, arx, arois, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *c.*
city, urbs, -bis, *f.*; oppidum, -i, *n.*; the — of Rome, urbs Rōma.
clank, *vb.*, *sonō, 1.
cleanse, purgō, 1.
cloak, toga, -ae, *f.*
close, *claudō, 3.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, *f.*
coat, pallium, -i, *n.*
cohort, cohors, -ortis, *f.*
cold, *adj.*, frigidus, -a, -um.
cold, *sb.*, frigus, -oris, *n.*
colleague, collēga, -ae, *m.*
collect, *col-ligō, 3 (*comp. of *legō*).
come, *veniō, 4; come up, *ac-cedō, 3; come down, descendō, 3 (*comp. of scandō*); come together, *con-veniō, 4.
command, *vb.* *iubeō, 2 (with acc. and *inf.*); imperō, 1 (with dat. of person and ut or nē with subj.); be in — of, imperō, 1.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.* (general); praefectus, -i, *m.* (of cavalry).
companion, comes, -itis, *c.*
compare, *con-ferō, conferre; compared with, prae with abl.
compel, *cōgō, 3 (*comp. of agō*).

complain, *queror, 3 (*of, dē with abl.*).

conceal, cēlō, 1.

concern, *see importance*.

concerning, dē (*with abl.*).

condemn, damnō, 1; *condemn to death*, capitis damnō (§ 273).

confirm, confirmō, 1.

conquer, *vincō, 3; superō, 1.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, *m.*

consent, consensus, -us, *m.*

consul, consul, -ulis, *m.*

consult, *consulō, 3 (*with acc., ask advice of; with dat., consult the interests of*).

conversation, be in, colloquor, 3.

Corinth, Corinthus, -i, *f.*

corn, frūmentum, i, *n.*

corrupt, *cor-rumpō, 3.

cottage, casa, -ae, *f.*

couch, sb., lectus, -i, *m.*

country, rūs, rūris, *n.* (*opposed to town*); pl. of ager, agrī, *m.* (*field*); (= *land*) terra, -ae, *f.*; (= *native land*) patria, -ae, *f.*

countryman, (*compatriot*) civis, -is, *c.*; (*rustic*) rusticus, -i, *m.*

cover, *tegō, 3.

cow, vacca, -ae, *f.*

cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, *f.*

crafty, callidus, -a, -um.

crowd, turba, -ae, *f.*

cruel, saevus, -a, -um; crūdēlis, -e; ferox, *gen.* -ōcis.

cruelty, crūdēlitas, -ātis, *f.*

cry, clāmō, 1; — *out*, exclāmō, 1.

cultivate, *colō, 3.

cunning, sb., astūtia, -ae, *f.*

cut down, *caedō, 3.

cut off, *ab-scindō, 3 (*a head, etc.*); *inter-clūdō, 3 (*a retreat, etc.*—*comp. of* *claudō).

daily, cotidiē.

Damocles, Dāmoclēs, -is, *m.*

danger, periculum, -i, *n.*

dare, *audeō, 2.

darkness, tenebrae, -arum, *f. pl.*

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*

Davus, Dāvus, -i, *m.*

dawn, the day dawns, *lūcescit, 3.

day, diēs, diēi, *m. & f.*; *every* —, cotidiē.

daylight, lux, lūcis, *f.*

dead, mortuus, -a, -um.

dear, cārus, -a, -um; *or use cordi* (*pred. dat.*).

death, mors, mortis, *f.*; *put to* —, *see kill*.

deceive, *dē-cipiō, 3 (*comp. of capiō*); *fallō, 3.

decree, *dē-cernō, 3; *it is decreed*, placet, 2.

deed, factum, -i, *n.*; *or use rēs, rei, f.* (*matter*); *great* —, *use n. pl. adj.*

deep, profundus, -a, -um.

defeat, *vb.*, *vincō, 3, superō, 1; *dēvincō, 3 (*utterly defeat*); dēbellō, 1 (*utterly defeat in war*).

defence, *in* — *of*, prō *with abl.*

defend, *dēfendō, 3.

delay, moror, 1.

delight, *vb.*, dēlectō, 1 (*often impers.*).

demand, *vb.*, postulō, 1; *poscō, 3.

denarius, dēnārius, -i, *m.*

dense, densus, -a, -um.

deny, negō, 1.

depart, *dis-cēdō, 3; *ex-cēdō, 3 (*leave*); *proficiscor, 3 (*set out*).

deprive, *see take away from*.

desert, *vb.*, *dē-serō, 3 (*comp. of serō, join*).

deserve, mereō, 2.

desire, *vb.*, *volō, velle; *cupiō, 3; optō, 1; cupidus esse (*with gen.*).

despair, despērō, 1.

despise, *spernō, 3; *con-temnō, 3.

destroy, *perdo, 3; *dēleō, 2; *diruō, 3 (*throw down*).

destruction, perneciēs, -ēi, *f.* ;
exitium, -i, *n.*

dictator, dictātor, -tōris, *m.*

die, *vb.*, *moriōr, 3 ; *per-eō,
-īre ; *ob-eō, -īre.

differ, *di-stō, 1.

difficult, difficilis, -e.

difficulty, with, vix ; difficile.

diligent, diligens, *gen.* -entis.

dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*

direction, pars, -tis, *f.*

disaster, clādēs, -is, *f.*

disembark, (*trans.*) *ex-pōnō, 3 ;
(*intrans.*) ab nāve *escendō, 3
(*comp.* of *scandō) ;

disgraceful, turpis, -e.

dishonour, dēdecus, -oris, *n.*

dismiss, *di-mittō, 3.

disposition, ingenium, -i, *n.*

dissent, *dis-sentiō, 4.

distant, be, *ab-sum, -esse.

distribute, *dis-tribuō, 3.

disturb, perturbō, 1.

divide, partior, 4 ; *dividō, 3.

do, *faciō, 3 (*make*) ; *agō, 3
(*perform*) ; be done, *fiō, fieri ;
do not . . ., see § 131.

dog, canis, -is, *m.*, *gen. pl.* -um.

doubt, *sb.*, there is no —, nōn
dubium est quin . . . (*with*
subj.).

doubt, *vb.*, dubitō, 1.

doubtful, anceps, *gen.* -itis.

dove, columba, -ae, *f.*

down from, dē (*with abl.*).

downfall, ruina, -ae, *f.*

dowry, dōs, dōtis, *f.*

draw, *trahō, 3 (*drag*) ; (*a sword*)
*stringō, 3 ; — up, *con-
stituō, 3 (*comp.* of statuō),
*instruō, 3 ; — out, *ex-trahō,
3.

drink, *bibō, 3.

drive, *pellō, 3 ; agō, 3 ; — out
or — away, *ex-pellō, 3.

due, dēbitus, -a, -um.

Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -rigis, *m.*

duty, officium, -i, *n.*

dwell, habitō, 1.

each, quisque (§§ 180, 187), om-
nis (*all*) ; — of two, uterque
(§ 181) ; — other, use inter sē.

eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*

earnestly, vehementer.

earth, terra, -ae, *f.*

easy, facilis, -e ; — to be done,
facilis factū (*abl. sup.*) ; easily,
facile.

eat, *edō, 3.

eight, octo ; — apiece, octōnī,
-ae, -a.

elect, creō, 1.

election, comitia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

else, use alius, -a, -ud.

embark, *conscendō, 3 (*comp.* of
*scandō).

embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*or*
use lēgātus).

emperor, princeps, -ipis, *m.*

empty, inānis, -e.

encamped, to be, see camp.

enclose, *inclūdō, 3 (*compar.* of
*claudō).

encourage, hortor, 1 ; cohortor,
1 ; (= strengthen) confirmō,
1.

end, *sb.*, finis, -is, *m.*

endure, *ferō, ferre ; *patior, 3 ;
tolerō, 1.

enduring, patiens, *gen.* -entis.

enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* (*often used*
in the plur.).

enjoy, *fruor, 3 (*with abl.*).

enough, satis (*with gen.*).

enquire, see ask.

enter, *in-eō, -īre ; intrō, 1.

entrust, mandō, 1 ; *per-mit-
tō, 3.

envoy, lēgātus, -i, *m.*

envy, *vb.*, *in-vidēō, 2 (*with dat.*).

equal, pār, *gen.* paris.

erect, *exigō, 3 (*comp.* of *agō).

escape, *vb.*, *fugiō, 3, *au-fugiō,
3 ; — from, fugiō, *ef-fugiō,
3 (*trans.*).

estate, fundus, -i, *m.* (*see also*
§ 335).

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*

even, etiam, quoque (*also*); *not* —, *nē* . . . quidem; — *if*, etsi (§ 245).

event, while these —s were taking place, dum haec geruntur.

ever, umquam; (*always*) semper.

everlasting, sempiternus, -a, -um.

every, quisque (§ 180); *or use* omnis, -e (*all*); —*thing*, use *n. pl.* of omnis; —*where*, undique.

evil, *sb.*, malum, -i, *n.*

example, exemplum, -i, *n.*

excel, superō, *l.*

excellent, optimus, -a, -um.

except, praeter (*with acc.*).

exhaust, *conficiō, 3 (*comp. of* *faciō).

exhort, hortor, *l*; cohortor, *l.*

exist, *ex-stō, *l.*

expect, expectō, *l.*

expel, *ex-pellō, 3.

experience, *vb.*, *sub-eō, -īre.

exploit, rēs (rei, *f.*), gesta, -ōrum (*pp. of* *gerō, 3).

extend, *trans.*, *ex-tendō, 3.

eye, oculus, -i, *m.*

fact, (*this, that*) *use neut. of* hīc, ille.

faithful, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um.

fall, *cadō, 3; *de-scendō, 3 (*descend, comp. of* *scandō); — *on*, *in-cidō, 3 (*comp. of* *cadō).

falsely, falsō.

fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*; laus, laudis, *f.*

far, longē, procul; *so — as I know*, quod sciam.

farewell, valē, *pl.* valēte.

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*

fashion, mōs, mōris, *m.*; *after the — of*, mōre.

fasten, colligō, *l*; *figō, 3.

father, pater, -tris, *m.*

fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*

fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*; *it is your — that . . . not*, per tē stat quōminus.

favour, (*abstract*) favor, -ōris, *m.*; (*concrete*) beneficium, -i, *n.*

favour, *faveō, 2 (*with dat.*).

fear, *vb.*, timeō, 2; *metuō, 3; vereor, 2; *intrans.*, terreor, 2 (*be terrified*).

feast, epulae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; dapēs, *dat.* dapibus, *f. pl.*

feeble, infirmus, -a, -um; dē-bilis, -e.

feel, *sentio, 4.

fellow-citizen, cōvis, -is, *c.*

fever, fēbris, -is, *f.*

few, a, pauci, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.*

field, ager, -grī, *m.*; (*— of battle*) acies, -ēi, *f.*; *in the field*, militiae.

fierce, saevus, -a, -um.

fiercely, ācriter.

fifteen, quindecim.

fifteenth, quintus (-a, -um) decimus (-a, -um).

fifth, quintus, -a, -um.

fight, *vb.*, pugnō, *l.*

figure, effigies, -ēi, *f.*

fill, *im-pleō, 2.

find, *in-veniō, 4; *reperiō, 4; — *out*, *comperiō, 4.

finish, finio, 4; *conficiō, 3 (*comp. of* faciō).

fire, ignis, -is, *m.*

first, primus, -a, -um.

fish, piscis, -is, *m.*

fit, *vb.*, comparō, *l*; *adj.*, aptus, -a, -um.

fix, *figō, 3; *con-stituō, 3 (*comp. of* *statuō—a penalty, etc.).

flee, *fugiō, 3; *au-fugiō, 3.

fleet, classis, -is, *f.*

fight, fuga, -ae, *f.*

flourish, floreō, 2 (*no sup.*).

flow, *fluō, 3; — *away*, *dē-fluō, 3.

flower, flōs, flōris, *m.*

fly, *sb.*, *musca*, -ae, *f.*
fly, *volō*, 1 (*of a bird*); **fugiō*, 3 (*run away*).
foe, *foeman*, *hostis*, -is, *m.*
follow, **sequor*, 3; *as follows*, use *n. pl. of tālis*.
food, *cibus*, -ī, *m.*
fool, *foolish*, *stultus*, -a, -um; *insipiens*, -entis.
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*
foot-soldier, *pedes*, -itis, *m.*
for, *adv.*, *nam*, *enim* (*never begins*).
for, *prep.*, *often corresponds to dat., or acc. of duration; (of price) use abl. (§ 295); ob with acc.; prae with abl. (because of); prō with abl., propter with acc. (for the sake of); ad with acc. (to, after vbs. of motion, and with gerund; see also § 250)*.
forbid, **vetō*, 1.
force, *sb.*, *vīs*, *acc. vim*, *abl. vī* (*no gen. or dat. sing.*), *f.*; *forces (army)*, *cōpiæ*, -ārum, *f.*
forget, **obliviscor*, 3 (*with gen.*).
forgive, *see pardon*.
former, *superior*, -us; *prior*, -us; *former . . . latter*, *ille . . . hic*.
formerly, *olim*.
fortification, *mūnimentum*, -ī, *n.*; *vallum*, -ī, *n.* (*rampart*).
fortify, *mūniō*, 4.
fortunate, *beātus*, -a, -um; *fēlix*, *gen. -icis*.
fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*
forty, *quadrāgintā*.
found, **con-dō*, 3.
four, *quatuor*; — *times*, *quater*.
fox, *vulpēs*, -is, *f.*
free, *liber*, -era, -erum; — *ly (of one's own accord)*, *ultrō*.
free, *vb.*, *liberō*, 1.
freedom, *libertās*, -ātis, *f.*
friend, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*
friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um.
friendship, *amīcitiā*, -ae, *f.*

frighten, *terreō*, 2; *terrōrem*
 **iniciō*, 3 (*comp. of iaciō*).
frightened, *be*, *see fear (vb.)*.
from, *ē*, *ex (out of)*; *ā*, *ab (away —)*; *dē (down —, all with abl.)*; *after verbs of hindering, etc.*, § 221 and § 224.
full, *plēnus*, -a, -um, (§ 273).
further, *adj.*, *ulterior*, -us.
furthest, *ultimus*, -a, -um.
future, *sb.*, *futūrum*, -ī, *n.*; *for the future*, *porrō*; *in futūrum*.
Gades, *Gādes*, -ium, *pl.*
gain, *vb.*, *comparō*, 1; **adipiscor*, 3; *gain one's wish*, *impetrō*, 1.
game, *lūdus*, -ī, *m.*
garden, *hortus*, -ī, *m.*
gate, *porta*, -ae, *f.*
gather, **carpō*, 3; (= *collect*) **colligō*, 3 (*comp. of legō*).
Gaul, *sb.*, *Gallia*, -ae, *f.* (*the country*); *Gallus*, -ī, *m.* (*the people*).
general, *sb.*, *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*
genius, *ingenium*, -ī, *n.*
gentle, *mīlis*, -e.
German, *sb.*, *Germānus*, -ī, *m.*
ghost, *imāgō*, -inis, *f.*
gift, *dōnum*, -ī, *n.* (*see § 280*).
girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*; *virgō*, -inis, *f.* (*virgin*).
give, **dō*, 1; *dōnō*, 1; — *back*, **red-dō*, 3; — *up*, *trā-dō*, 3.
glad, *laetus*, -a, -um; *I am glad*, **gaudeō*, 2.
gladly, *libenter*.
glide away, **ē-lābor*, 3.
gloomy, *tristis*, -e.
glorious, *illustis*, -e.
glory, *glōria*, -ae, *f.*
go, **eō*, *ire* (§ 504); **proficiscor*, 3 (*set out*); — *away*, **ab-eō*, **discēdō*, 3; *to go on*, **geri* (*pass. of gerō*, 3); *often a mark of the future (he is going to . . .)*.
goat, *hircus*, -ī, *m.*
god, *deus*, -ī, *m.* (§ 265).

goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
 golden, aureus, -a, -um.
 good, bonus, -a, -um; *bona, ōrum, n. pl.*; *do — to, prō-sum (with dat.); it is a — thing to, prōd-est.*
 goodness, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
 government, imperium, -ī, *n.*
 grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
 grandson, nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*
 grant, *tribuō, 3.
 granted that, etsi (§ 245).
 great, magnus, -a, -um; *illustis, -e (illustrious); greatly, magnopere, valdē.*
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
 greedy, avidus, -a, -um.
 Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
 green, viridis, -e.
 greet, salūtō, 1.
 grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
 ground, humus, *abl. humō, loc. humi, f.*; *terra, -ae, f.*; (= position) locus, -ī, *m.*; *on the — that, see because.*
 guard, *vb.*, custōdiō, 4.
 guardian, custōs, -ōdis, *m.*
 hair, capillus, -ī, *m. (usu. pl.).*
 hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 hand, be at —, ad-sum.
 handmaiden, ancilla, -ae, *f.*
 hang, *pendeō, 2; — over, *impendeō, 2 (*with dat.*).
 Hannibal, Hannibal, -is, *m.*
 happen, *ac-cidō, 3 (*comp. of cadō*).
 happiness, fēlicitās, -tātis, *f.*
 happy, fēlix, -icis; beātus, -a, -um (*blessed*).
 harbour, *sb.*, portus, -ūs, *m.*
 hard, dūrus, -a, -um; arduus, -a, -um (*difficult*).
 hard, *adv.*, strēnuē, impigrē.
 hardship, labor, -ōris, *m.*
 harm, *sb.*, dētrimentum, -ī, *n.*; *no harm, see § 271.*
 harsh, asper, -era, -erum.

harshness, asperitās, -tātis, *f.*
 harvest, messis, -is, *f.*
 hasten, festinō, 1; *con-tendō, 3.
 hate, *vb.*, *ōdī, ōdisse. *For pass. see hateful.*
 hateful, odiōsus, -a, -um; *or use odiō (pred. dat.).*
 have, habeō, 2; *often an auxiliary of a past tense; to have to, see ought.*
 he, she, it, hīc, haec, hōc; is, ea, id; ille, -la, -lud; iste, -ta, -tud; *often untranslated.*
 head, caput, -itis, *n.*
 healthy, sānus, -a, -um.
 hear, audiō, 4; (= learn) intelligō, 3 (*comp. of legō*).
 hearth, focus, -ī, *m.*
 heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*
 heavy, gravis, -e.
 heir, hēres, -ēdis, *m. (see § 335).*
 help, *sb.*, auxilium, -iī, *n.*; *open (acc.), gen. opis.*
 help, *vb.*, *iuvō, 1 (*with acc.*); sub-veniō, 4 (*with dat.*); *I cannot help . . . (with vb.), facere nōn possum quin . . . (with subj.).*
 hence, hinc; *see also therefore.*
 Hercules, Herculēs, -is, *m.*
 herd, pecus, -oris, *n.*
 here, hīc (*at this place*); hūc (*to this place*); *from here, hinc; I am —, adsum, adesse.*
 hesitate, dubitō, 1 (§ 224).
 hide, cēlō, 1.
 high, altus, -a, -um.
 higher (*in situation*), superior, -us.
 highest, summus, -a, -um.
 highly, *see value.*
 hill, collis, -is, *m.*
 himself, herself, itself, ipse, -sa, -sum; sē, suī.
 hinder, impediō, 4; *obsum, obesse (*with dat.*); *ob-stō, 1, (*with dat.*).
 hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, *n. (see § 280).*

his, *poss. adj. and pr.*; **her**, *its*,
poss. adj.; **hers**, *poss. pr.*,
suus, -a, -um (§ 72); **ēius**
(§ 72); *often untranslated.*

hither, *adj.*, **citerior**, -us.

hither (*adv.*), **hūc**; **hither** and
thither, **hūc illuc**.

hold, **teneō**, 2; **ob-tineō**, 2 (*comp.*
of *teneō); **hold out against**,
sus-tineō, 2.

holiday, **public**, **dies festus**;
private, **requiēs**, -ētis, *f.*
(§ 282).

holy, **sanctus**, -a, -um.

home, **domus**, -ūs, *f.*; *at* —,
domi.

Homer, **Homērus**, -i, *m.*

honour, *sb.*, **honor**, -ōris, *m.*

honour, *vb.*, **honōrō**, 1; *or use*
honōrem alicui *dō, 1; **honōre**
aliquem *af-ficiō, 3 (*comp. of*
*faciō).

honourable, **honestus**, -a, -um;
(= *glorious*) **decōrus**, -a, -um.

hope, *sb.*, **spēs**, **spēi**, *f.*

hope, **hope for**, *vb.*, **spērō**, 1 (§ 78).

horse, **equus**, -i, *m.*

horseman, **eques**, -itis, *m.*

hostage, **obses**, -idis, *c.*

hour, **hōra**, -ae, *f.*

house, **domus**, -ūs, *f.*; **aedēs**,
-ium (*pl.*), *f.*

how, *adv.*, **quam**, **quōmodo** (*in*
what way); *how much or great*,
quantus, -a, -um; *how many*,
quot (*indecl.*); *how often*, *how*
many times, **quotiēs**.

however, **tamen** (*nevertheless*),
*autem; *with adj.*, **quamvis**.

huge, **ingens**, *gen.* -entis.

hundred, **centum**; —*th*, **centēsi-**
mus, -a, -um.

hunger, **famēs**, -is, *f.* (*abl.* **famē**).

hurl, *iaciō, 3 (*at, in with acc.*);
*prōciō, 3 (*hurl forth*); —
back, *reiciō, 3.

hurl, *prōciōi, 3 (*comp. of* *iaciō).

hurt, *laedō, 3; **noceō**, 2 (*with*
dat.).

I, **ego**, **mei**; *often untranslated.*

Ides, **Idūs**, **Iduum**, *f. pl.*

idle, **ignāvus**, -a, -um; **segnis**, -e.

idleness, **ignāvia**, -ae, *f.*

if, **sī** (§§ 226-230); *if . . . not*,
nisi; *in dependent questions*,
num; *if however*, **sīn**; *if only*,
dum-modo (§ 242).

ignorance, **ignōrantia**, -ae, *f.*
keep in —, **cēlō**, 1.

ill, *adj.*, **aeger**, -gra, -grum.

imitate, **imitor**, 1.

imminent, **be**, *see* **impend**.

impartial, **aequus**, -a, -um.

importance, **be of**, *interest, **rē-**
fert (§ 338).

in, *in with abl.*; *often (of time*
always) untranslated; *see also*
§ 249.

increase, *augeō, 2.

induce, *moveō, 2.

industrious, **impiger**, -gra,
-grum; **industrius**, -a, -um.

inform, **certiōrem** *faciō, 3 (*with*
acc. of person); *ostendō, 3
(*show*); *be informed*, **certior**
*fiō, fieri.

inhabit, **habitō**, 1.

injure, *laedō, 3; **noceō**, 2 (*with*
dat.); **iniūriam** *in-ferō, -ferre
(*with dat.*).

injury, **iniūria**, -ae, *f.*

insult, **contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*

interest, **fēnus**, -oris, *n.* (*see*
§§ 336-7).

interest, **be of**, *see* **importance**.

into, *in with acc.* (= *inside*),
intrā (*with acc.*); *often un-*
translated (§ 262).

invite, **invitō**, 1.

island, **insula**, -ae, *f.*

Isocrates, **Isocratēs**, -is, *m.*

Italy, **Italia**, -ae, *f.*

join, *iungō, 3; — *together*,

*con-iungō, 3; — *battle*, **pug-**
nam *com-mittō, 3, **manūs**
*con-serō, 3.

joy, gaudium, -i, *n.*

judge, *sb.*, iūdex, -icis, *m.*

July, Quintilis, -e; *after* 45 B.C., Iūlius, -a, -um (*adj. and sb.*).

Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

juryman, iūdex, -icis, *m.*

just, *adj.*, iustus, -a, -um; *conj.*, *see as.*

justice, iustitia, -ae, *f.*

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

keenly, ācriter.

keep, *vb.*, *teneō, 2 (*hold*); *re-tineō, 2 (*keep back, comp. of *teneō*); conservō, 1 (*preserve*); *to keep one's word, fidem prae-stāre (from *praestō, 1).*

kill, *caedō, 3; *oc-cidō, 3 (*comp. of *caedō, i.e. strike down*); trucidō, 1 (*butcher*), necō, 1 (*by poison*); *inter-ficiō, 3 (*comp. of *faciō—i.e. in battle*); *be killed, passive of above verbs, or per-eō, perire.*

kind, *sb.*, genus, -eris, *n.*

kind, kindly, *adj.*, benignus, -a, -um.

kindness (*abstract*), benevo-lentia, -ae, *f.*; (*concrete*), beneficium, -i, *n.*

king, rex, rēgis, *m.*

kingdom, regnum, -i, *n.*

knight, eques, -itis, *m.*

know, sciō, 4 (*know a fact*); *cognoscō, 3 (*recognise a person or thing, know a person*); *not know, nesciō, 4, ignōrō, 1.*

lack, careō, 2 (*be in want of, with abl.*); *it is lacking, dēest, from *dē-sum, dēesse (with dat.).*

lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*

lamb, agnus, -i, *m.*; agna, -ae, *f.*

land, *sb.*, terra, -ae, *f.*; lands, agrī, -ōrum, *m.*

last, ultimus, -a, -um; *at last, tandem.*

last, *vb.*, dūrō, 1.

lasting, perennis, -e.

Latin, *adj.*, Latinus, -a, -um.

latter, *see former.*

law, lex, lēgis, *f.*

lay, *pōnō, 3; *lay down, *dē-pōnō, 3.*

lead, *vb.*, *dūcō, 3; — *back, *re-dūcō, 3; — out, *ē-dūcō, 3; — across, *trā-dūcō, 3, or *trā-iciō, 3 (comp. of *iaciō).*

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*

leap, *saliō, 4; — *down, *dē-siliō, 4 (comp. of *saliō).*

learn, *discō, 3; *cog-noscō, 3 (*ascertain*).

learned, doctus, -a, -um.

leave, *vb.*, *relinquō, 3 (— *be-hind*); (*bequeath*), lēgō, 1; *dis-cēdō, *ex-cēdō, 3 (*go away*).

left, laevus, -a, -um; *left hand, laeva, -ae, f.; (remaining) reliquus, -a, -um.*

leg, crūs, -ūris, *n.*

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

length, at, tandem.

less, minus.

lest, nē.

let, *sinō, 3; *patior, 3 (*allow*); *often translated by jussive subjunctive.*

letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*; *letters of the alphabet, or literature, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.*

levy, — *hostages, obsidēs alicui imperō (1).*

liberator, liberātor, -ōris, *m.*

liberty, libertas, -ātis, *f.*

lie, *vb.*, mentior, 4 (*tell lies*); *iaceō, 2 (*lie down*).

lieutenant, lēgātus, -i, *m.*

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*

light, *adj.*, levis, -e.

light, *sb.*, lux, lūcis, *f.*; *be light, *lūcēre, 2.*

like, *adj.*, similis, -e (§ 274); *or use* quālis, -e; *adv.*, ut, velut, nōn secus āc (*just as*).

like, *vb. trans.*, amō, 1; *intrans.*, volō, velle.

likely, *use fut. part.*

line of battle, acies, -eī, *f.*

lion, leō, -ōnis, *m.*

listen to, auscultō, 1.

little, parvus, -a, -um.

live, *vivō, 3 (*be alive*); habitō, 1 (*reside*).

long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um.

long, *adv.*, diū; *long since*, iam pridem; *no longer*, nōn iam, nōn amplius.

look on, spectō, 1; — *up at*, *suspiciō, 3 (*comp. of* *speciō).

lord, dominus, -ī, *m.*

lose, *ā-mittō, 3; *per-dō, 3 (*destroy*).

lot, sors, sortis, *f.*

love, amō, 1.

love, *sb.*, amor, -ōris, *m.*

lover, amans, -antis, *m.*

low, humilis, -e.

luck, *have the — to*, use *contingit, 3 (*comp. of* *tangō), (§ 257).

lucky, *see fortunate*.

lying, mendax, *gen.* -ācis.

lyre, cithara, -ae, *f.*

Macedonia, Macedonia, -ae, *f.*; *Macedonian*, Macedō, -ōnis, *m.*

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*

make, *faciō, 3.

man, homō, -inis, *m.* (*human being*); vir, -rī, *m.* (*as distinguished from woman*); **man**! heus tū; **our men**, nostrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; *see also* § 217.

manhood, adulescentia, -ae, *f.*

manner, modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*; *manners*, *use pl. of* mōs, mōris, *m.*

many, multus, -a, -um; *how many, as many, so many, see how, as, so*.

Marathon, Marathōn, -ōnis, *m.* (*adj.* Marathōniensis, -e).

March, Martius, -a, -um (*adj. & sb.*).

march, *vb.*, *prō-gredior, 3 (*comp. of* *gradior), *i.e.* advance; agmen (*or iter*) *faciō, 3; *in-cēdō, 3.

mark, *it is a — of, use predic. gen.*

marry, nūbō, 3 (*with dat.*; *said of the woman*). *Use vb. for marriage*.

marsh, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*

master, dominus, -ī, *m.* (*of slaves*); **magister**, -trī (*of boys, cavalry, etc.*).

matter, *sb.*, rēs, rei, *f.* (*circumstance*); māteria, -ae *or* māteriēs, -eī, *f.* (*material*); *the — stands thus*, rēs ita sē habet.

mean (= *intend*), in animō habēō (2); *or use fut. part.*

means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*; *by means of*, per, propter, *with acc.*; *by all means*, sānē.

meats, *use sing. of victus*, -ūs, *m.*
meet, *con-veniō, 4; (*death*) *ob-eō, -īre; *go to —*, obviam, eō, *ire or fiō*, fierī (*with dat.*).

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

message, nuntius, -ī, *m.*

middle of, midst of, *use* medius, -a, -um.

mile, mille passūs; *two, etc.*, miles, duo, *etc.*, milia passuum.

mind, *sb.* mens, mentis, *f.* (*the rational faculty*); animus, -ī, *m.* (*as opposed to body*).

miserable, miser, -era, -erum.

misfortune, rēs adversae, *f. pl.*; calamitās, -ātis, *f.*

missile, missile, -is, *n.*

mistake, *sb.*, error, -ōris, *m.* ;

make a —, be mistaken, errō, *l.*

mistress, domina, -ae, *f.*

mix, *misceō, *2.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*

month, mensis, -is, *m.*

monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*

morals, mōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*

more, *sb.*, plūs, plūris, *n.* (*with gen.*) or *use comparative.*

mortal, mortālis, -e, *adj.* and *sb.*

mother, māter, -tris, *f.*

mountain, mons, montis, *m.*

move, *vb.*, *trans.* *moveō, *2* ; *in-*

trans., *use pass.* of *moveō, *2* ;

move to, *ad-moveō, *2.*

much, *adv.*, multum, multō ; *sb.*, *use* multus, -a, -um.

mud, lutum, -ī, *n.*

multitude, multitudō, -inis, *f.* ;

turba, -ae, *f.* ; vulgus, -ī, *m.*

and *n.*

murder, caedēs, -is, *f.*

must, *see* ought.

my, *poss. adj.*, mine, *poss. pr.*,

meus, -a, -um (§ 76) ; *often un-*
translated.

myself, ipse, -sa, -sum, *gen.*

ipsius, or *use the oblique cases*
of ego (§ 70).

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*

nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*

near, *adv.*, prope ; *prep.*, prope

with acc. ; *I am —ing*, haud
multum abest quā (§ 225).

nearer, *comp. adj.*, propior, -us

(*with dat.*), nearest, proximus,
-a, -um.

nearly, ferē, prope ; paene ; or

use nōn multum abest quā
with subj.

necessary, necesse, *indecl.*

need, *vb.* egeō, *2* ; indigeō, *2*

(*with gen. or abl.*) ; careō, *2*

(*with abl.*) ; or *use* opus est
(*with abl. and dat. of person*
needing).

neglect, *neg-legō, *3.*

neighbour, *use adj.*, finitimus,
-a, -um.

neighbouring, vicīnus, -a, -um.

neither (*of two*), neuter, -tra,

-trum, *gen.* neutrius ; *neither*

. . . nor, nec . . . nec

(*neque before vowel*).

nest, nidus, -ī, *m.*

never, numquam.

news, nuntius, -ī, *m.*

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

nine, novem.

no, *adj.*, nullus, -a, -um, *gen.*

nullius ; or *use* nihil (*indecl.*)

as in § 271 ; *no one*, nēmō,

nullius, *m.* and *f.* Or *no*, or
not, annōn, necne.

noble, *adj.*, nōbilis, -e, generōsus,

-a, -um (*of men*) ; honestus,

-a, -um (*of things*) ; *sb.*, nōbilis,

-is, *m.*

nod, dormitō, *l.*

not, nōn ; nē (*in commands and*

wishes), nonne (*in questions*).

nothing, nihil, *n.* (*loc. of price*,

nihili).

now, iam, nunc.

nowhere, nusquam.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.* ; *in*

dependent questions often
transl. by quot (*how many*).

oath, iusiūrandum, iūrisiūrandi,
n.

obey, pāreō, *2* (*with dat.*).

objection, make an, recūsō, *l*

(*with quōminus*).

obscure, obscurus, -a, -um.

obtain, (mihi) comparō, *l* ; *adi-

piscor, *3* ; impetrō, *l* (*of a*
request).

occupy, occupō, *l.*

October, Octōber, -bris, -bre

(*adj. & sb.*).

office, honor, -ōris, *m.*

often, saepe ; *as — as*, quotiēs ;

so —, totiēs.

old, *vetus*, *gen.* -eris; *antiquus*, -a, -um (*ancient*); — *man*, *senex*, -is, *m.*; — *age*, *senectūs*, -ūtis, *f.*; *see also age*.

on, *in with abl.*; *super with abl. (above)*; — *behalf of*, *prō (with abl.)*.

once, *olim (formerly)*, *semel (one time)*; *at —*, *statim*, *continuō*.

one, *ūnus*, -a, -um; *the one (of two)* *alter*, -a, -um; (= *some one*) *quidam*.

only, *adj.*, *sōlus*, -a, -um.

open, *adj.*, *apertus*, -a, -um.

open, **aperiō*, 4; **pate-faciō*, 3 (*reveal*); (*a book*) **ēvolvō*, 3.

opinion, *sententia*, -ae, *f.*

oppose, *repugnō*, 1; *mē* **op-pōnō*, 3.

or, *aut*, *vel*, -ve; *an (in double questions)*.

orator, *ōrātor*, -tōris, *m.*

order, *sb.*, *ordō*, -inis, *m. (rank)*; *iussum*, -ī, *n. (command)*; *in order to, that . . .*, *ut with subj.*, *etc.*; *by — of*, *iussū*; *without the —s of*, *iniussū*; *to give —s*, *imperō*, 1 (*with dat.*).

order, *vb.*, *see command*.

ornament, *vb.*, *ornō*, 1.

other, *alius*, -a, -ud; *alter*, -era, -erum (*of two*); *others (= the rest)* *ceteri*, -ae, -a; *the one . . . the other*, *alius . . . alius*, *or alter . . . alter*; *the one or the other*, *alteruter*, -utra, -utrum; *to one another*, *inter sē*.

otherwise, *aliter*.

ought, *dēbeō*, 2 (*no supine*); *oportet*, 2 (§ 257); *or use gerund or gerundive*.

our, *poss. adj.*, *ours*, *poss. pr.*, *noster*, -tra, -trum; *often untranslated*.

outer, *exterior*, -us.

outside, *extrā*, *with acc.*

over, *prep.*, *super with acc.*; *be —*, *use past tenses of praeter-eō*, -ire.

owe, *dēbeō*, 2.

own, *my, your, his (etc.)*, *our, your pl.*, *meus*, -a, -um, *tuus*, -a, -um, *suus*, -a, -um, *noster*, -tra, -trum, *vester*, -tra, -trum, *respectively*.

ox, *hōs*, *bovis*, *m.*

pain, *dolor*, *ōris*, *m.*

palace, *rēgia*, -ae, *f.*

pardon, *vb.*, **ignoscō*, 3 (*with dat. person, acc. thing*).

parent, *parens*, -entis, *c.*

Paris, *Paris*, -idis, *m.*

part, *sb.*, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*

Parthian, *Parthus*, -ī, *m.*

patient, *patiens*, *gen.* -entis

peace, *pax*, *pācis*, *f.*

pen, *calamus*, -ī, *m.*

people, *populus*, -ī, *m.*; *plebs*, *plēbis*, *f.*, § 281 (*common people*).

per cent., *see* §§ 336-7.

perceive, **sentīō*, 4.

perform, **fungor*, 3 (*with abl.*).

perish, **per-eō*, *perīre*.

permit, *vb.*, *see allow*.

Persian, *Persa*, -ae, *m.*

persuade, **per-suādeō*, 2 (*with dat. of person*); — *to . . .*, *persuādere ut . . . (with subj.)*; — *that . . .*, *persuādere (with acc. & inf.)*.

Philip, *Philippus*, -ī, *m.*

philosopher, *philosophus*, -ī, *m.*

philosophy, *philosophia*, -ae, *f.*

pick, *carpō*, 3.

pile, *onerō*, 1.

pious, *pius*, -a, -um.

pitch, *vb.*, **iaciō*, 3 (*throw*); — *a camp*, *castra* **pōnō*, 3, *or castra colloco*, 1.

pity, *have pity on*, *misereor*, 2 (*with gen.*); *miseror*, 1 (*with acc.*).

place, *sb.*, *locus*, -ī, *m.*

place, *vb.*, *pōnō, 3; collocō, 1.
plan, *sb.*, consilium, -iī, *n.*
plant, *serō, 3.
play, *lūdō, 3.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um; grātus, -a, -um; amoenus, -a, -um.
pleasing, *adj.*, see **pleasant**; *be* —, placeō, 2 (*with dat.*).
pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
plough, *vb.*, arō, 1.
pluck, *carpō, 3.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
point, *to that* —, ecō.
Pompey, Pompēius, -i, *m.*
poor, pauper, *gen.* -eris.
populace, vulgus, -i, *n.* (§ 265).
possession of, in, compos, *gen.* -otis (*with gen.*); *get* — of, potior, 4.
possible; *as . . . as* —, quam *with superl.*; *it is* — that . . ., fieri potest (*with infin. or ut with subj.*).
post, *vb.*, see **place**.
pour, *fundō, 3.
poverty, paupertās, -ātis, *f.*
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; *in the* — of, penes *with acc.*
powerful, potens, *gen.* -entis.
praise, *vb.*, laudō, 1; *sb.*, laus, laudis, *f.*
pray, precor, 1; orō, 1.
prayers, precēs, *no gen., dat.* precibus, *f.*
prefer, malō, malle.
prepare, parō, 1.
present, *adj.*, praesens, *gen.* -entis; *be* —, ad-sum, adesse (*with dat.*).
prevent, impediō, 4; *re-tineō, 2 (*comp. of* *teneō), *ob-stō, 1 (*with dat.*); — *from*, see **from**.
Priam, Priamus, -i, *m.*
priest, sacerdos, -ōtis, *c.*
prison, carcer, -eris, *n.*
promise, *vb.*, *prō-mittō, 3 (§ 78); polliceor, 2.

property, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
prophet, vātēs, -is, *c.*
propitiate, plācō, 1.
propose (*a law*), *ferō, ferre.
prosperity, rēs (*pl., gen. rerum*) secundae.
protect, *prō-tegō, 3.
protection, praesidium, -iī, *n.*; fidēs, -ēī, *f.*
Proteus, Prōteus, Proteī, *m.*
provide, comparō, 1, *provided that, use dum or dummodo with subj.*
province, provincia, -ae, *f.*
provisions, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdēns, *gen.* -entis.
punish, pūniō, 4.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
puppy, catulus, -ī, *m.*
purpose, *vb.*, *statuō, 3.
put off, *dif-ferō, -ferre; — *away*, dē-pōnō, 3.
put on board, *im-pōnō, 3 (*with dat.*).
quarrel, contrōversia, -ae, *f.*; contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*
quarter (*fraction*), see § 335; *from all* —s, undique.
queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quick, celer, -eris, -e; rapidus, -a, -um.
quiet, quiētus, -a, -um.
quiet, *sb.*, quiēs, -ētis, *f.*
race, (*contest*) certāmen, -inis, *n.*; (*nation*) gens, -tis, *f.*
rain, pluvia, -ae, *f.*
raise, *tollō, 3.
rampart, vallum, -ī, *n.*
ransom, *redimō, 3 (*comp. of* *emō).
rashness, temeritās, -ātis, *f.*
rate, *at any* —, tamen.

rather, *adj.*, use comparative (§ 99); *adv.*, potius; — *than*, potius or magis quam (§ 117); *I would rather* . . ., mālō, malle, and *infin.*

ray, radius, -ī, *m.*

reach, *per-veniō, 4 (*with ad and acc.*).

read, *legō, 3.

reap, *metō, 3.

reason, causa, -ae, *f.* (*cause*); ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*rationality*); *there is no — that*, nihil est quod . . .

rebel, *sb.*, use *pres. part.* of *dē-sciscō, 3.

recall, revocō, 1.

receive, *ac-cipio, 3 (*comp. of* *capiō).

recent, recens, *gen.* -entis.

reflect, cōgitō, 1.

reform, corrigō, 3 (*comp. of* *regō).

refrain, *I cannot — from*, *facere (3) non possum quā (§ 224).

refuse, *nōlō, nolle (*with infin.*); recūsō, 1 (*with acc.*, and see § 223), negō, 1 (*deny*).

reign, regnō, 1.

reinforcements, supplēmentum, -ī, *n.* (*use sing.*).

rejoice, *gaudeō, 2.

remain, *maneō, 2.

remainder of, use reliquus, -a, -um.

remember, meminī, -isse (*with gen.*).

renew, renovō, 1; (*war*) red-integrō, 1.

reply, *vb.*, *re-spondeō, 2; *to make —*, *re-spondeō, 2.

report, *vb.*, nuntiō, 1, referō, -ferre.

request, *sb.*, use ask (*q. v.*).

resolve, *con-stituō, 3 (*comp. of* statuō).

resources, opēs, -um, *f. pl.*

rest, the, cēterī, -ae, -a; *the — of*, reliquī, -ae, -a.

rest, *vb.*, *re-quiēscō, 3.

restore, (= *renew*) renovō, 1; (= *give back*) *reddō, 3; *restituō, 3 (*comp. of* *statuō).

retreat, *vb.*, *regredior, 3 (*comp. of* gradior).

return, *trans. vb.*, (*give back*)

*red-dō, 3; *intrans.*, (*go back*)

*red-eō, redire, *revertor, 3.

return, *sb.*, reditus, -ūs, *m.*

reward, prae-mium, -ī, *n.*

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*

Rhodian, Rhodius, -a, -um.

Rhône, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*

rich, dives, *gen.* -itis.

riches, divitiae, -arum, *f. pl.*

ride, equitō, 1; — *on horseback*, equō vehor, 3.

right, *adj.*, rectus, -a, -um (*straight*); honestus, -a, -um (*honest*); iustus, -a, -um (*just*); *do right*, iusta faciō, 3; *it is right to* . . ., decet, 2 (§ 257).

right (*opposed to left*), dexter, -tra or -tera, -trum or -trum; *right hand*, dextra, -ae, *f.*

right, *sb.*, iūs, iūris, *n.*

right up to, usque ad (*with acc.*).

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*; amnis, -is, *m.*

road, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*

robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*

Roman, *sb.*, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*; *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

rope, fūnis, -is, *m.*

rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*

round, *adj.*, rotundus, -a, -um; *prep.*, circum *with acc.*

rumour, fāma, -ae, *f.*

run, *currō, 3; — *away* (*flee*), *fugiō, 3, *au-fugiō, 3.

rush, *vb.*, *ruō, 3; con-currō, 3; — *into*, *irruō, 3 (*with in and acc.*).

sacrifice, *vb.*, immolō, 1; sacrificiō, 1; *sb.*, sacrificium, -i, *n.*
sad, tristis, -e; maestus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um; incolumis, -e (*of persons only*).
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, *vb.*, nāvīgō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, use causā or grātiā, with the *gen.*
salute, *vb.*, salūtō, 1.
salvation, salūs, -ūtis, *f.* (see § 280).
same, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, *satis-faciō, 3 (*with dat.*).
save, servō, 1, conservō, 1.
say, *dicō, 3; *loquor, 3; *inquam (*interjectory*); say . . . not, negō, 1.
scarcely, vix.
scatter, *spargō, 3; — *in rout*, *fundō, 3.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, 3.
Scythian, Scythā, -ae, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
search, *quaerō, 3.
seat, sēdēs, -is, *f.*
second, secundus, -a, -um; (*of two*) alter, -era, -erum.
secretary, scriba, -ae, *f.*
see, *videō, 2; *see that, see care.*
seeing that, *see since.*
seek (*for*), *petō, 3; (= *look for*) *quaerō, 3.
sell, *ven-dō, 3, (*passive* vēr-eō, -ire).
seem, *videor, 2.
Senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*; *senate-house*, cūrīa, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, *mittō, 3; *send away*, *dī-mittō, 3; *send for*, *arces-sō, 3; *send forward*, *prae-mittō, 3; *send out*, *ē-mittō, 3; *send back*, *re-mittō, 3; *send over*, *trans-mittō, 3.
serious, gravis, -e.

servant, minister, -trī, *m.*; servus, -i, *m.* (*slave*).
sesterce, sestertius, -ī; nummus, -ī, *m.* (see § 334).
set, *pōnō, 3, collocō 1 (*place*); *set out*, *proficiscor, 3; *set . . . over* (*trans.*), *prae-ficiō, 3 (*comp. of *faciō, with acc. of person, and dat. of thing*); *set . . . upon*, *im-pōnō, 3 (*acc. and dat.*).
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
seventy, septuāgintā.
several, complūrēs, *gen. -ium.*
shadow, shade, umbrā, -ae, *f.*
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
shed, *ef-fundō, 3.
she-goat, capella, -ae, *f.*
shield, *sb.*, scūtum, -ī, *n.*; clipeus, -ī, *m.*
shining, candidus, -a, -um.
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shirt, tūnica, -ae, *f.*
shore, litus, -oris, *n.*; ōra, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e; *shortly, in a short time*, breviter, brevi.
shoulder, humerus, -ī, *m.*
shout, *sb.*, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, *ostendō, 3 (*display*); monstrō, 1; dē-monstrō, 1 (*prove*).
shut, *claudō, 3.
side, latus, -eris, *n.* (*flank*); pars, partis, *f.* (*part*); *on this side of*, cis (*with acc.*); *on one side*, ex unā parte; *on, from, both sides*, utrimque; *am on the side of*, *stō, 1, ab (*with abl.*).
sight, visus, -ūs, *m.*; (*view*), conspectus, -ūs, *m.*; *in the — of*, palam *with abl.*
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
silence, silentium, -ī, *n.*
silent, silens, *gen. -entis*; tacitus, -a, -um; *be silent*, taceō, 2.
sin, *vb.*, peccō, 1.
since, quia, quoniam, quod, cum (*because*) (§§ 249-52); ex quō

tempore (*from the time that*
...).

sing, *canō, 3; cantō, 1.

singer, cantātor, -ōris, *m.*

single, say *not even* (nē . . . quidem), *one*.

sit, *sedeō, 2.

skill, ars, artis, *f.* (*art*); prūdentia, -ae, *f.* (*practical wisdom*); ingenium, -iī, *n.* (*cleverness*).

slaughter, clādēs, -is, *f.*

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slay, *see kill*.

sluggish, segnīs, -e.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, sio (*thus*), tam (*with adj.*), adeō, ita (*with verbs*); **so great**, tantus; **so many**, tot; **so often**, toties; **so much**, adv., adeō, ita; itaque, igitur (*therefore*).

Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, *m.*

soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*

some, aliquis, -qua, -quid (*pr.*); aliqui, -quae, -quod (*adj.*); *some . . . or other*, nesciō quis, quae, quid; *in pl. often nōn nulli*, -ae, -a; *there are some who*, sunt quī (*with subj.*); *often untranslated*; *some . . . others*, alius . . . alius, or pars . . . pars; *at some time*, aliquandō.

sometimes, aliquandō, interdum.

son, filius, -iī or -ī, *m.* (§ 265).

song, carmen, -inis, *n.*

soon, mox; *as — as possible*, quam celerrimē, quam primum.

sooner, citius.

sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

sorry, am, paenitet, 2 (*repent*), piget, 2 (*am disgusted*) (§ 257).

soul, anima, -ae, *f.*

sound, sb., sonus, -ī, *m.*; fragor, -ōris, *m.*

spare, *pareō, 3 (*with dat.*).

speak, *dicō, 3; *loquor, 3.

spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*

spectator, *use pres. part. of* spectō, 1.

speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; contiō, -ōnis, *f.* (*esp. military*); *make a* —, ōrātiōnem habeō, 2; contionor, 1.

spend, *con-sumō, 3; *agō, 3 (*of time*).

spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*

spirit, with great, ācritēr.

spoils, spolia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

spot (*place*), locus, -ī, *m.*

spread, *pandō, 3.

spring, sb., vēr, vēris, *n.* (*the season*); fons, fontis, *m.* (*fountain*).

spy, sb., speculātor, -ōris, *m.*

stand, intrans., *stō, 1; trans., tolerō, 1 (*endure*); — *on end*, horreō, 2 (*no sup.*); — *in the way (of)*, *ob-stō, 1 (*with dat. and quōminus*); — *away from*, *di-stō, 1.

star, stella, -ae, *f.*

start, vb., *proficiscor, 3 (*set out*).

state, sb., civitās, -ātis, *f.* (*city*); respublica, reipublicae, *f.* (*government*).

stay, *maneō, 2; *re-maneō, 2, *re-stō, 1.

stick, sb., baculum, -ī, *n.*

still (= nevertheless), tamen.

stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*; saxum, -ī, *n.*

stop, *ob-stō, 1 (*with dat.*).

storm, sb., tempestās, -ātis, *f.*; procella, -ae, *f.*

story, fābula, -ae, *f.*

stratagem, consilium, -ī, *n.*

street, via, -ae, *f.*

strength, vīs, usu. in *pl.*, vīres, virium, *f.*

stretch out, *porrigō, 3 (*comp. of regō*).

stripe (= lash), verber, -eris, *n.*

strive, *nitor, 3 (*with ut*); cōnor, 1 (*with acc. and inf.*).

strong, fortis, -e (*of persons*), validus, -a, -um (*of persons or things*).

study, sb., studium, -ī, *n.*

subdue, *subiciō, 3 (*comp. of* iaciō).

success, rēs (*gen. rērum*) secundae, *f. pl.*; with --, feliciter.

such, tālis, -e.

suddenly, subito.

sufficient, use satis (*indecl.*) with *gen.*

summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*

summon, vocō, 1; con-vocō, 1 (*call together*).

sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

sunny, apricus, -a, -um.

supply, praebeō, 2 (*with dat. person, acc. thing*).

sure, be — to, cūrā ut (*and sub-junc.*)

surpass, superō, 1.

surrender, *dē-dō, 3 (*trans*).

surround, *cingō, 3; *circum-veniō, 4; *circum-dō, 1.

suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

swallow, hirundō, -inis, *f.*

sweet, dulcis, -e.

swift, celer, -eris, -e; rapidus, -a, -um.

sword, gladius, -iī, *m.*

Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

table, mensa, -ae, *f.*

take, *capiō, 3; *ac-cipiō, 3 (*receive, comp. of *capiō*); — away, *ab-ripiō, 3, *ē-ripiō, 3 (*comps. of *rapiō*); — care that, curō (1) ut and sub-junc.; — care that not, *caveō (2) nē and sub-junc.; — away from, *ē-ripiō, 3 (*with acc. and dat.*), *ad-imō, 3 (*comp. of *emō*).

tale, fābula, -ae, *f.*

talent, talentum, -ī, *n.*

talk, *loquor, 3; (*trans.*) dis-serō, 3 (*comp. of *serō, join*).

tall, magnus, -a, -um.

teach, *doceō, 2 (§ 268).

tell, *dicō, 3 (*with dat. of person*); (*a story*) narrō, 1; certiōrem

*faciō, 3 (*with acc. of person*).

temple, templum, -ī, *n.*; aedēs,

-is, *f.*

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

terms, use *pl. of* condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

terrify, terreō, 2.

territories, finēs, -ium, *m. pl.*

terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*

test, tentō, 1.

Teucer, Teucer, -crī, *m.*

than, conj., quam (§ 254), or use *abl.* (§ 99).

thank, give thanks, grātiās *agō, 3 (*with dat.*).

that, conj., ut (*in order that, so that*); quō (*with compar.*, § 220); that (*in order that*) . . . not

nē; often use *acc. and inf.*

that, dem. adj. or pron., ille, -la, -lud; iste, -ta, -tud (*that of yours*); is, ea, id.

the, generally untranslated, sometimes corresponds to ille (*the famous*); the . . . the, quō . . . eō.

theft, furtum, -ī, *n.*

Themistocles, Themistoclēs, -is, *m.*

then, tum (*at that time*); itaque, *igitur (*therefore*); an (*in indignant questions*).

there, ibi, illio (*in that place*), illū, eō (*to that place*); from there, illinc, inde.

therefore, ergō.

they, pron., *pl. of he, she, it*; see *he*.

thief, fūr, fūris, *c.*

thin, tenuis, -e.

thing, use the neuter of the adj.

think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1; existimō, 1; *reor, 2; think of (*devote oneself to*), studeō, 2 (*with dat.*), see also § 268.

thirst, sitis, -is, *f.*

thirty, trīgintā; — *ieth*, trīcēsimus, -a, -um.

this, *dem. adj. or pron.*, hīc, haec, hōc; is, ea, id.

thither, illūc, eō.

thought, *see* § 250.

thoughtlessness, imprudentia, -ae, *f.*

thousand, mille, *pl.* milia.

threat, mina, -ae, *f.*

threaten, minor (*with dat. person, acc. thing*), 1; *im-pendeō, 2 (*with dat.*: hang over).

three, trēs, tria.

thrice, ter.

through, per *with acc. (of place)*; ob *with acc. (owing to)*.

throw, *iaciō, 3; *throw away*, *ab-iciō, 3 (*comp. of* *iaciō); *throw down*, *dē-iciō; *throw across*, *trā-iciō, 3; *throw into*, in-iciō, 3.

thrust into, *in-iciō, 3 (*comp. of* *iaciō).

Tiber, Tiberis, -is (*acc.* -im), *m.*

till, *conj.*, *see* until.

till, *vb.*, *colō, 3.

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; (=epoch) saeculum, -ī, *n.*; *at times*, inter-dum; *at the same time*, simul; *at the time when*, cum, quō tempore.

timid, *adj.*, timidus, -a, -um.

to, ad *with acc. (of motion)*; or *acc. alone*, § 262; or *use the dat. (after dō, etc.)*; ut *with subj. (of purpose)* or *see* §§ 206, 207, 217-219, 264; *infin. (after volō, etc.)*.

together, simul, ūnā; *together with*, cum *with abl.*

toil, *sb.*, labor, -ōris, *m.*

toil, *vb.*, labōrō, 1.

tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*

too, nimis, nimium; or *use comp.* (§ 96); *too much*, nimium; *too little*, parum (*see* § 271); (=also) quoque.

tooth, dens, -ntis, *m.*

top of, *use* summus, -a, -um.

touch, *vb.*, *tangō, 3.

towards, ad *with acc.*; ergā *with acc. (of persons)*.

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*; urbs, urbis, *f.*

townsman, oppidānus, -ī, *m.*

transfer, *trans-ferō, -ferre, 3.

transport, *trans-vehō, 3.

treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.

treachery, perfidia, -ae, *f.*

treaty, foedus, -eris, *n.*

tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*

tribe, gens, -ntis, *f.*

tribune, tribunus, -ī, *m.*

trick, dolus, -ī, *m.*

triumph, *sb.*, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

Trojan, Trōiānus, -ī, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

trouble (about), cūrō, 1.

trouble, malum, -ī, *n.*

troublesome, molestus, -a, -un

true, vērus, -a, -um.

trust, *fidō, 3; *con-fidō, 3, crēdō, 3 (*with dat. of person*).

try, cōnor (*with inf.*); mōlior, 1, *nitor, 3 (*with ut and subj.*).

turn, *vb. trans.*, *vertō, 3; *in-trans.*, vertor, con-vertor, 3 mē *con-vertō, 3.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, viginti.

two, duo, duae, duō.

two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

unable, *be*, *use* pos-sum.

unawares, dē imprōvisō; im-prūdēns, *gen.* -entis (*used adjectivally*).

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.

uncle, patruus, -ī, *m.* (*father's brother*); avunculus, -ī, *m.* (*mother's brother*).

under, sub (*with acc. and abl.*).

understand, *intel-legō, 3.

undertake, *sūmō, 3; *sus-cipiō, 3 (*comp. of* *capiō).

undone, *to leave* —, praeter mittō, 3.

unhappy, infēlix, *gen.* -icis.

unjust, iniustus, -a, -um.
 unless, nisi (*see* si).
 unlike, dissimilis, -e.
 unmindful, immemor, *gen.* -is.
 unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
 unskilled, rudis, -e, *f.*
 until, dum, donec (§ 240).
 unwilling, invitus, -a, -um; *I am* — to, *nōlō, nolle.
 upon, in with *acc.* (with *vb.* of motion), in with *abl.* (with *vb.* of rest).
 urge, hortor, 1; (= drive) *impellō, 3.
 use, *vb.*, *ūtōr, 3 (with *abl.*); used to . . . , often a mark of the imperfect, or use *soleō, 2 (*am* accustomed); *am* of use to, prōsum, prōdesse (with *dat.*).
 useful, utilis, -e.

valley, vallis, -is, *f.*
 value, *vb.*, aestimō, 1 (*see* § 272).
 vast, vastus, -a, -um.
 Venus, Venus, -eris, *f.*
 Verginius, Verginius, -ī, *m.*
 very, express by superlative.
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
 violence, violentia, -ae, *f.*
 violent, violens, *gen.* -entis.
 virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
 virtuous, probus, -a, -um.
 visit, *visō, 3.
 voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*
 Volscian, Volsous, -a, -um.

wage, *vb.*, *gerō, 3 (*of* war).
 wait, wait for, expectō, 1.
 walk, ambulō, 1.
 wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; moenia, -ium, *n. pl.* (town walls).
 wander, errō, 1.
 want (*intr.*), *volō, velle.
 want, *sb.*, egestās, -tātis, *f.*

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
 warn, moneō, 2; admoneō, 2.
 waste, *vb.*, *con-sūmō, 3; terō, 3 (*of* time).
 waste, lay, populus, 1; vastō, 1.
 watch, *sb.*, custōdia, -ae, *f.*
 watch, *vb.*, *trans.* spectō, 1; servō, 1; *intrans.* vigilō, 1.
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
 way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.* (road); ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* (manner); mōs, mōris, *m.* (custom); in what way, quōmodo.
 we, nōs, nostrī; often untranslated.
 weak, weakly, debilis, -e, (physical); imbecillus, -a, -um.
 weakness, infirmitās, -ātis, *f.*
 wealth, divitiae, -arum, *f.*
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*; (in *pl.*) arma, -ōrum, *n.*
 weary, wearied, fessus, -a, -um; grow —, *defetiscor, 3 (*comp.* of *fatiscor, 3); be — of, *taedet, 2 (§ 257).
 weep, lacrimō, 1; *fleō, 2.
 weight, pondus, -eris, *n.*
 welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 well, *adv.*, bene.
 well, *sb.*, puteus, -ī, *m.*
 what, id quod (*that* which); quid (*in* questions).
 when, *interrog. adv.*, quandō; *rel. adv.*, cum, ut, ubi (§§ 231-235); often *trans.* by participle.
 whence, *interr. and rel. adv.*, unde.
 whenever, *rel. adv. or conj.*, quandōque, quandocumque; cum (§ 236).
 where, *interrog. or rel. adv.*, ubi, quā (*in* what place); quō (*to* what place); — from, unde; — in the world, ubi terrarum.

whether . . . **or**, seu (sive) . . .
 seu (sive) ; in dependent ques-
 tions, num, -ne, -ne . . .
 an, utrum . . . an (§§ 173-
 175).

which, interr. adj. and rel. pron.,
 see **who** ; *which of two*, uter,
 -tra, -trum, gen. utrius.

while, dum (§§ 238-240) ; or use
 participle ; a long —, diū.

white, albus, -a, -um.

whither, quō.

who, interr. pron., quis, quae,
 quid.

who, interrog. adj. & rel. pron.,
 quī, quae, quod ; often trans-
 lated by participle ; *who* . . .
 not (after neg., etc.), quīn
 (§ 225).

whoever, **whatever**, rel. pron.,
 quicumque, quaecumque,
 quodcumque ; quisquis, quae-
 quae, quidquid ; *whoever you*
please, quīvis, quilibet.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um, gen. totius ;
 ūniversus, -a, -um.

why, interrog. & rel. adv., cūr,
 quārē ; *why* . . . not, quīn
 (§ 225).

wicked, malus, -a, -um.

wickedness, improbitas, -tātis,
f. ; (more concrete) nefās, *n.*
 (indecl.).

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

will, sb., voluntās, -ātis, *f.* ;
against one's will, invitus, -a,
 -um.

will, vb., often marks a simple
 future ; *volō, velle (*wish*).

willing, libens, gen. -entis ; *I am*
willing, not willing, use volō,
 nōlō.

win, see **conquer** ; *win a victory*,
 victōriam reportō, *l.*

wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*

wine, vinum, -ī, *n.*

wing, āla, -ae, *f.* (— *of a bird*) ;
 cornū, -ūs, *n.* (— *of an army*).

winter, hiems, -mis, *f.* ; *winter*
quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiens, gen. -entis (*theo-*
retically wise) ; prūdens, gen.
 -entis (— *in action*).

wish, vb., *volō, velle ; *cupiō,
 3 ; not —, *nōlō, nolle.

with, cum, *with* abl. (*together*
with) ; often untranslated
 (§ 297).

withdraw, *abs-trahō, 3.

without, prep., sine *with* abl. ;
 (= *outside*) extrā *with* acc. ;
with verbal noun in -ing after
a neg. vb. use quīn (§ 242),
after an active verb use nec
(nor) and a finite verb, or nōn
with a participle.

wolf, lupus, -ī, *m.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.* ; mulier,
 -eris, *f.*

wonder (at), mīror, *l.*

wont, to be, *soleō, 2.

wood, silva, -ae, *f.*

word, verbum, -ī, *n.* ; *keep my*
 —, fidem *prae-stō, *l.*

work, sb., opus, -eris, *n.* ; labor,
 -ōris, *l. m.* (*toil, labour*).

work, vb., laborō, *l.*

world, mundus, -ī, *m.* (*universe*) ;
 orbis (gen. -is) terrārum, *m.*
 (*the earth*).

worse, pēior, -us.

worth, be, valeō, 2 (*no sup.*).

worthy, dignus, -a, -um (*with*
 abl., or quī and subj.).

would that . . . , utinam (§ 128).

wound, sb., vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wreck, *frangō, 3.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, *scribō, 3.

wrong, sb., iniūria, -ae, *f.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yellow, flāvus, -a, -um.

yet, adhūc (*still*) ; tamen (*how*
ever) ; not yet, nondum.

yield, *cēdō, 3 (*with dat.*); *in-trans.*, mē *dē-dō, 3.

yoke, iugum, -i, *n.*

you, tū *sing.*, vōs *plur.*; *often untranslated.*

young, iuvenis, -is; **younger**, iūnior, nātū minor.

young man, youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*; adulescens, -entis, *m.*

your, *poss. adj.*, **yours**, *poss., pr.*; tuus, -a, -um, *sing.*; vester, -tra, -trum, *plur.*; *that of yours*, iste, ista, istud.

zeal, studium, -i, *n.*

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the Sections.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

- A**BBREVIATIONS ... 381-3
- Ablative case ... 18
- Ablative absolute 107-110
- of agent 32, 302
- of description 298
- of instrument 18
- of manner..... 297
- of measure 299
- of origin 303
- of place whence 300-1
- of place where 292-3
- of price 295
- of respect 294
- of standard of comparison 103
- of time when, within
 which 203
- Accent, Introd. 3
- Accusative case..... 14, 15, 260
- and infinitive 78-83
- cognate..... 267
- double 268-9
- of complement.... 261
- of extent of space 202
- of goal of motion... 262-4
- of time throughout which 202
- Adjectival clauses 142, 146, 150
- Adjectives 26, 48-50, 59
- comparison of 100-3
- correlative 146
- formation of 387-91
- interrogative 155
- irregular comparison of... 117
- possessive 75-7
- specifying certain parts... 118
- Adverbial clauses 142
- Adverbs..... 111-4
- comparison of 115-6
- correlative 148
- irregular comparison of 119-20
- Agreement—
- of relative and antecedent 146
- of subject and predicate.. 74
- of substantive and adjective 27, 57
- Alphabet Introd., 1, 4-11
- Antecedent 146
- Apodosis 126
- Apposition 92
- B**ASE—
- of substantives 8
- of verbs—
- perfect 38
- present 4
- supine 53
- table of..... 343
- C**ALENDAR 329-32
- Cases, *see* Nomina-
 tive, etc.
- Causal clauses 249-52
- Commands and prohibi-
 tions—
- dependent 214
- direct 129-31
- semi-dependent 215-6

Comparative—	
adjectives	59
clauses	254-5
Comparison—	
expressed by <i>magis</i>	117
irregular	119-20
of adjectives	100-3
of adverbs	115-6
Complement of copulative	
verbs	25
Complex sentences	142
Composite subject	74
Compound—	
numerals	198
verbs, formation of..	46, 307-8
verbs from <i>eo</i>	173
verbs from <i>fero</i>	164
verbs from <i>sum</i>	151
Concessive clauses	244-8
Conditional sentences ..	226-30
Conjugations, <i>see</i> Verbs	
Conjunctions	309-11
Consecutive clauses ..	159-62
Correlatives—	
adjectives	148
adverbs	149, 200
pronouns	199
D ATIVE case	16, 56
of advantage	276
of agent	278
of purpose	279
predicative	280
with adjectives	277
with compounds of <i>sum</i> ..	154
with words denoting near-	
ness or approach	274
Defective substantives ..	284
Degrees of comparison ..	100
Demonstrative adjectives	
and pronouns	137
Dependent—	
commands	214-6
questions	169-72, 174-5
statements	78-83
Deponent verbs	60
Desiderative verbs	400-1
Diminutives	392-5

Diphthongs	Introd., 6
Double questions ..	134-6, 174-5
Doubt, expressions of	175

E LISION	374
Enclitics	35
Exhortations and com-	
mands—	
imperative in	130-1
subjunctive in	129

F EARING, verbs of	213
Final clauses	209-13
Frequentative verbs	396-8
Future rendered by English	
present	288(a)

G ENDER	10
of 3rd declension sub-	
stantives	91
Genitive case—	
objective	273
of price or value	272
of quality	270
partitive	121, 271
possessive	17
Gerund	85-90
Gerundive	204-8

H INDERING, verbs of ..	221
Historic tenses	161-2
<i>Hoping</i> , verbs of	83

I MPARISYLLABIC sub-	
stantives	54
Imperative, use of	130
Impersonal—	
passive of intransitive	
verbs	167-8
verbs	256-8
Inceptive verbs	399
Indefinite pronouns	179-89

Indicative—
 in causal clauses..... 249
 in concessive clauses ... 245-6
 in conditional sentences 227-8
 in temporal clauses 232
Infinitive 66-88
Interrogative pronouns and
adjectives 155
Intransitive verbs 56
Irregular substantives—
 of 1st declension..... 259
 of 2nd declension 265
 of 3rd declension... 266, 281-6
 of 4th and 5th declensions 275

JUSSIVE subjunctive.. 125-8

LOCATIVE case ... 287-90

METRE..... 375-80
 Money 334-7
 Moods 3
see also Indicative, etc.

NAMES 382-3
 Nominative case 12
 Number 9
 Numerals 191-8

PARISYLLABIC sub-
 stantives..... 41
 Parsing 402-7
 Participle 93-6
 future 99
 perfect passive 104-5
 present 97-8
 Perfect indicative, meaning
 of 39
 Personal pronouns 70
 of third person 139

Place—
 whence..... 300-1
 where..... 287-8, 292-3
 whither 262-4
 Potential subjunctive 230
 Predicate, completion of the
 25, 261
 Prepositions 304-8
 Preventing, verbs of 223
 Price—
 ablative of 295
 genitive of 272
 Primary tenses..... 161-2
 Principal parts of verbs ... 45
 Promising, verbs of 83
 Pronouns—
 demonstrative 137-8
 indefinite..... 179-89
 interrogative 155
 personal..... 70-3
 reflexive 72
 relative 143-8
 Pronunciation ... Introd., 5-11
 Prosody 372-80
 Protasis..... 226
 Purpose, *see* Final clauses

QUALITY—
 ablative of 298
 genitive of 270
 Quantity—
 of syllables 372-3
 of vowels.....Introd., 2
 Questions—
 dependent 169-72, 223-4
 dependent double 174-5
 direct..... 33-5
 double 134-6

REFLEXIVE pronouns 72
 Relative pronouns 143-8
 agreement of 144
 in causal clauses 252
 in concessive clauses 248
 in consecutive clauses 217, 225
 in final clauses 218-9
 uses with subjunctive ... 253

SCANSION..... 375-80
 Semi-dependence 256
 Semi-deponent verbs 62
 Sequence of tenses 160
 Subjunctive—
 after *antequam* or *prius-*
 quam 243
 after *dum* 240-2
 after *quin* 223-5
 causal 250-2
 concessive 247-8
 in commands 125-6, 129
 in conditional sentences
 228-30
 in consecutive clauses
 159-62, 217
 in final clauses
 209-13, 218-9, 223-4
 in relative clauses 253
 in temporal clauses 235, 241-3
 in wishes 128
 potential 230
 Substantival clauses 142
 Substantives—
 formation of 384-6, 392-5
 irregular 266, 275, 281-6
 of 1st decl. 6
 of 2nd decl. 21

Substantives —
 of 3rd decl. 41-4, 47, 54-5, 8
 of 4th decl. 63
 of 5th decl. 64
 Superlative degree 100-1
 expressed by *maxime*. 117
 Supine (acc.) ... 264

TEMPORAL clauses 231-43

VALUE, genitive of ... 272
 Verbs—
 compound 46, 307-8
 defective 190
 deponent..... 60-1
 formation of 396-401
 impersonal 256-8
 intransitive 56
 principal parts of 45, 354-366
 semi-deponent 62
 Vocative case 13, 22
 Vowels, quantity of Introd., 2

WISHES, expression of 128

II.—LATIN WORDS.

ACER, 49.
 aio, 190.
 aliquis, 188.
 alius, 157.
 alter, 157.
 amo, paradigm of,
 345, 349.
 an, 134-6, 174-5.
 animal, 47.
 antequam, 243.
 as, 334.
 audeo, 62.
 audio, paradigm of,
 348, 352.

BONUS, 26, 117.
 bos, 266.

CAPIO, 5, 353.
 causa, with *ger-*
 und, 88; with *ger-*
 undive, 208.
 cave, with *subjunc-*
 tive, 215.
 citra, 117.
 clavis, 43.
 coepi, 190.
 cubile, 47.

cum, *preposition*, 30;
 cum, *conjunction*, 234,
 235, 247, 251.
 cura, with *subjunc-*
 tive, 215.

DEBEO, 69.
 dens, 44.
 deus, 265.
 die, 123.
 dies, 64.
 dignus, with *ablative*,
 296.

diu, 120.
do, 177.
dominus, 21.
domus, 262, 275.
donec, 240.
dum, 238-42.
duo, 193.

EDO, 176.
ego, 70.
eo, and compounds,
173.
etsi, 245, 247.

FACILIS, 102.
felix, 50.
fero, and its com-
pounds, 163-4.
fido, 62.
filius, 275.
fio, 165.
flos, 55.
fore ut, 314.
frugi, 117.

GAUDEO, 62.
genu, 63.
gradus, 63.
gratia, with gerund,
88; with gerun-
dive, 207.

HIC, 137.
hostis, 42.

IAMDIU, 324.
idem, 137.
Idus, 329.
ille, 137.
inquam, 190.
ipse, 137.
is, 137.
iste, 137.

iubeo, with *infini-*
tive, 214.
Iuppiter, 266.
iusiurandum, 266.
iuvenis, 117.

KALENDÆ,
329.

LAMPAS, 291.
leo, 55.
lex, 55.
licet, 247.
longior, 59.

MAGISTER, 21.
magnus, 117.
maledicus, 117.
malo, 158.
malus, 117.
memini, 190.
meus, 76.
milia, 196.
moneo, paradigm of,
346, 350.

NE, 128-9.
-ne, 34, 171.
neuter, 157.
niger, 26.
noli, 130.
nolo, 158.
nomen, 58.
Nonae, 329.
nonne, 34, 171.
nubes, 42.
nullus, 157.
num, 34, 171.

ODI, 190.
opus, 58; with
ablative, 296.

PATER, 55.
pauper, 59.
pinguis, 117.
pius, 117.
porta, 6.
possum, 151.
postquam, 237.
princeps, 55.
priusquam, 243.
prosum, 153.
prudens, 50.
puer, 21.
pulcher, 101.

QUALIS, 148,
156.
quam, 103, 254.
quamquam, 246.
quamvis, 247.
quanti, 290.
quantus, 148, 156.
-que, 310.
qui, *indefinite*, 179;
interrogative, 155;
relative, 143.
quia, 249-50.
quicumque, 144.
quidam, 184.
quilibet, 185.
quin, 223-5.
quis, *indefinite*, 179;
interrogative, 155.
quisquam, 186.
quisque, 187.
quisquis, 145.
quivis, 185.
quod, 249-50.
quominus, 220-2.
quoniam, 249-50.
quoque, 310.
quot, 148, 156.

REGNUM, 21.
rego, paradigm
of, 347, 351.
respublica, 275.
rus, 262.

SE, 72.
 sestertius, 334.
 si, 226-30.
 similis, 274.
 soleo, 62.
 solus, 157.
 sum, *compounds of*,
 153; *paradigm of*,
 344.
 sus, 266.
 suus, 76-7.

TALIS, 148.
 tanti, 290.

tantus, 148.
 tener, 26.
 tot, 148.
 totus, 157.
 tristis, 50.
 tu, 70.
 tuus, 76.

UBI, 236.
 ullus, 157.
 unus, 157.
 ut, *comparative*, 254;
 consecutive, 159;
 final, 209; *with*

verbs of fearing,
 213; *temporal*, 236.
 uter and its *com-*
 pounds, 157, 181.
 utinam, 128.
 utor, *with ablative*,
 296.
 utrum . . . an, 134-6,
 174.

VETO, 214.
 volo, 158.

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration, Library

અસૂરી

MUSSOORIE

यह पुस्तक निम्नांकित तारीख तक वापिस करनी है ।

This book is to be returned on the date last stamped

[illegible]

115071

वर्ग सं. 470.07 अवाप्ति सं. ~~1992~~
Tho ACC. No.....
पुस्तक सं.
Class No..... Book No.....
लेखक Thompson, J.V.
Author.....
शीर्षक New
1992

470.07

The

LIBRARY

LAL BHADUR SHASTRI

National Academy of Administration
MUSSOORIE

Accession No. 115071

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
5. Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.